

This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

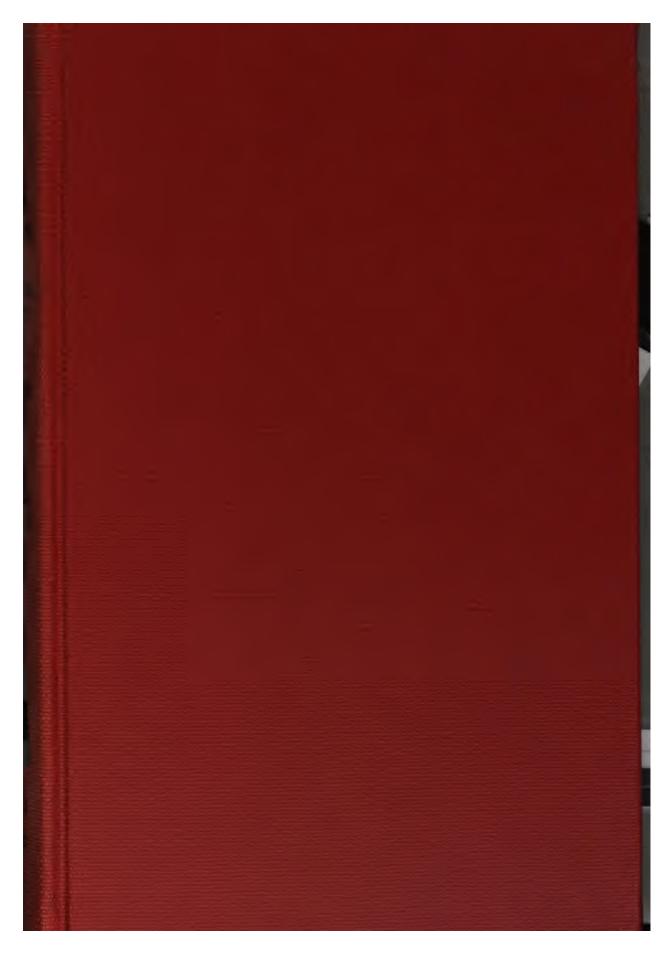
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

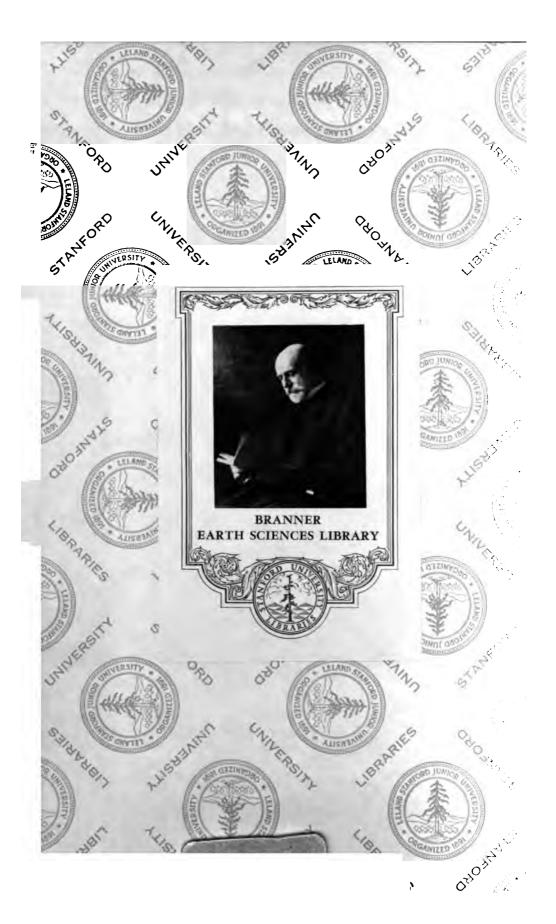
We also ask that you:

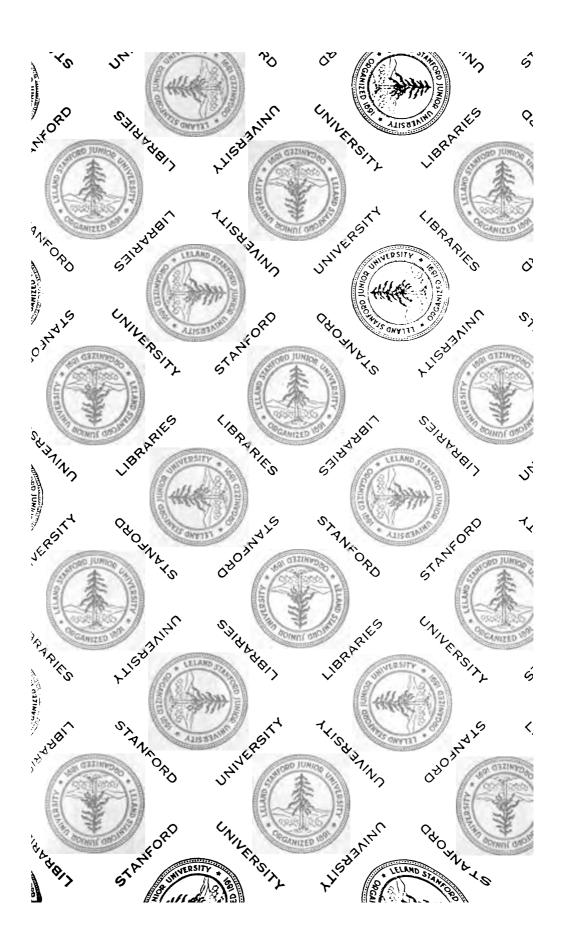
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + Refrain from automated querying Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at http://books.google.com/







man and a second second

je Branne

NORTH CAROLINA GEOLOGICAL SURVEY.

J. A. HOLMES, STATE GEOLOGIST.

BULLETIN No. 5.

-- · · ·--

THE FORESTS, FOREST LANDS, AND FOREST PRODUCTS OF EASTERN NORTH CAROLINA.

RY

W. W. ASHE,

IN CHARGE OF FOREST INVESTIGATION.

RALEIGH:

JOSEPHUS DANIELS, STATE PRINTER AND BINDER.
1894.

I f.a. Holeul.



NORTH CAROLINA GEOLOGICAL SURVEY.

J. A. HOLMES, STATE GEOLOGIST.

BULLETIN No. 5.

THE FORESTS, FOREST LANDS, AND FOREST PRODUCTS OF EASTERN NORTH CAROLINA.

BY

W. W. ASHE,

IN CHARGE OF FOREST INVESTIGATION.



RALEIGH:

JOSEPHUS DANIELS, State Printer and Binder.

PRESSES OF E. M. UZZELL.

1804.

| • | | |
|---|--|--|
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

| P |
|---|
| TER OF TRANSMITTAL |
| FACE |
| PTER I FORESTS AND FOREST LANDS OF EASTERN NORTH CAROLINA |
| Objects of this preliminary forest survey |
| Area under consideration |
| Kinds of growth |
| Nomenclature of the trees |
| Long-leaf pine |
| Loblolly pine |
| Short-leaf pine |
| Savanna pine |
| Other minor trees |
| Original distribution of the pines |
| Long-leaf pine |
| Loblolly pine |
| Short-leaf pine |
| Savanna pine |
| Forests and forest regions of eastern North Carolina |
| The seaboard region2 |
| Brunswick county |
| Columbus |
| Duplin |
| Pender |
| Onslow |
| Carteret |
| Craven |
| Jones |
| Pamlico |
| Beaufort |
| Pamlico peninsula |
| Counties north of Albemarle sound |
| The inland loblolly pine region2 |
| Gates county |
| Hertford |
| Bertie |
| Martin |
| Pitt |
| Greene |
| Edgecombe and Wilson |
| Wavne |
| Lenoir |
| Inhaston |

CONTENTS.

| CHAPTER I.—Continued. | AGE. |
|--|-------|
| The pine-barren regions2 | 4, 34 |
| Robeson county | 34 |
| Bladen | 35 |
| New Hanover | 36 |
| Cumberland | 36 |
| Harnett | 36 |
| Sampson | 37 |
| Richmond | 37 |
| Moore | 37 |
| The transition region2 | 1, 38 |
| Northampton county | 38 |
| Halifax | 38 |
| · Nash | 39 |
| Montgomery | 39 |
| Chatham | 39 |
| Wake | 39 |
| Existing supply of timber in eastern North Carolina | 40 |
| Cypress, 40; white cedar (juniper), 40; loblolly pine, 41; savanna | |
| pine, 41; short-leaf pine, 41; long-leaf pine, 42; swamp timber, 42. | |
| a 11 m W 1 N N a | |
| CHAPTER II.—THE WASTE LANDS OF EASTERN NORTH CAROLINA | |
| Scarcity of timber in the sand-hill regions | |
| The larger tracts of barren land | 45 |
| Bladen county | 45 |
| Sampson | 47 |
| Cumberland | 47 |
| Harnett | 48 |
| Moore | 48 |
| Richmond | 49 |
| Robeson | 49 |
| Brunswick | 49 |
| Columbus | 49 |
| Wayne | 49 |
| Duplin, Onslow, New Hanover | 50 |
| Other eastern counties | 50 |
| The origin of these waste lands | 51 |
| Why long-leaf pine forests are not self-propagating | 52 |
| The seeding of the long-leaf pine | 53 |
| Destruction of the young plants | 55 |
| Enemies of the long-leaf pine | |
| Destructive work by hogs and fires | 57 |
| The ultimate utility of these waste lands | 59 |
| Cost of securing a new forest growth | |
| Necessary protection of young pines against fires and hogs | |
| Forest management in the waste-land regions | |
| The necessity for forests in the future | 64 |

| | AGE. |
|--|------|
| Will a regrowth of pine on these waste lands pay? | 67 |
| Rate of growth of long-leaf pines | 67 |
| Future value of turpentine orchards | 68 |
| Future value of long-leaf pine forests | 69 |
| Area of waste land increasing | 70 |
| Importance of early action | 71 |
| CHAPTER III.—THE NAVAL STORE INDUSTRY | 73 |
| Historical sketch | 73 |
| In colonial times | 73 |
| Later developments | 74 |
| South-westward extension | 76 |
| Inland extension in North Carolina | 77 |
| Value of the naval store products of the United States | 78 |
| Amount of capital and labor employed | 78 |
| Present condition of the naval store industry in North Carolina | 78 |
| Spirits of turpentine and rosin statistics | 79 |
| Decrease in production of crude turpentine | 80 |
| The rosin trade | 82 |
| Exports of tar and pitch | 83 |
| Total value of naval store products in North Carolina | 84 |
| Present condition of the turpentine orchards in North Carolina | 85 |
| Length of time turpentine orchards are worked | 85 |
| | 86 |
| Areas of abandoned turpentine orchards | 87 |
| Annual additions to the turpentine orchards | |
| Boxing of other species of pines | 88 |
| Amount of round timber available for boxing | 88 |
| Young growth of long-leaf pine | 89 |
| Decreasing area of turpentine orchards in North Carolina | 90 |
| Destruction of orchards by fires. | 90 |
| Damages to orchards from storms | 92 |
| Area of orchards reduced by lumbering | 93 |
| How long can our turpentine orchards last? | 93 |
| French and American methods of gathering turpentine | 93 |
| American method of boxing pine trees | 94 |
| French method of gathering turpentine | 96 |
| Advantages of the French system | 99 |
| Results as to the relative strength and vitality of the trees | 99 |
| Yield by the French system larger in quantity and better in quality, | |
| Results of experiments with the French system in North Carolina | |
| Cost of adopting the French system | 104 |
| CHAPTER IV.—THE LUMBER INDUSTRY IN EASTERN NORTH CAROLINA | 106 |
| Historical sketch | 106 |
| Loblolly pine in the timber market | 107 |

CONTENTS.

| Chapter IV.—Continued. | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| Statistics of the lumber industry in North Carolina | 108 |
| Output of lumber and shingles | 109 |
| Lumber product from different species of trees | 112 |
| Lumber shipments from Wilmington | |
| Production and export of shingles | |
| Capital invested in the lumber industry | |
| Production of lumber in North Carolina in 1893 | 116 |
| Miscellaneous wood-working industries | 117 |
| Production of timber other than mill timber | 118 |
| "Tun timber" | 118 |
| Railroad ties | 119 |
| Telegraph poles | 119 |
| Oak staves | 120 |
| Value of forest products of eastern North ('arolina | 120 |
| Recent timber developments and the outlook | |
| Uses of important woods | |
| The pines | |
| Yellow poplar, ash and white cedar | 122 |
| Cypress, sweet gum and black gum | |
| Index | 125 |

BOARD OF MANAGERS.

| GOVERNOR ELIAS CARR, ex officio Chairman, . | | | | | Raleigh. | | |
|---|-----|----|----------|-----|----------|---|----------------|
| J. TURNER MOREHEAD, | | | | | | | Leaksville. |
| SAMUEL L. PATTERSON, | | | • | • | • | • | Yadkin Valley. |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | - | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| S | TAT | ГE | · GEC | LOG | IST. | | |
| J. A. Holmes, . | | | | | | | . Raleigh. |

LETTER OF TRANSMITTAL.

RALEIGH, N. C., September 26, 1894.

To his Excellency, Hon. Elias Carr,

Governor of North Carolina.

SIR:—I have the honor to submit herewith for publication as Bulletin No. 5 of the Geological Survey publications a preliminary report on the Forests, Forest Lands and Forest Products of Eastern North Carolina. This report has been prepared by Mr. W. W. Ashe, who is making for the Survey a careful examination of the forests of the State. I beg to call your special attention to two facts brought out in this report: (1) the continued and unnecessary destruction of the forests of our eastern counties by fires and stock, and the importance of remedying this evil before it is too late: (2) while we cannot at once greatly enlarge the areas of our turpentine orchards the quality and value of the naval store products may be increased to the extent of some \$200,000 per annum by the adoption of the French system of gathering the turpentine.

I desire to express my appreciation of the active and encouraging interest which you and the other members of the Board have shown continuously in this and all other work undertaken by the Survey.

Yours obediently,

J. A. Holmes, State Geologist.

PREFACE.

The law inaugurating the Geological Survey provides for the investigation of the timber as well as the mineral interests of the State; and in carrying out this provision a systematic examination of the forests was begun in 1891 and has been carried on since that time. The plan adopted in this work embodies a fourfold investigation: first, as to the existing forest resources; second, as to how these resources can be utilized to the greatest advantage without involving the destruction of the forests; third, as to how the waste lands of the State can be continuously restocked with valuable trees, and thus our forest wealth perpetuated; and fourth, as to what can be done to encourage the development in the State of enterprises which will manufacture into finished products a larger portion of our timber instead of shipping to other States our crude materials for manufacture there. We have found, as will be shown in this Report and others which are to follow at an early date, that our forest resources are considerable; and they are now attracting lumbermen and capital from many sections of the country. The lumbering industry in the State is already a large one and is increasing in magnitude; indeed, already the timber is being cut with such rapidity that we may fairly ask ourselves the question, how long it will be before our forest wealth, like that of many other States, becomes a matter of the past. we may also ask ourselves the question, whether it is possible that these resources can be utilized now and at the same time our forest wealth be perpetuated.

A trained student in forestry will answer this latter question in the affirmative, but the experience of the past has too often answered it in the negative. The cutting of the valuable timber frequently leads to the total destruction of the forest. The trees are felled regardless of surrounding growth that may be injured; and the branches and the tops are left scattered among the younger growth and thus add greatly to the destructiveness of forest fires, which frequently follow during the first dry season. The

10 PREFACE.

average lumberman has but one purpose in the prosecution of his work: the removal of the valuable timber. It rarely happens that the owner, himself, seriously considers the future welfare of his forests; and, indeed, the opinion seems to be prevalent in the public mind that when the valuable timber has been once removed from a forest the forest itself no longer has a value, and may as well be cleared away so that the soil can be cultivated; or, if it is allowed to remain, it is usually made to serve as a range for cattle, and is thought to answer this purpose best when burned through by the forest fires every autumn or spring.

The policy of the average citizen appears to be based upon the theory that our natural resources are inexhaustible, and that we should get all out of them we can to-day and let the future take care of itself. And so thoroughly grounded are these notions in our public and private policy that it is exceedingly difficult to secure the adoption of any plan which runs counter to them. But fortunately, in the matter of our forests, their preservation for use by a future generation need not prohibit the utilization of the valuable timber now standing by the present generation. It only demands that while we cut and make use of this timber we protect the young growth, and look to the restocking of our waste lands with valuable trees, and thus make the forest valuable for future generations also.

The examinations of the forests in Eastern North Carolina were begun by the present writer several years ago. More extended investigations have been carried on by Mr. W. W. Ashe at intervals during the past two years. The larger part of the information embodied in the present report was collected by him during a series of extended trips made through the eastern counties during the autumn of 1893 and the following winter. As shown in the body of this Report, the approximate supply of pine timber now standing in Eastern North Carolina is about 8,200,000,000 feet, and this is being cut at the rate of about 450,000,000 feet per annum. These figures point in unmistakable terms to the fact that, unless mean—while we encourage the growth of new trees, two decades mor—will find the valuable pine forests of this region largely a thing—will find the valuable pine forests of the forest.

PREFACE. 11

Indeed, nothing in the way of forest management could be more reckless and destructive than the treatment of our long-leaf pine forests during the past few decades. In the boxing for turpentine the trees have been cut so deeply and so extensively that both their vitality and strength have been greatly weakened, and the storms have prostrated many of the finest specimens. The lumberman and the storms have been followed by forest fires, which have completed the destruction, already begun in so systematic a manner, of large areas.

Started at times by thoughtless hunters at night, by sparks from an engine, by careless squatters or tenants, or even at times by land owners, in the hope of improving the grazing capacity of their lands during the following season, these forest fires sweep irresistibly across miles of territory, destroying not only the mature forest trees, but also the young growth; and thus destroy the forest of the future as well as of the present. And the few young pines which may have escaped destruction in this way soon follow the fate of the others by being destroyed by hogs. Many of these longleaf pine lands which lie in the sand hill regions of Eastern North Carolina have had their forest removed so completely that they have become "waste lands," covered by a thin growth of nearly worthless scrubby oak. The total area of these waste lands is now nearly half a million acres, and is steadily increasing. endeavors to show that while much of these waste lands are worthless for other purposes, they can be re-set with long-leaf pine forests if they can only be protected against forest fires and stock. And it is gratifying to find among the lumbermen themselves a growing realization of the fact that it is to their interest and to the interest of the public at large that this destructive policy give place to a more intelligent plan which, while it does not seriously curtail the utilization of the existing forests, it looks to their protection and perpetuity.

It is devoutly to be hoped that this awakening will grow into a change of both public and private opinion concerning the future of our forests, and lead to the adoption and carrying out of rational plans for their perpetuity and improvement. The problems connected with the accomplishment of this end will be discussed

more fully in future publications of the Survey, now in preparation. The object of the present report is to describe briefly the present condition of the forests and forest lands of this region. The capital invested in the lumber industry in Eastern North Carolina in 1893 amounted to \$4,690,000, and more than 8,000 men were regularly employed in connection with the 323 establishments. The market value of the forests products of this region for 1893, including naval stores, but not including fire-wood nor fencing material, amounted to \$7,320,000. Including these latter items the aggregate annual value of the forest products of the region will probably reach \$12,000,000. Certainly this is an industry the future maintenance of which deserves the earnest consideration of the State and her individual citizens.

The Survey is indebted to many lumbermen, naval store dealers and manufacturers, and to many other citizens in every part of this region for their kind co-operation in the work of collecting information for this Report, and I beg to assure them that their kindness and hospitality have been highly appreciated.

J. A. Holmes, State Geologist.

FORESTS, FOREST LANDS AND FOREST PRODUCTS OF EASTERN NORTH CAROLINA.

BY W. W. ASHE.

CHAPTER I.

FORESTS AND FOREST LANDS.

OBJECTS OF THIS PRELIMINARY FOREST SURVEY.

During the present decade there has been a marked increase in the lumber industry in Eastern North Carolina and a corresponding decrease in the available supply of standing timber. Already predictions are numerous as to the exhaustion at an early date of the supply of merchantable long-leaf pine over considerable areas. The boxing of these pines weakens the trees and makes them more liable to be blown down by the winds, and far more liable to be destroyed by forest fires, which by their frequency and extent have entirely removed the long-leaf pine forests over many large areas. These pine forests, in the sandy regions, instead of being replaced by a valuable young growth of the same kind are followed by a worthless growth of sand black-jack oak. Forest fires and subsequent pasturing of these regions with cattle and hogs are the important agencies which combine to prevent the long-leaf pine from reproducing itself over the larger portion of these sandy lands. From these causes the extent of these areas of waste or abandoned lands is increasing steadily. It is believed that under proper management these waste lands can be restocked with longleaf pine.

The present examination was undertaken with a view to determining the exact condition of the forests of the eastern section of the State, the rapidity with which they are being removed, the condition of lumbered districts, the character, extent and condition of the regrowth or "second growth," and to find out, if possible, some practicable plans for the protection, development, and extension of the forests of this region.

AREA UNDER CONSIDERATION.

The area examined embraces thirty-eight eastern counties and the eastern parts of six more, being what is usually termed the long-leaf pine belt in North Carolina. This is the "coastal plain region" of the geologists, which extends inland from the coast a distance of one hundred to one hundred and fifty miles and has in this State an aggregate area approximating 24,000 square miles. Its western border, separating the hill country from the coastal plain region, may be described as an irregular line extending through the western part of Halifax and the south-eastern part of Franklin county, passing near Raleigh and Cary to northern Montgomery and eastern Anson counties. Its surface is that of a gently undulating plain, of less elevation (ten to twenty feet above tide) and of a more nearly level surface castward, becoming more elevated (three hundred to five hundred feet) and rolling along its western border. Its soil is generally a sandy loam or sand, though in limited areas clay predominates. In the more eastern portion of this region are numerous extensive swamps or marsh areas surrounding, in some cases, small lakes and bordering streams. In some of these the soil is mainly an admixture of sand and vegetable mold, while in others it is a fertile loam. The soil of the western portions of this region, north of the Neuse river, varies considerably, but is ordinarily a loam, becoming sandy or gravelly in some places and clayey in others, while south of Neuse river the sand predominates, and there are numerous elevated, dry, sandy ridges on which only the long-leaf pine and the sand black-jack oak flourish.

KINDS OF GROWTH.

The timber over the entire section is, on the highlands, largely of two species of pine, one, the loblolly pine (*Pinus Taeda* L.), more confined to the counties north of the Neuse river and to the moister soil; the other, the long-leaf pine (*Pinus palustris* Mill.), to those south of this river and to the drier, more sandy soil. Beneath these trees, where the soil is not too dry and sandy, is a lower—

growth of small white and post oaks, dogwood, haws and the narrow-leaved crab-apple, while where the soil is very sandy and dry there grows, either with the long-leaf pine, or where it has been removed, a small worthless oak, the sand black-jack or barren oak (Quercus Catesbaci Michx.), and less frequently the high-ground willow oak (Quercus cinerea Michx.). This oak is also a small tree and indicates the most barren soil. Besides the pines just referred to, there are two others found with them, the short-leaf pine (P. echinata Mill.), an uncommon tree except on dark loam or gravelly soil along the western and northern limits of this section, and the savanna pine (P. serotina Michx.), a knotty, unsymmetrical tree occurring from Virginia southward along the margins of "pine barren" ponds or scattered in small clumps over the open savannas and marsh lands. These few species form the chief growth of the higher lands.

The swamp lands, with a total area of about 3,500 square miles, have a very characteristic and varied growth. Bordering these swamps are water and willow oaks, with the evergreen loblolly bay and sweet bay; farther in them are huge swamp chestnut oaks (Quercus Michauxii Nutt.), elms, maples, beech, holly and tall rosemary pines (P. Taeda L.). These lands constitute the oak flats, areas which are under water only during the wettest seasons of the year. They have usually a good soil and can be easily drained.

Where the water is deeper in the swamps and remains longer grow the cypress, sweet gum, black gum, tupelo and yellow poplar.

In the mud swamps along the larger streams there are, besides cypress and gums, ash, overcup oak, cottonwood, sycamore and hackberry. Mixed with the other swamps, but covering less area and occurring only on sandy or peaty soil, are white cedar swamps, or "juniper bays," as they are usually called. The tree growth in these is largely and often entirely juniper or white cedar (Chamaecyparis spheroidea Spach.) and white bay (Magnolia glauca L.). In the extreme eastern part of this section, in the immediate vicinity of the sea-coast, there is a characteristic arborescent flora of red cedars and live oaks, while along its southern limits the pal metto and American olive (Olea americana L.) give it a semitro poical aspect. On the other hand, as the clay and loam of the

hill country is neared, the oaks and hickories rapidly increase among the pines, making the transition to the hardwood uplands.

While this does not exhaust the list, even of the useful trees of this section, it includes those of greatest importance and widest distribution, and those most characteristic of the region. Those, however, which at present are of greatest economic importance are the pines, cypress, white cedar, ash and yellow poplar, and these only will be considered in detail, as the other forest trees of this section are not yet subject to the destructive agencies which prevent the extensive propagation and even threaten the future existence of at least one of the most valued of these trees.

NOMENCLATURE OF THE FOREST TREES.

The names of many trees occurring in the State are very much confused, some trees having several names applied to them in the same locality, while in other localities the same name is given to several distinct species. This is particularly true of the pines of the eastern section, so much so that they frequently cannot be distinguished at all by their local names. Names which are in very general use, and the use of which will prevent confusion, are those adopted by the United States Forestry Bureau. These names will be used throughout this report and are given in the following table along with the corresponding botanical terms and a list of the other names generally used in this State, with the region to which they are peculiar:

Long-leaf pine (Pinus palustris Mill., P. australis Michx.) is known everywhere by this name, but long-straw pine is a term frequently substituted for it, the leaves of the pine after they have fallen being always called "straw." Long-leaf old-field pine is the name given to the young growth in fields, etc. Pitch pine is used in the north-eastern counties and by turpentine distillers. Heart pine, North Carolina pine, Georgia pine and yellow pine are lumbermen's names.

LOBLOLLY PINE (P. Tacda L.) is a name rarely heard in this State in the field, short-leaf or short-straw pine being the usual name — Long-straw pine is heard in the north-east, where this tree grows—

with P. echinata (the short-leaf pine), and rosemary pine is used along the Cape Fear river. Slash pine, swamp pine and old-field pine are names frequently given to it. Sap pine, North Carolina pine and North Carolina sap pine are names in use among lumbermen.

SHORT-LEAF PINE (P. echinata Mill.).—Short-leaf pine and yellow pine are names given it in the middle and western sections of the State, and it is there also the old-field pine. It is spruce pine in eastern and south-eastern counties and is known among mill men as North Carolina and yellow pine.

SAVANNA PINE (P. serotina Michx.) is also called short-leaf, and other names for it are old-field pine, bastard short-leaf, swamp and pocosin pine. This pine is seldom recognized as distinct from the loblolly. Its most frequent designation where so distinguished is pocosin pine, from its growing in flat, marshy land; the flat, undrained lands, usually at the heads of streams, being called "pocosins." These pocosins are covered with a low growth of gums, this pine, and an undergrowth of gallberry bushes, huckleberries and andromedas, while in places there is more or less coarse, densely stooled grass and sedges. This land often appears to be on the point of becoming savanna land, should the drainage become more thorough or its surface be raised by an accumulating peat. The common names for the other trees of this region, which are being discussed as being at present of considerable economic importance, are widely known and merely deserve mention: Cypress (Taxodium distichum Rich.); yellow poplar (Liriodendron tulipifera L.); white cedar (Chamaecyparis spheroidea Spach.), often called juniper, a name that is also applied to a small shrub farther north. Although three species of ash occur no distinction is made between them, each being called These three species are the water ash (Fraxinus platycarpa Michx.), white ash (F. Americana L.) and red ash (F. pubescens Lam.). The first of these is a small tree confined in this State to swamps in the extreme eastern and southern parts. The other two are larger trees and occur in all parts of the State, either in swamps, along streams or in moist, cool places.

ORIGINAL DISTRIBUTION OF THE PINES.

The distribution of the pines and the respective area occupied by each in this State has changed a great deal since the first exploration of the country.

Long-leaf pine (P. palustris Mill.).—The distribution of no tree has been more affected than that of the long-leaf pine by the transformation from a wilderness to a civilized country. The long-leaf pine formerly extended over the entire area under consideration, growing upon the drier portion of the sand. In the southern and south-eastern counties it formed a forest of pine, unmixed with other trees, but in the northern and western counties it was confined to the sandy or gravelly drift along the higher and drier ridges, here intermixed with short-leaf pine and scattering oaks, while poplar and loblolly pine occupied the lowlands.

Early in the last century the production of tar and turpentine was a profitable industry north of Albemarle sound, the commodities being taken to Norfolk or Nansemond, Va., for market.* crude turpentine was shipped to England and there distilled. largest bodies of pine which then yielded turpentine were the one on "Sandy Ridge," lying to the north of Edenton, and another east of Chowan river, in Gates county, and extending north into Nansemond county, Va. Before 1850 these had ceased to be of economic consideration, such trees as had withstood the fires and wind having been converted largely into building material. Now only isolated trees are to be seen here, scattered among black-jacks on the highest land. That they ever occupied much of the land might be questioned but for the tar-kiln mounds with which these counties are studded, the land having now a heavy growth of loblolly pine, and the mounds even bearing trees of this latter species two or three feet in diameter.

Southward these pines occurred only scattered over the high, sandy land lying between Albemarle sound and Washington. Now a tree of this species is rarely seen here. Between Washington an 1 Newbern on a high sand ridge, with an area of 35,000 acre was the finest body of pine in the Pamlico peninsula, but there

^{*}Wm. Byrd, Westover MS., Petersburg, Va., 1841, p. 27. (This manuscript was written in 1722)

now very little merchantable timber of this kind left on it. of this body it occurred in Beaufort, Craven and Pitt counties, only thinly dispersed among the loblolly pines as far as Kinston in Lenoir county, where on a suitable soil it again became the dominant forest tree, extending west as far as Enfield, and nearly to Raleigh. On the maritime sand hills just within the sounds there was a narrow belt in Currituck county, and in Carteret a wider belt in the middle of the county, lying north and south, parallel to the coast. In Currituck it is now confined to the southern promontory which projects into Albemarle sound, and in Carteret there are only several million feet of mill timber on the sand ridges opposite Bogue sound. From Carteret southward there was some uniformity as to its manner of occurrence. It occupied a belt from two to twenty miles wide immediately on the coast; beyond that lay a poorly drained basin of variable width and broken contiguity, embracing oak flats and gum and cypress The long-leaf pine re-appeared west of this and extended in an unmixed forest, broken only by river swamp, streams and occasional "juniper bays," to its western limits at Cary to ten miles west of Troy, and to Lilesville in Anson county. It is in this stretch of country that the largest areas lie which are either partially or completely denuded of all valuable tree growth and where a future growth is being entirely kept down by the systematic burnings to which those lands are subjected.

South of North Carolina the long-leaf pine extends through Eastern South Carolina and Georgia, Southern Alabama and Mississippi, and west of the Mississippi river it re-appears in the sandy uplands of the valleys of the Red and Sabine rivers in Louisiana and eastern Texas, where it reaches its greatest development.

The quality of the wood of this pine varies considerably with the character of the soil on which it grows. Where the humus covering on the soil is thin, and the sand very deep, the tree has a coarser grain and a larger proportion of sap than where there is more organic matter in the soil, and it is not so highly silicious. The stocks with the coarser grain and larger amount of sap wood are distinguished as pitch pine, those with the finer grain and less sap wood as heart or yellow pine. The pitch pine yields turpentine

more abundantly, can be worked for a longer time, and is less injured by repeated boxing and chipping. It is the more abundant in Onslow and Brunswick counties near the sea-coast, and on the highest sand hills of northern Bladen, Sampson and Cumberland counties. The *yellow pine*, containing mostly heart wood, makes the finer lumber and is the variety sought for by lumbermen.

LOBLOLLY PINE (P. Taeda L.) was originally confined to the lower and moister land, especially where it was loamy or slightly clayey, over the entire coastal plain region and westward beyond it about forty miles. While its limits have not materially changed it has increased its acreage, occupying now some of the higher an <1 more sandy land, especially tracts which have once been undc-1 cultivation and much of the moister soil once completely or pa tially occupied by the long-leaf pine. Some original loblolly lare which had a clayey or gravelly soil has been occupied by a heter ◆ geneous growth of oaks, the white, post and black oaks ar d the black-jack being those that form the greater portion of the hardwood growth. As in the case of the long-leaf pine, that quality of the wood of the loblolly pine varies considerably wit h the different kinds of soil upon which it grows, and these varizations in the wood and habit of the tree have given rise to the use of different local names which are applied by many persons throughout this region to what are considered by them different varieties of the "short-leaf pine," as the loblolly is commonly called. The Y are all, however, the same species (the loblolly pine) and their differences in quality of wood and appearance are due simply to dissimilarity of soil and other conditions which surround their growth. The principal kinds to which local names have been given are the following:

(1). The rosemary pine has a fine-grained (or sometimes coarse) wood, with a thin sap. It grows along the borders of deep swamps or on mounds and hummocks within them, which are usually flooded during winter and spring. It grows with gums, cypress and ash, and is here the largest of the native pines, frequently attaining a diameter of 5 feet and a height of 130 to 140 feet, with a clear trunk of 80 to 90 feet. It has a bright brown bark broken into large, smooth, rectangular plates. It is found from

Virginia southward, the best developed trees recently observed being found on the Cape Fear river and its tributaries. South of the Cape Fear river they are not common. Some of these trees show on being cut that they are over 400 years old.

- (2). The swamp or slash pine, which is the most frequent form of the loblolly, has a coarse grain, with the sap wood occupying half or even more of the diameter. The tree is smaller and the wood not so highly valued as that of the preceding, and is also said to decay more rapidly. It is most common on the moist or wet lands north of the Neuse river, where it forms a compact forest; and through this region and in the adjacent parts of Virginia it is the chief lumber tree.
- (3). The old-field pine is a growth of the loblolly pine which is often looked upon in the south-eastern counties as a tree distinct from each of the preceding. It is, however, only a vigorous, exceedingly coarse-grained loblolly pine, which, having grown very fast, has only a small proportion of heart, logs 2 to 2½ feet in diameter rarely having one-fourth of their diameter heart. Of this open-grained wood both heart and sap decay rapidly on exposure to the weather unless painted or otherwise protected. But it is now being used very largely for indoor work, for which it is well adapted.

Short-leaf pine (Pinus echinata Mill.) is found mixed with hardwoods on all the dark, gravelly loam of the uplands and is there the chief lumber pine. In the eastern counties it was originally only scatteringly distributed, even in those adjacent to Albemarle and Pamlico sounds, where it was most abundant. From here it has been largely removed. South of Neuse river it was a rare tree, being found in small clumps interspersed among the long-leaf pines where the soil was inclined to be a dry or gravelly loam. Some trees on fertile soils become very large and have been removed for "tun timber." The wood of these larger trees is only a little coarser than that of the long-leaf pine; it is much lighter, though, and more brittle. On the sandy soil of the coastal plain region it does not abundantly reproduce itself, and young trees are uncommon, but on the uplands it is rapidly increasing and its young growth promises to play an extensive part in the future

development of this section. As it has the smallest cone and shortest leaf of any pine in the eastern portion of the State it can be readily distinguished. This pine has a wide distribution, extending north to Massachusetts and west to Kansas and eastern Texas. It always occurs mixed with hardwoods or other pines.

SAVANNA PINE cannot readily be distinguished from the loblolly in young trees, but mature trees are easily separated. It is a medium-sized tree, whose trunk holds its size well, being covered with limbs and knots for the upper two-thirds of its height-The leaves are similar to those of the loblolly, but the bark is a darker brown and smoother. It is always covered with cones, which remain on for several seasons. These are shorter than the cones of the loblolly, conical, and usually have the scales closel 3 oppressed. This species is of but little commercial value and rarely used for the reason that the wood is coarse-grained am gummy, with a large proportion of sap wood, and the trees a frequently unsound. The savanna pine has been but slight 1) affected by the causes which have operated to increase or diminish the distribution of the other pines. Being sawn for lumber on Ly by accident, and growing only on a few kinds of soil, and such soils as are unfit for agricultural purposes, the amount of it stan ding to-day is practically the same as formerly.

FORESTS AND FOREST REGIONS IN EASTERN NORTH CAROLINA.

The following descriptions of the counties of the coastal plain region show, in a general way, not only the quantity of merchantable timber now standing in the several counties, but also, when such figures were obtainable, the areas and character of such lands as have been lumbered. They also show the condition in which these lands were left after being cut over, and the kind of young growth which is succeeding the one removed, whether it be the same or a different kind, and give such tracts as have been burned over after lumbering, on which the tender young growth and trees which might serve for seed trees have been partially or complete by destroyed.

The acreage of the various kinds of timber, excepting the lor \(\)

leaf pine, is prepared from information furnished by county officials, lumbermen and residents familiar with the lands of their respective sections. The amount of standing long-leaf pine is an estimate based on the number of barrels of rosin produced in each county, the unboxed round pine and the abandoned orchard also being taken into consideration. These figures were corrected in some instances by the estimates obtained direct from the acreage of standing pine, the figures for such acreage coming from county records which show the character of the timbered lands of the townships. Besides this a thorough personal examination was made of the condition of the timbered lands in different sections of each county.

The counties, beginning with those that lie nearest to the coast and proceeding inland, have been grouped according to the character of their dominant economic timbers as they stand at the present time.

The seaboard region lies along the coast or but a short distance inland. It has an elevation of from 10 to 100 feet above the sea-level. Its average altitude, however, is not over 30 feet, and the only points which attain an elevation above 70 feet are line of drifting sand dunes along the north-east coast, which in places are over 100 feet high.* The counties included in this region are Columbus, Brunswick, Pender, Onslow, Duplin, Carteret, Jones, Craven, Pamlico, Beaufort, Hyde, Dare, Tyrrell, Washington, Chowan, Perquimans, Pasquotank, Camden and Currituck. These counties have loblolly pine as the dominant forest tree, though in the most southern ones there is considerable long-leaf pine, and there are numerous swamps with a growth of sweet and black gums, cypress and white cedar.

The inland loblolly pine region, which lies along the Neuse river and north of it, farther inland than the seaboard, embraces the counties of Gates, Hertford, Bertie, Martin, Pitt, Greene, Edgecombe, Wilson, Lenoir, Wayne and Johnston. Their elevation is slightly higher than that of the seaboard counties, and will average between 100 and 150 feet, being higher toward their western borders. Their upland growth is nearly all loblolly pine, except

Geology of North Carolina, W. C. Kerr, Vol. I, 1875, pp. 13-19.

that in Lenoir, Wayne and Johnston counties there is considerable long-leaf pine. There are few swamps except along the streams.

THE PINE-BARREN REGIONS.—The counties containing the larger portion of the pine-barren areas are New Hanover, Sampson, Bladen, Robeson, Cumberland, Harnett, Richmond and Moore. These lie south of the Neuse river and just west of the southern seaboard, excepting New Hanover, which is situated at the mouth of the Cape Fear river. The altitude of these counties varies between about the same limits which were given for the inland loblolly pine counties. Long-leaf pine of the sand black-jack, which has largely replaced it, is the characteristic growth of these counties.

The transition region.—Nash, Halifax and Northamptora counties form a tier of counties which are transitional between the loblolly uplands and the hardwood hills. These in their western portions have an altitude of from 200 to 400 feet, while their easteraportions lie at a lower level. They have no swamps except narroustrips of alluvium lowlands along the streams, which are subject to verflow. Montgomery, Chatham and Wake form another tier constitutional counties. They lie partly in the long-leaf pine belt and partly in the hardwood hill country. The western portions of these counties reach an altitude varying from 450 to 700 feet; but along the streams and in the more easterly portions their altitude is considerably less.

THE SEABOARD REGION.

Brunswick county has in its western part 4,000 acres of white cedar land, most of it located along Juniper creek, Green swamp and its ramifications, and 20,000 acres of excellent cypress and loblolly pine lands which have never been lumbered. The lumbered districts lie in the northern part of the county along the W. C. & A. R. R. and in the northern arms of the Green swamp, which are tributary to the Cape Fear river. Much timber has also been rafted out by way of Waccamaw river from the extreme western part of the county to the mills at Georgetown, S. C. The oak lands bordering the numerous swamps are equal in area to the cypress lands and are destined to become very valuable. The entire swamp area is 166,000 acres, one-half of which is gum

wamps and cane brakes. The cutting has been done gradually in hese swamps and the young growth is in a fair condition. The ong-leaf pine lands lie in the southern and central parts of the county and consist mostly of turpentine orchards either still being worked or now abandoned. There are in this county 130,000,000 feet of standing long-leaf pine.

Columbus county has in its southern and eastern parts, along Waccamaw river and the lake swamp and in Green bay, some very fine cypress. These bodies have in part been lumbered. In White and Brown marshes and in the western section of the county, along Lumber river and Big swamp, there are large tracts of unlumbered cypress lands. The total area of cypress in the county is about 32,000 acres. In Green bay swamp, from which large quantities of white cedar have already been taken, there still remains a great deal more. There are 60,000 acres of swamp lands in the county. On the level pine flats there are between ten and twenty thousand acres of loblolly pine, largely second growth, very little of which has ever been cut. The long-leaf pine lands lying in the central and northern portions of the county have 145,000,000 feet of merchantable pine standing on them.

DUPLIN COUNTY contains about 12,000 acres of cypress swamp along the North East river and its tributaries. Adjacent to the streams much of the best timber has been culled or picked over. The remaining merchantable cypress lies principally along North East river, Back swamp, Goshen, Lockwood and Cypress pocosins. There are excellent water oak, willow oak and swamp chestnut oak in the flats bordering the above-mentioned swamps and Angola bay. There is some ash and yellow poplar, but the wood of neither tree is here of a superior quality. Over one-half of the swamp area, which amounts to about 38,000 acres, is covered with compact forests of black and sweet gum and tupelo. The loblolly pine, which is largely second growth, occupies about 50,000 acres. There is still some rosemary pine on the more fertile lands around the smaller swamps. The quantity of standing long-leaf pine is not large, only 68,000,000 feet. This county and Pender have furnished a great deal of timber for the Wilmington mills.

PENDER COUNTY.—Several of the swamps of this county are

continuations of the swamps of Duplin which lie along the North East river. Besides these there is Holly Shelter swamp, a large swamp in the eastern section of the county and extending into Onslow county. There is altogether 15,000 acres of cypress land, one-third of which has been culled, the largest and finest trees having been cut out to make drawn shingles from them. finest cypress is located in Holly Shelter and the North East river swamp. Angola bay, lying partly in this county and partly in Duplin, covers 120,000 acres. Through this swamp there are extensive areas which have a very poor, sandy soil and are covered only with reeds and brambles and the savanna pine. There is a considerable area of water oak and swamp white oak flats bordering the swamps. The swamp area is about 160,000 acres. loblolly is largely second growth and occupies the flat pine lands of the middle section. There are 90,000,000 feet of long-leaf pine standing in the county.

Onslow county.—Although this county has a very large swamp area, over 100,000 acres being swamp, only about 4,000 acres of it, consisting of narrow strips along the streams, can be called cypress Both White Oak swamp and Holly Shelter swamp are fringed with a broad belt of swamp white oak and water oak flats. At least one-third of these swamps is "gladey," being covered with gallberry bushes, or cane brakes and a scrubby growth of savanna pines, and has a soil of sand that is exceedingly barren of fertility and forests. There are no extensive areas of heavily timbered gum swamp in the county. Loblolly lands, covering 58,000 acres, occupy the greater part of the center of the county, while the long-leaf pine lies chiefly in the north-western part. There are 60,000,000 feet of the latter standing. The sand hills adjacent to the coast, formerly covered with long-leaf pine, are now almost In parts of the county near the coast there is a scattering growth of red cedars. They are, indeed, in this and Carteret counties more abundant than in any other portions of the State, but are generally found in considerable numbers on all the "banks" and islands skirting the coast. White cedar occurs in several "bays" in the western section of the county, and forms the growth of a "bay" of considerable size near the source of White

Dak river. The loblolly and cypress have been removed to a large extent from the territory drained by White Oak river. Lumbering has only lately begun, however, in other parts of the county.

Carteret county.—There is now found in Carteret county scarcely any cypress suitable for mill purposes. The loblolly pine area is about 30,000 acres, over one-half of which have been lumbered. In southern Carteret, near the coast, there are 20,000,000 feet of long-leaf pine, all consisting of timber standing in abandoned orchards. In the eastern section of the county there is an open pocosin of 80,000 acres, bordered with oak flats, but farther in only poorly timbered with savanna pine or in places entirely open.

CRAVEN COUNTY.—Although extensive lumbering has been carried on in this county for over half a century it has large tracts of second growth of loblolly forest which have never been cut into. The long-leaf pine was first removed and was rapidly replaced by the loblolly pine, except on the high, sandy lands lying north of the Neuse river. Most of the lumber now manufactured in the county is from this latter pine, although for some mills the savanna pine furnishes a great many logs. There are nearly 200,000 acres of swamp in the county, the Dover swamp, lying in the south-western section, having an area of over 120,000 acres. This swamp is sandy, and in the interior is covered with an open growth of the savanna pine and occasional cane brakes. It has been partially lumbered. The other swamps are fringed with swamp chestnut, oak or water oak flats, which have never been cut into. Besides the swamp lands there is a great deal of loblolly pine land south of the Neuse, which has been more or less cut over. North of the Neuse the loblolly pine lands are in about the same condition as on the southern side. There are in the county probably 38,000 acres of unlumbered loblolly pine land. The supply of cypress and ash in the river swamps is nearly exhausted, Swift creek and Trent river being now the principal sources of supply.

Jones county lies between Craven and Onslow counties and is penetrated by some of the largest swamps in this region. Doverswamp lies in the northern part of Jones, and White Oak swamp covers a large part of the territory south of the Trent, which flows through the center of the county and with its tributaries drains nearly its entire area. In the extreme eastern part lies the great pocosin of which Catfish lake is the center. This pocosin, extending eastward, occupies under different names much of the territory of southern Craven. All of these swamps in their interior have considerable tracts of land entirely untimbered, or covered with scattering savanna pines, small maples and gums, and have a large, unproductive soil of silt. They are, for the most part, bordered by extensive oak flats, though around White Oak swamp there are still large quantities of yellow poplar, ash and cypress. The cypress along the Trent river has been largely removed. The entire swamp area in the county approximates 125,000 acres. Excepting some narrow strips of sand hills lying parallel to the Trent river, which have a few million feet of long-leaf pine on them, the rest of the county consists of flat, loblolly pine lands, which have been largely cut over. There are between 25,000 and 30,000 acres, mostly lying in the western part of the county, yet in a virgin state. county yearly supplies several million feet of logs for the mills at Newbern.

Pameico county has 3,000 acres of white cedar swamp, partly lumbered, lying near Vandemere and along the western edge of Big Gum swamp in the northern part of the county. There are 7,000 acres of cypress swamp, over half of which are lumbered. This cypress swamp lies near the mouth of Bay river and in Gum swamp. The remaining swamp area is heavily timbered with yellow poplar, gums, chestnut oaks and water oaks. The soil of these swamps, though inclined to be peaty, is exceedingly fertile. loblolly formerly covered all the rest of the county with the exception of a narrow strip of high, sandy land in the north-western section, which, in the character of its soil and the kinds of trees which grew on it, approached the pine barrens. There is now, however, no merchantable long-leaf pine in the county and not more than 10,000 acres of loblolly pine suitable for milling purposes. The central part of Big Gum swamp is open, covered with scattered savanna pines and an undergrowth of gallberries, huckleberries, brambles, etc.

Beaufort county.—There is some cypress along Chocowinity,

Blount and the other streams of the county, but the supply is rapidly being exhausted. The loblolly pine, which had an original area of over 100,000 acres, has been largely removed except in the north-eastern section. Much of the best oak in the county has been converted into staves for the West Indies trade.

The Pamlico peninsula, consisting of the counties of Hyde, Dare, Tyrrell and Washington, is largely swamp, having over 1,000,000 acres of swamp in it. The uplands consist of narrow strips surrounding the swamp and land which has been drained around lakes Phelps, Pungo and Mattamuskeet. Around the eastern edge of the swamp and enclosing the sound is a narrow strip of treeless sand dunes. Much of the soil of the swamp, especially in Dare, Hyde and Tyrrell, is peaty and covered with a growth of white cedar and bays. There is estimated to be about 40,000 acres of white cedar now in the swamp. The cypress acreage is not near so large as formerly, but there is still a large amount standing. The largest bodies lie in Tyrrell and Washington counties. The cypress lands, too, are the most fertile, and have to a large extent been drained and put under cultivation. Along the outer edges of the swamps are oak flats, which in Hyde are very extensive.

The northern portions of Dare, Tyrrell and Washington, bordering on the sound, have a growth largely of loblolly pine with some oak lowlands. The standing pine has been removed from over half of this area, which is about 100,000 acres. In western Dare there are also extensive tracts of pine lands which extend into Beaufort county. Much of the swamp in Washington and Tyrrell counties is thinly timbered with the savanna pine. There is a great deal of soft maple and yellow poplar scattered through the swamp, and in places on the most fertile soils are considerable quantities of hickory, both the shag-bark and white-heart hickory. Lumbering has been one of the leading industries of these counties for a great many years, the numerous canals and streams which penetrate the region affording great facilities for removing timber.

THE COUNTIES NORTH OF ALBEMARLE SOUND are so similar in the character of their forests and soil, and are so closely connected with each other, that they can best be described as one body. Five counties occupy this territory, Chowan, Perquimans, Pasquotank,

Camden and Currituck, lying from west to east in the order named. All except Chowan are penetrated in the northern parts by the Dismal swamp, or arms of it which lie on the boundary between this State and Virginia. About 65,000 acres of Dismal swamp area lie in these counties. Although the swamp varies a great deal in character of soil, most of it is peaty and was formerly covered by a heavy growth of white cedar. All of this cedar swamp has been lumbered, except about 8,000 acres, and about 8,000 acres have been repeatedly burnt over, effectually destroying all trees, and in places burning out the soil to a great depth. There were some narrow tracts of cypress in these swamps, and also in the swamps along the streams, but the cypress, like the white cedar, has been largely removed. These streams rise in the Dismal swamp and flow southward, cutting this territory into long divisions, forming the natural boundaries of the counties and convenient water-ways for removing timber along them. Oak was at one time abundant, but the finest has been cut out for staves and to supply the Norfolk navy yards. The finest pine also was removed many years ago for use in the navy yards.

The construction of two canals, the numerous natural waterways, and later a railroad crossing these at right angles, associated with the nearness of Norfolk and the facilities offered there for the shipment and marketing of lumber, had, as early as 1850, built up a large trade in timber and lumber from these counties. The lumber which is now manufactured is almost entirely from the loblolly pine. During the past decade there has been shipped from this section in the log over 800,000,000 feet board measure, while nearly as much more has been sawn by local mills; but such is the wonderful recuperative power of the loblolly pine forests on a suitable soil that now there remains not less than 25,000 acres of merchantable pine. The production of timber in these counties is, however, not one-half of what it was ten years ago, and sooner or later the annual output will be reduced to the increase in the forest by the growth each year.

These regions around the Dismal swamp were about the sout laern limits of the economic distribution of the holly, the trees reac lain and here a large size. Large quantities of holly, dogwood and s

maple have also been removed, but there is still a great deal left. Some sandy ridges near the middle of these counties were once covered with long-leaf pine, but there are scarcely any trees of it left now. The area of these counties is 750,000 acres, over 95,000 of which are in swamps. The savanna pine is found at intervals through the swamps, and extends into Southern Virginia, as does the tupelo gum. Some of the cypress lands are largely timbered with gums. The soil, for the most part, is sand or a sandy loam, but in the Dismal swamp, where it is not peaty, it is usually composed of fine silt. The timber lands of these counties have, as a rule, been more thoroughly lumbered than any others in the State.

THE INLAND LOBLOLLY PINE REGION.

GATES COUNTY, like the region just described, lies on the Virginia line, and has the extreme eastern part lying in the Dismal swamp. The Chowan river, which forms the southern and western boundary of the county, has along its entire course a narrow swamp. are 20,000 acres of white cedar lands in this swamp and several thousand acres in the Dismal swamp which are untimbered. little cypress still standing in the county lies along Bennett's creek. Loblolly pine, which occupied the central and eastern parts of the county, growing on a sandy loam, has been removed, except between ten and twenty thousand acres which are in small tracts. In the western part of the county is a high sand ridge resembling the pine The long-leaf pine has been removed from this and an open growth of loblolly and short-leaf pine with black-jack beneath them has taken its place. In the extreme north-western portion there is a strip of bright-colored loam soil, timbered with a heavy growth of post, black and red oaks. Most of the timber cut from this county is transported to Virginia.

HERTFORD COUNTY is the first of a number of counties lying in the pine uplands which has no large swamps. The eastern and southern parts of the county have a sandy loam soil, in places silty and very compact, which was covered with a dense loblolly pine forest, now largely lumbered, through which were interspersed narrow strips of white and red oak lands. In the northern part of the county there is more oak and dogwood mingled with the pine.

There are about 25,000 acres of unlumbered loblolly pine land. The cypress, which is confined to the alluvial land along the streams, is more abundant along the Ahosky and Pottecasy than any other streams.

Bertie county has a soil and growth similar to those of Hertford county, consisting for the most part of upland loblolly pine lands. In the southern part, however, it is skirted by the Roanoke river, which is bordered with a broad swamp still having large quantities of white and red oaks, gums, maple, cottonwood, hickory, sycamore and elms and some ash and cypress in it. There is also some cypress along Cashie and Roquest creeks. Although the timber yield of this county has been very large for a number of years there are now standing 65,000 acres of unlumbered loblolly pine. Early in this century Bertie county was known as the "pine forest," on account of the density and excellence of its forests of this tree.

Martin county lies south of Bertie on the opposite side of the Roanoke. Its soil is similar to that of the last described counties, but the Roanoke river swamp is less continuous, being confined to several bends in the river in the eastern part of the county. Along the river there are some narrow sand ridges, now covered with black-jacks and small post and red oaks. The remainder of the forest area is loblolly pine land, about two-thirds of which has been cut over. The county is the seat of extensive milling operations.

PITT COUNTY, being drained in the northern and eastern parts by the Tar river and Grindle creek, one of its largest tributaries, has for many years furnished large quanties of timber for the mills at Washington. Along all the streams are large stretches of cypress swamp and oak lands, the latter forming virgin forests and the former only partially lumbered. The loblolly pine near the larger streams has been extensively cut. In the southern and western sections the soil becomes more sandy, and the original growth, long-leaf pine, has been replaced by loblolly pine, mixed with a low growth of oaks. The loblolly has never been removed from this section.

GREENE COUNTY, which lies just south of Pitt, has in the northern parts a soil similar to that of the adjacent portion of Pitt, are

s covered with similar forests. In the southern section the soil is more sandy and there are numerous sand hills, approaching the pine barrens, now nearly denuded of the long-leaf pine, which was once abundant, and largely covered with sand black-jacks. Along Contentnea creek and its numerous tributaries, which drain the entire county, are extensive tracts of cypress swamps. In the northern part of the county these swamps, which extend over into Pitt, have been but little lumbered; in the central portion, however, exploration has been carried farther. About one-half of the forest lands, or 30,000 acres, is still covered with merchantable loblolly pine.

EDGECOMBE AND WILSON COUNTIES lie west of those last described and have an average elevation of about 50 feet higher than that of these counties. Their soil is considerably drier and more sandy than that of the section to the east of them, being a sandy loam, which in places passes almost into sand. The long-leaf pine, which primarily occupied these lands, has been largely destroyed and a scattering growth of loblolly pine, with an undergrowth of low-post and red oaks and dogwood or thickets of black-jack oak, have taken its place. There are along the streams occasional strips of cypress swamp which have not been lumbered and there is a considerable quantity of other swamp timber, sweet and black gums, tupelo, soft maple, and occasional overcup and chestnut oaks. Although over one-half of the area of these counties is under cultivation, there is still standing a considerable quantity of merchantable loblolly pine.

WAYNE, another of the loblolly pine counties, has in the section contiguous to Wilson county a soil and forest similar to those of Wilson, but south of the Neuse river, which flows through the centre of the county, there are extensive tracts of pine barrens, stripped of pine and covered with sand black-jack oak or completely denuded. Skirting the Neuse river and its tributaries are tracts of swampy alluvium, on which there are still merchantable gums and oaks, and in places cypress and ash. The loblolly pine (rosemary), which was once abundant along these lands, has for the post part been removed. There are several small white cedar bays" at different places in the county. The loblolly pine, except

that along the streams, is all second growth and forms open forests. About one-fifth of the wood land, or 30,000 acres, is loblolly pine fit for mill timber. When removed this loblolly pine is apt to be succeeded by small oaks. There are now standing in this county probably 30,000,000 feet of scattering long-leaf pine.

LENOIR COUNTY is situated on the Neuse just below Wayne, and its swamp lands along the Neuse are of the same character and in a similar condition. The extreme southern and western parts of the county are very sandy, and in places on the ridges there are important bodies of long-leaf pine, or black-jack oak, which in places has replaced it, while between the ridges there lie very narrow alluvial or peaty bottoms covered with a growth of swamp timbers. Scattered through the county are plains, at times inundated, on which there is a growth of oaks, maples, elms and ash. The eastern section is flat loblolly pine land covered with a heavy growth, except near the river; but there are scattered through this loblolly pine forest small pocosins covered with savanna pines and a variety of shrubs. There are about 30,000 acres of loblolly pine and 30,000,000 feet of standing long-leaf pine in the county.

Johnston county lies west of Wayne and is also drained by the Neuse. Along the river and its numerous tributaries there are the usual strips of swampy alluvium covered with swamp timbers. In the eastern and southern parts of the county the soil is a sandy loam, which becomes more loamy toward the north and west, and the surface in these sections is more rolling and hilly. The timber on this loam consists of long-leaf pine, mixed with oaks and loblolly pine, and in the southern section near the river there are quantities of valuable loblolly pine. There has been very little milling done in the county, but considerable timber has been rafted to mills down the river. The long-leaf pine is being very rapidly replaced by the loblolly pine, the amount of the former now standing being only about 160,000,000 feet.

THE PINE-BARREN REGION.

In Robeson county there is along the dark loam lands of the Lumber river 28,000 acres occupied exclusively by the loblotty

ine. This pine is in all stages of growth, and is gradually taking he place of the long-leaf pine as the latter is being destroyed by forst fires or otherwise. Many of these tracts covered with loblolly ine appear, however, to have always been occupied by this tree rhich here forms, on soil sufficiently moist and loamy, small clumps of unmixed growth frequently 100 acres or more in extent. rees are coarse-grained, largely of sap wood, and are from two o two and one-half feet in diameter. None of these have ever been cut for lumber. In Big swamp there is probably 5,000 acres of loblolly pine, which is largely of the rosemary variety, mixed vith large gums and cypress trees. Only a part of this swamp has been lumbered. The area of the gum and cypress swamps is about 30,000 acres, lying in Big swamp and its tributary marshes, Flowers swamp and the other swamps along Lumber river. There nas been very little lumbering done in them. There are no extenive oak flats in the county and little ash or poplar. On the longeaf pine uplands, lying in the southern and northern sections of he county, there are 280,000,000 feet of merchantable timber. The pine lying immediately along the railroads has been to a large xtent removed.

Bladen county has about 12,000 acres of cypress land lying long Brown marsh, Big swamp, Cape Fear river, Colly and Turnoull creeks. About 4,000 acres have been more or less thoroughly umbered; and there are about 3,500 acres of white cedar swamp, rhich have to a large extent been cut over, but were left in a fair This latter lies in Big Juniper bay and various smaller pays on the north side of the Cape Fear. There are large tracts of untouched oak flats and gum swamps mostly in the southern and western parts of the county. Good ash, except in the smaller swamps, is becoming scarce. This county has a swamp area of about 55,000 acres. The loblolly pine, except along the swamps, is usually scattering. There cannot be less than 10,000 acres occupied by this pine, only the finest and largest trees having been emoved. The long-leaf pine lands of Bladen have been very adly treated. On either side of the Cape Fear river there are *tensive tracts of "pine barrens," on which this pine has been ry largely destroyed, so that it is really waste land. But there

is still about 308,000,000 feet of standing long-leaf pine, lying chiefly in the western and southern parts of the county.

NEW HANOVER COUNTY lies immediately on the coast, and consists largely of pine barrens. The long-leaf pine has been for the most part removed or destroyed. There are still, however, several million feet standing in different parts of the county. In the northern part along the North East river there is some swamp land timbered with gums and some oak. Smith's island, which lies at the southern extremity, is densely timbered with a growth of hardwoods, largely water and live oaks, interspersed with palmettos.

CUMBERLAND COUNTY, like the northern part of Bladen, lies largely in the sand-hill region and contains considerable areas of "pine barrens," from which the original long-leaf pine forests have been removed. In the eastern part of the county there is some white cedar along the streams or occupying small swamps, and along most of the deeper streams there is cypress. There are no extensive bodies of merchantable oak or loblolly pine to be found. In the eastern part of the county the long-leaf pine has been largely cut out, but west of Fayetteville it forms extensive forests, extending nearly to the Moore county line; and there are probably 310,000,000 feet of standing long-leaf pine in this region.

Harnett county is situated north of Cumberland, and that part of it lying south of the Cape Fear river, which divides the county into northern and southern halves, is a continuation of the rolling sand-hill country with its pine barrens of Cumberland county. The larger part of these pine lands is in an exceedingly bad condition, having been burnt over until there are extensive tracts entirely denuded of all tree growth. There is very little cypress to be found in the county. North of the Cape Fear river the country merges into the dark loam uplands covered with a young growth of oaks, dogwood and loblolly pine, which are replacing the long-leaf pine. There is only about 200,000,000 feet of long-leaf pine now standing in the county. Harnett county furnishes some timber for the Wilmington market, last year it having been estimated that about 1,500,000 feet, board measure, of long-leaf pine timber was rafted down the Cape Fear river.

Sampson county.—The oak lands of Sampson lie in the north-rn part of the county and are covered with a growth of young rhite and post oaks. There are no large bodies of water or chest-nut oak flats. The cypress and gum swamps lie in narrow strips along Black river and Big and Little Cohary creeks. The unlumbered cypress lands cover about 3,800 acres, and about an equal area has been cut over to obtain timber for the Wilmington market. The long-leaf pine lies chiefly in the southern and central parts of the county. The standing pine amounts to about 330,000,000 feet. The loblolly pine, largely second growth, is scattered through all sections of the county and occupies about 35,000 acres. This county has for many years furnished a large part of the timber that is carried to Wilmington.

RICHMOND COUNTY.—The larger portion of this county may be described as being typical sand-hill country, the surface being undulating and even hilly, and the soil sandy; the sand often being many feet deep. In the extreme western part there is along the Pee Dee a narrow strip of alluvial swamp, heavily timbered with red, overcup and chestnut oaks, red maple and hickory. In the eastern part of the county there are white cedar, gums and cypress of inferior quality along the streams. The long-leaf pine which covers the remainder of the county has, over the larger areas, been removed when adjacent to the railroads. Lumbering is, however, largely carried on in the northern part of the county at the present time, and extensive bodies of timber still remain there and in the eastern section. There remains probably 220,000,000 feet of standing long-leaf pine.

Moore county lies north of Richmond and has in the southern part, along the sand hills, a similar soil and topography. This section, embracing the southern two-thirds of the county, is covered with long-leaf pine and is the seat of the largest long-leaf pine industry in the State at the present time. In the middle portion of the county, where the soil is more loamy, there is considerable post oak and small hickories mixed in with the pine along the hill-sides and yellow poplars and a few loblolly pines along the lowlands. The northern third of the county has a loamy soil covered with a growth of hardwoods mixed with long-

leaf and short-leaf pines. Although extensive lumbering operations have been carried on in these pineries for the past fifteen years, so that all timber near existing lines of railroad has been removed, there are probably 320,000,000 feet of long-leaf pine still standing in the county. The long-leaf pine is succeeded in this county, as is the case in Richmond, by sand black-jack oaks. In the very sandy parts of the county there is only a little loblolly pine, with small cypress trees and some white cedar scattered along the streams.

THE TRANSITION REGION.

NORTHAMPTON COUNTY is situated on the boundary between the loblolly pine uplands and the hardwood hills which cross the western third of the county. The loblolly is mixed in places with scattered short-leaf pine, and is, except along the swamps and streams, very largely a second growth. It has never been lumbered. The southern and western boundary of the county is the Roanoke river, and along its entire course there is a strip of alluvial swamp from one to three miles wide, covered where there have been no clearings made with a heavy growth of trees similar to that along the same river in Bertie county (p. 20).

HALIFAX COUNTY.—The eastern half of Halifax county, like the greater part of Northampton, is a fairly level region, with an average elevation of but little more than 100 feet above sea-level. soil is generally a sandy loam, and the forests of this region consist mainly of loblolly pine with the short-leaf pine, post oak, spanish and white oak interspersed. On the northern boundary of the county along the Roanoke river lowlands, which are of less extent on this side of the river than on the northern side in Northampton county, are at intervals forests of black gum, sweet gum, red maple, elm, red oak, ash, sycamore, hackberry, and other deciduous trees. Occasionally one finds on portions of these fertile lowlands, the cultivation of which ceased some fifty years ago, vigorous but scattering black walnut trees nearly 2 feet in diameter and more than 50 feet high. Beech creek, likewise, with its larger affluents, Marsh and Beaver Dam creeks, have along their courses some ash, cypress, gums and tupelo, and these streams are bordered in places with extensive flats of scarlet, chestnut, overcup and willow oaks. The western half of the county is quite hilly, as are also the western portions of Northampton and Nash counties. The soil, while sandy, gravelly and pebbly in places, is in general much more clayey than that of the eastern section. The forests of this western half of the county are mostly oaks, hickories and other hardwood trees, with a few scattering short-leaf pines.

NASH COUNTY has a soil and topography much resembling those of eastern Wake, being a rolling country, hilly along the larger streams and having a light loam soil. The growth, also, is like that of Wake, consisting of scattered long-leaf pines, about 20,000,000 feet, board measure, standing, which is rapidly being replaced by loblolly, or on close soils by oaks, dogwood and hickories. The long-leaf pine extends west to the clay hills; on which the hardwoods of the uplands are mixed with short-leaved pines. There is more loblolly pine here than in Wake, both original growth and second growth. There has been very little lumbering done in the county except immediately along the lines of the railroads.

Montgomery county, lying west of Moore, has in the eastern part, on a loam soil, a heavy growth of long-leaf pine which has never been lumbered. This growth toward the middle of the county is mixed with short-leaf pine and hardwoods, and there the hardwood uplands begin. This is the finest body of pine for lumber now in the State, having been worked for turpentine for only four or five years. There are 338,000,000 feet of long-leaf pine in the county and about 40,000,000 feet of short-leaf. There are some extensive bodies of hardwoods in the Uwharrie mountains in the western section.

CHATHAM COUNTY now has an inconsiderable amount of long-leaf pine in the extreme south-eastern section. Its place has been taken as it was removed by a heterogeneous growth of oaks and the short-leaf pine. In the middle part of the county there are along the ridges short-leaf pines and hardwoods, while the low-lands along the Haw and the Deep rivers are timbered in most places with oaks, maple and loblolly pine.

Wake county has in the eastern part considerable long-leaf pine still standing, mixed with a young and vigorous growth of oaks and dogwood. The soil is for the most part a reddish loam, inter-

spersed with sandy ridges, on which the long-leaf pine, where it has not been replaced by black-jacks, is more abundant than on the loam. There are 30,000,000 feet of this pine standing. East of the center of the county the short-leaf pine appears, and from there westward it is the commonest old-field pine. There is a very large acreage of both second growth short-leaf and loblolly pines in the county and probably 60,000,000 feet of their original growth standing in the eastern section. To the north and west of Raleigh the surface is more broken and the oak growth more abundant, except along the gravelly ridges, where there is short-leaf pine. West of Wake the loblolly pine becomes less frequent.

EXISTING SUPPLY OF TIMBER IN EASTERN NORTH CAROLINA.

In conclusion, it can be said that certain kinds of timber, both useful and abundant, are as yet of little commercial importance in most parts of the coastal plain region. Such are water, willow, overcup and chestnut oaks, sweet and black gums, soft maple and sycamore. The supply of some other kinds of timber, such as ash and holly, has been nearly exhausted.

There are still large quantities of cypress standing in some counties, while in others the supply has been almost exhausted. This tree is of very slow growth and shows little tendency to reproduce itself abundantly, the regrowth after it has been removed generally being sweet and black gums. The soil of cypress swamps is usually one of the best of swamp soils and when drained is very productive; so these swamps are being put under cultivation. Considerable areas have already been reclaimed for agricultural purposes, and a great deal more is to be thus reclaimed in the near future. It is evident from this that in this State there will never be any general second growth of cypress to take the place of that which is now being removed.

White cedar, which usually occurs with white bays in small swamps or in clumps in other swamps, flourishes only on a peaty or very sandy soil which is largely mixed with organic matter. These soils are unfit for agricultural purposes and their fertility is easily destroyed by fire during very dry seasons, especially where

the dried debris resulting from logging fills the woods. Unless these swamps are burnt out a growth of the same species is most likely to replace the white cedar after lumbering, but in the event of a fire the white bay (Magnolia glauca L.) will succeed and usually retain possession. Although white cedar is very valuable, grows rapidly, and there is only a comparatively small amount in the Eastern United States, these swamps are from carelessness frequently burnt and the chance of a regrowth thus destroyed.

The loblolly pine, now generally recognized as a valuable lumber tree, is the dominant pine over a large area, and has been removed from only a relatively small part of the territory it occupied. It is a tree of rapid growth which seeds abundantly and usually follows itself after lumbering. Oak occasionally replaces it as the hardwood uplands are neared. However, on account of the destruction of a great part of the young growth, these second growth forests are never as dense as they should be. This produces less timber to the acre and is the cause of many deformities, as knotty, crooked and short-stemmed stocks. The loblolly pine is also taking the place of the long-leaf pine in the forest on moist soils, and on drier soils when the latter have been under cultivation. The standing merchantable loblolly pine can be said to cover about 1,150,000 acres in the eastern part of the State. Allowing a cut of 4,000 feet, board measure, to the acre, this will make 4,600,000,000 feet of standing loblolly pine. At the present rate of cutting, 290,000,000 feet, board measure, having been reported as cut during 1893, this would last fifteen years. The final amount cut will, however, be much larger than this, since in the meanwhile there will be a constant increase each year in the amount of young growth available for milling purposes and a considerable increase in the size of the merchantable pine now standing. entire acreage of loblolly pine land, including the lumbered areas with second growth on them, the unlumbered and lands where it is taking the place of the long-leaf pine, is considerably over 4,000,000 acres.

There are possibly 300,000,000 feet of the savanna pine in pocosins and around the edges of swamps and nearly as much short-leaf pine situated in the counties bordering the oak uplands. Most of this will be lumbered along with the loblolly pine.

The total amount of merchantable long-leaf pine now standing in the State is about 3,103,000,000 feet. The estimate of Mr. Kidder, of Wilmington, N. C., prepared for the United States Census Department, fixes the amount of timber, standing, on May 31, 1880, in the counties south of the Neuse river, at 5,229,000,000 feet. This, compared with the amount now standing in the same counties, shows a decrease of 2,000,000,000 feet in the amount of merchantable pine in thirteen and one-half years. At this rate of decrease in less than twenty years the long-leaf forests will be a thing of the past. The rate of decrease is, however, one of constant acceleration, since the yearly output of the mills is increasing and there is a much larger amount of abandoned orchard at the mercy of wind and fire.

At the end of twenty years there may remain scattered bodies of this pine remote from transportation facilities or too small to be profitably sawn, but there will be nothing more. The length of time the long-leaf pine will last can be stated with more certainty than in case of the loblolly pine, because in the case of the former there is no appreciable addition of merchantable timber from second growth woods.

The total amount of merchantable pine of all kinds (loblolly, long-leaf, short-leaf and savanna) in these Eastern North Carolina counties can be placed at about 8,200,000,000 feet, board measure.

The amount of standing swamp timber cannot be estimated with any degree of accuracy, since no average can be arrived at for the cut per acre, and only approximate figures can be gotten for the acreage. Cypress, for instance, will cut from 500 to 5,000 feet to the acre as a general thing, but numerous reports were made by trustworthy lumbermen of cuts running from 15,000 to 20,000 feet to the acre. There is a very wide range given for the amount of white cedar to the acre, but not so wide as that for cypress. The water oak and chestnut oak lands usually have a more uniform growth, and will cut from 1,500 to 3,000 feet to the acre. One of the chief difficulties connected with the handling of this oak, where such has been attempted, is that when green it has a greater specific gravity than water and cannot be floated out unless rafted with lighter woods. The same is true of the elm, hickory and much of the gum.

CHAPTER II.

THE WASTE LANDS OF EASTERN NORTH CAROLINA.

It is a very generally received opinion that the eastern part of North Carolina, especially that part covered with the long-leaf pine, is so densely wooded that for very many years at least there will be there not only an abundant supply of timber, but of a timber of the very finest quality. The long-leaf pine for nearly two hundred years has fully supplied all demands, not showing until very recently the least sign of failing. During the period between 1860 and 1870 the timber of the "pine barrens" was treated in a most reckless manner, and the fires which passed through them left traces which will last for many years to come, burning thousands of acres as clean as if they had been placed under cultiva-The timber which suffered most was that on the highest and driest land, where the ground was covered beneath the trees with a thick growth of wire-grass (Aristida stricta Mx.) and such broom grasses as grow on dry, sandy soil (Andropogon tener Kunt. and A. Elliottii Chap.).

The 3,100,000,000 feet of merchantable long-leaf pine still standing might seem to be sufficient to last for building and fence material in districts not readily accessible to large lumbermen for an indefinite time. But this is not so. The fact that since 1873 the output of turpentine in this State has fallen off over one-half, which of itself gives a very vivid idea of the number and extent of the turpentine orchards that have been abandoned, shows that it is now only a question of a few years before the turpentine yield will be reduced practically to nothing. This will mean that all the orchards have been abandoned, and it will be only a short time after their being abandoned before the destruction of the timber takes place, either by fire or by its being blown down, or by the two agencies combined.

The greater part of the dry upland soils of the pine belt are of two kinds: (1) the sandy loam soils of the level piney lands, and (2) the sandy soil, of nearly pure deep sand, characteristic of the

pine barrens of the sand-hill regions. These barrens are dry and frequently form large tracts of rolling or even hilly land.

The first of these soils is not unproductive and is well adapted to agriculture; and as the original growth of long-leaf pine is removed from it the loblolly pine and a small growth of different kinds of oak, mostly the post, Spanish and black oaks, take its place. In the pine barrens, on the other hand, no oaks will flourish except two very small, worthless trees, the sand black-jack and the "barren" willow oak, and no pine except the long-leaf pine. Unless the soil has been previously cultivated the loblolly pine does not take possession of these lands, even when there are numerous trees of this species standing near by in wet places. this it follows that when these high sandy lands are being stripped of their original growth of long-leaf pine, if its young growth is not allowed to develop, no tree of economic importance will naturally take its place. The sand black-jack oak in twenty years will have matured and begun to decay, while in that time a pine has only fairly begun its life, although its usefulness, even then, will be much greater than that of the more quickly maturing blackjack.

There are few uses to which the black-jack can be put. Its small size excludes it from being employed in construction; in contact with the soil it decays rapidly, and so is unfit for fence posts. It makes a very good fire-wood and is largely used for this purpose in Wilmington, Southport and other towns, and also in the country. Its bark is said to be valuable for tanning, but although the growth of this tree covers a very large area it is doubtful if the yield of bark per acre would be sufficient to make it of any commercial importance. The upland willow oak is even of less importance than the sand black-jack. While the presence of these trees is not pernicious, and is in fact much more beneficial to the land than would be a state of entire denudation of all forest growth, yet their growth is not near so valuable as that of the long-leaf pine, and the advantages arising from their presence are greatly inferior to those derived from a forest of the long-leaf pine of the same age. For this reason every means should be taken to enable the long-leaf pine to regain a firm hold on all high sandy land which has now on it no growth at all, or none of greater worth than the two oaks just referred to as growing on these lands.

SCARCITY OF TIMBER IN THE SAND-HILL REGIONS.

The exhaustion of the long-leaf pine forests is not a concern of the distant future alone,-something to be talked about and never to be realized. There are already localities, of limited area, to be sure, where there has never been a lumber mill, and with not onetenth of the land under cultivation, where there is not now sufficient timber to properly fence the fields. The district around White Hall, Bladen county, is such a one, and this place is in the very centre of the long-leaf pine belt. Here good pine for fencing has become so scarce that a "stock law" or "no fence law" has been secured by which all live stock is to be confined to the Cape Fear river bottom, and that alone, fenced in across a bend of the There are other localities in Bladen, Sampson and Cumberland counties with about the same proportion of land under cultivation that find it hard each year to secure rails necessary for fence repairs, and obtaining them becomes annually more difficult as the forests from which the material is procured diminish in size. It is usually the case that some tree succeeds this pine as it is gradually cut off or otherwise destroyed, and this tree is usually the sand black-jack, and it forms over the land where the pine has once been a thicket of low, scrubby trees, which in less than twenty years will die and be replaced by a similar growth.

Scattered among these scrubby oaks are frequently stunted, knotty long-leaf pines, with a thin, sickly foliage of yellowish green, which are permitted to stand because they are regarded as useless. There are also large tracts of land on many acres of which there are no pines at all, and others where the black-jack even has not succeeded in getting a foothold, wire-grass and a few bushes being the extent of the vegetation.

THE LARGER TRACTS OF BARREN LAND.

BLADEN COUNTY has its largest tract of this barren land in the northern part of the county, between the Cape Fear river on the

south and Black river on the north-east, extending eastward as far as Lion swamp and west nearly as far as Parkersburg. It is about 18 miles long and from 4 to 10 miles broad, and has almost 70,000 acres of waste land in it. There are on it, however, a few bodies of pine in excellent condition, which either have not been boxed, or if boxed have been carefully protected; but for the most part it is covered with a scanty growth of sand black-jack, beneath which there is a great deal of densely tufted wire-grass, though in places there are only lichens and moss on the ground, or sometimes stretches of dazzling white sand. Here and there are small long-leaf pines, exhausted by the continued boxing.

In depressions where the soil is wet there are gallberry "bays" in which are a few savanna pines, but there is no loblolly pine except These streams having loblolly pine bordering the larger streams. along their banks are the Black and Cape Fear rivers, Colly swamp, Johns and Turnbull creeks. Colly swamp and Johns creek have in places a rich deep soil, formed of a fine silt largely mixed with organic matter, and could be easily drained. The drainage of Colly swamp for agricultural purposes is now being undertaken and it is probable that most of the swamp land will ultimately be drained, since it is much more fertile than the sand-barren uplands. will mean, of course, the removal of the swamp timber. these streams have loblolly pine along their courses, its seed has never produced a young growth on any of the neighboring high sandy land; so that when the swamp timber is exhausted there will in reality be a dearth of building material throughout this region. The long-leaf pine timber from the tract was largely taken off to supply the mills at Wilmington, though much of it has been destroyed by fires. Even now some long-leaf pine timber, of an inferior quality, is obtained from here.

The surface of the land is gently rolling; the soil is nearly pure sand, with a small percentage of other mineral matter in it, and the subsoil, which is a light yellow sandy loam, lies too deep beneath it (from 8 to 15 feet below the surface) to be reached by the roots of trees. Generally there is no humus, the constant fires burning off the leaves and dead grass soon after they become dry. There are in Bladen county several smaller tracts of waste land, which lie south of the Cape Fear river.

In Sampson county there is, perhaps, no single tract of waste land which covers an area as large as 10,000 acres. But beginning in the south-western section of the county, near Autryville, and following the Black river down, there are several small areas of from 3,000 to 8,000 acres, all of which areas are in a bad condition. These have been burnt over and in many instances are still covered with charred stumps or encumbered with fallen trees. sand here is not as deep as in Bladen, the loam usually lying about three feet below the surface; nor is it as continuous, being cut across by Big swamp, Big and Little Coharie, and by several other swamps and streams. The population here is thicker than on the southern side of the river, and there is more cleared land, but there is as yet no scarcity of good timber. As the trees are here worked for turpentine longer than elsewhere in the State there are less abandoned orchards and the forests are better protected. The combined area of all the waste tracts in this county amounts to about 25,000 acres.

CUMBERLAND COUNTY has in its eastern part a continuation of the sand-hills of northern Bladen. The land in some places is more hilly, and the loam subsoil lies usually at such a depth below the surface (5 to 20 feet) that the roots of many trees do not reach it. The waste land lies mostly east of Fayetteville, all along Rock Fish creek, and south and east of Manchester. There are, however, many bodies of excellent timber in this latter section of the county. Along some of the creeks in the south-eastern part of the county the land is almost bare of all tree growth, while in other places, particularly in the north-eastern part, there is a heavy growth of sand black-jack, which has an average height of about 15 feet. There are at least 40,000 acres of such barren land in Cumberland county. Although not one-tenth of the soil is under cultivation several reports from the county state that in many places fencing material is becoming scarce.

Timber, other than the long-leaf pine, is not abundant in most parts of the county. The streams all have narrow channels and there is not much hardwood or loblolly pine along them. There are several white cedar "bays," but these can supply no building material. West of Fayetteville there is the same kind of soil that there is in the eastern part of the county, but there is much

more timber standing. This part of the county is a succession of sand ridges and sand hills, which are covered with a fair growth of long-leaf pine. Nearly or quite all of this pine has been boxed, and although a considerable amount of lumbering has been done there remain large areas of valuable pine forests.

HARNETT COUNTY has in its southern parts a large area of waste land, which is in a worse condition than any other such tracts observed in the State. This is what is called the "Thomas Strange tract," which extends from the Lower Little river on the south to Little river on the north, and eastward 15 miles from Swann Station, on the C. F. & Y. V. R. R. This tract contains over 40,000 acres of waste land, two-thirds of which has but few merchantable pines on it and scarcely any sand black-jack. All of this except the part immediately adjacent to the railroad was reduced to its present condition by repeated forest fires, the thick wire-grass forming the fuel which carried the flames. The territory along the C. F. & Y. V. R. R. has been lumbered and there is still some lumbering operations going on along it where there are bodies of timber which have been protected from the fires.

The topography of the southern part of Harnett is similar to that of Cumberland. It is a typical "sand-hill" region, and its soil is sand with the loam lying very deep below the surface. The streams usually have narrow channels and very little hardwood or loblolly pine along them; but along Upper Little river and the Cape Fear there are in places wide and well-timbered "bottoms." The northern part of the county has a salmon-colored gravelly loam soil on which loblolly pine and white oaks are replacing the long-leaf pine. In the western part of the county and extending east from Jonesboro there is another tract which was burnt over several years ago and much of the timber on it destroyed. This latter area is not "waste land" now, but it soon will be. Harnett county, being intersected by the Cape Fear river and two of its largest tributaries which afford transportation facilities, furnishes yearly a considerable amount of timber (long-leaf pine) for the Wilmington mills.

Moore county has 60,000 acres of waste land, all of which has been recently lumbered, though much of it has been burnt off subsequently. This land has a heavy growth of young sand black-

jack on it, and in the localities more recently lumbered there remain a few scattered pines. It lies in the eastern and southern parts of the county, along the railroads. In places there are some post and spanish oaks with the sand black-jack oak, but there is almost no loblolly pine and no other material suitable for building purposes except the long-leaf pine. When lumbering has ceased there will probably be over twice the area of waste land there now is, since all the southern section of the county is high rolling pine barrens, with a deep sandy soil.

RICHMOND COUNTY has a soil in character similar to that of the southern part of Moore; but since lumbering has not been so extensively carried on in Richmond as in Moore there are in the former only about 40,000 acres of waste land, all of which have been lumbered except a few small tracts which have been burnt over. This waste land lies along the C. C. and R. & A. R. R's. It is covered with a thick growth of sand black-jack oak, and there are undersized pines scattered over a part of the area, many of them still being worked for turpentine. Except the long-leaf pine there is very little timber in the eastern part of the county suitable for building material.

ROBESON COUNTY has very little waste land and very little deep sand except in the northern part of the county. In that section, adjacent to the Cape Fear river, there are possibly 10,000 acres with little tree growth except sand black-jack oak. In the middle and southern parts of the county the loblolly pine is taking the place of the long-leaf pine.

BRUNSWICK COUNTY contains several thousand acres of waste and very thinly timbered lands along or near the sea-coast and the Cape Fear river. While these lands were never heavily timbered they are now rapidly getting into a deplorable state, which is a presage of the final destruction of the long-leaf pine.

COLUMBUS COUNTY has about as much waste land as Brunswick. This land is in small tracts lying in the southern part of the county and the sand black-jack oak has taken possession of most of it. Good loblolly pine is, however, abundant through most sections of this county.

WAYNE COUNTY has 20,000 or more acres of waste land covered

only with sand black-jack oak and very scattering, exhausted long-leaf pines. This land lies in the central and southern parts of the county. Good timber is getting scarce in many places. Much of this sandy land in this and other counties has been highly fertilized and is cultivated in truck farms, vineyards and fruit orchards.

DUPLIN COUNTY contains several thousand acres, in the northern part, covered only with the sand black-jack oak, through which, occasionally, there occurs a few scattering long-leaf pines. Near the railroads a great deal of this sandy land, which has been highly fertilized, is used in this county for truck gardening.

Onslow and New Hanover countries have jointly about 25,000 acres of waste land, some of which is entirely denuded and some covered only with the sand black-jack oak. In many parts of New Hanover county, especially between Wilmington and Wrightsville, there is a very promising regrowth of long-leaf pine appearing, though the trees are very scattering and fires destroy a great many of the smaller ones every spring. The growth of timber in the eastern parts of New Hanover and Onslow counties, like that in the eastern part of Brunswick county, was probably never dense.

Besides the above tracts there are in Johnston, Pender and Lenoir counties a few smaller tracts which have been stripped of the long-leaf pine and on which no valuable regrowth has appeared; and there is immediately along the coasts of Currituck, Dare and Carteret counties a narrow strip of land which in many places is entirely bare, and has been described by the late Prof. W. C. Kerr as forming drifting sand dunes, which, along the coast of Dare county, "are moving under the impact of the trade winds constantly toward the south-west into the sound." What effect these moving dunes may have on the existing channels in the sounds or how they may modify or change the inlets between the sounds and the ocean are questions foreign to the present subject.

It is a well-known fact, however, that the breaking of the ocean, in 1763, through one of these untimbered sand banks formed the New Inlet, 16 miles below Wilmington, N. C., and seriously changed the channel at the mouth of the Cape Fear river, lessened the depth of its water and caused the expenditure of a large amount of money before the damage done could be rectified and the break

securely filled. It could not be learnt whether this strip of sand dunes was ever timbered, though it is probable that at one time it was, since Smith's island and other parts of this same bank only a few miles distant are now heavily timbered.

THE ORIGIN OF THE WASTE LANDS.

From the preceding it appears that there is a large amount of waste land lying in the south-eastern part of this State. There are now over 400,000 acres of such land and the amount of it, from various causes, is constantly increasing. This land consists of high, rolling or hilly sand barrens, formerly covered with extensive forests of long-leaf pine. These forests yielded turpentine abundantly, but on account of the larger amount of sapwood and the coarser grain of the wood of trees growing on these poorer sandy lands the lumber, though of good quality, was of a grade inferior to that from trees grown on fertile soils. Now, however, owing to the grossest neglect, large portions of these forests have either been destroyed entirely or reduced to such a condition that there is neither mill nor turpentine timber on them, and no regrowth of the long-leaf pine has been allowed to take the place of the older trees as the latter were being gradually exterminated. The soils of the barrens on account of their sandiness and poor quality will produce very few kinds of trees which have any economic importance. No valuable broad-leaved trees (oaks, etc.) thrive on these lands, and among the conifers (pines, etc.) the longleaf pine is the only one growing naturally on them.

The short-leaf pine, except where the loam subsoil lies near the surface, is rarely found, and it is only after the ground has been cultivated and enriched and the moister layers of earth have been brought to the surface that the loblolly pine will grow there. So it seems that the long-leaf pine is the only native tree of much value which flourishes on these barren, sandy lands. There are very few if any other forests in the eastern United States so peculiarly limited as to the variety of valuable tree growth as the long-leaf pine forests, particularly when it grows on the sand barrens; and there are no other forests which demand such care to obtain a regrowth of the original dominant species.

Many kinds of trees after having been lumbered or burnt out are succeeded by smaller and less valued species, but the original growth in time again takes possession of the land. This is the case with the spruce forests of Western North Carolina and the white cedar (juniper) in the eastern section of the State. However it may have been primarily in the long-leaf pine forests this is not the result under the present management of these pineries. After the removal of the pine the land quickly becomes waste land, and passes from a growth of sand black-jack to utter barrenness. Nowhere is there any general sign of either the long-leaf or any other pine again forming a prominent part of the growth on these sand-hills.

Unless there is some radical change in their management these lands may even cease to produce the few sand black-jack oaks which now flourish on them. There is even a possibility, and in fact it can be said a great likelihood, that this valuable tree, the long-leaf pine, will become extinct in North Carolina unless some steps are taken to secure its more general propagation. It has already become extinct over large tracts lying to the north of the Neuse river which were formerly occupied either exclusively by this pine or by mixed forests of it and hardwoods and the loblolly pine.

WHY LONG-LEAF PINE FORESTS ARE NOT SELF-PROPAGATING.

The causes which have operated to prevent the long-leaf pine from propagating itself are several, and all of them are important and act uniformly throughout this sandy area. A brief statement of some of the peculiarities of this tree may enable us to see more clearly why it needs more special protection than must necessarily be accorded other trees to enable the forests to reproduce themselves. The chief causes which have influenced and tended to retard the general regrowth of this tree at the present time arise from a highly specialized form of seed and plant structure and a decidedly unique manner of growth when compared with the other pines of this same region. These characteristic peculiarities lie chiefly in the young pine seedling, in the seed, and in the structure of the leaf buds.

THE SEEDING OF THE LONG-LEAF PINE.

Although the writer has not yet carried on systematic observations, on (1) the frequency of seeding of the long-leaf pine, (2) the relative abundance of its seed as compared with those of other pines, and (3) the relative fertility of boxed and unboxed trees of the same species, long enough to have obtained accurate results, yet the observations of different persons, thoroughly familiar, for many years, with the pines of the barrens, will, he thinks, for most of these cases, be found sufficiently accurate, their results being supplemented by his conclusions drawn from a personal investigation extending over several years. Although there were certain years in the primeval or virgin long-leaf pine forest, just as there are with all other trees, when no seed were borne, yet these years were rare and the yield of seed was usually abundant. William Byrd, writing in 1728, says* the mast of this tree (the long-leaf pine) is very much esteemed for fattening hogs, through all of Albemarle county (North-eastern North Carolina) on account of its greater abundance and the greater certainty of its occurrence (than that of the oaks). The forests of which he was speaking were largely virgin at that date. There are to be found frequent statements mentioning the same fact by other historians, of both an earlier and later date.

So far as could be ascertained the masts (as the seed of this pine are called) have not been as abundant for the past fifty years as they formerly were. There seems to have been only three large long-leaf pine masts since 1845. One of these occurred just about that time, the next one was in 1872 and there was one in 1892, which was not so large, however, as either of the preceding. There is a fairly abundant mast about every four or five years, and on intermediate years the production is small and localized. In North Carolina most of the trees which now bear seed are boxed and have been in this condition for from ten to fifty years. And the opinion prevails throughout the pine barrens that pine masts are less frequent and less abundant now than before the pines were so largely boxed and thinned out. The removal of a great portion of

^{*}History of the Dividing Line between Virginia and North Carolina, p. 29.

the trees may explain, in part or wholly, why masts are less abundant. It would naturally be inferred that there would be a large decrease in the productiveness of boxed trees, whose vitality, measured by the rate of accretion between them and unboxed trees, has been greatly impaired by the practiced manner of boxing. However, from a tabulated record of observations carried on during several years there as yet appears no marked difference between the productiveness of boxed and unboxed trees, similarly situated.

There are several important differences between the reproductive capacities of the loblolly and long-leaf pines, all of them to the advantage of the former. The fertility of the long-leaf pine is much less than that of the loblolly pine, its most frequent associate. The loblolly pine bears cones at an earlier age, and usually produces more seed, both perfect and imperfect ones, and the great variety of soil on which the loblolly pines grow causes a slight difference in the time of flowering of different trees, making this pine less liable to have the entire prospect of a seed yield destroyed by frosts, or by heavy rains during pollination. While this may possibly explain why the loblolly pine has come up as a regrowth over so much of the moister loam land it has affected the growth of the pine barrens very little.

The seed of the long-leaf pine are very large, one-third to one-half an inch long, independent of the wing, while no other pine of this region has seed over one-fourth an inch long. But there is a much smaller proportion of abortive and otherwise imperfect seed in a long-leaf pine cone than in the cone of the loblolly pine. This would be decidedly to the advantage of the long-leaf pine in seeding old fields, etc., were its seed not too heavy to be carried far by the wind. They usually fall within fifty feet of the parent tree, while the light-winged seed of the loblolly have been known to scatter thickly over fields from trees more than a quarter of a mile distant; and single seed are reported to have been blown several miles. And furthermore, as described more fully beyond, the seed of the long-leaf pine are much more extensively destroyed by hogs, fowls, squirrels, rats, etc.

Another reason for the exclusively loblolly growth in fields may

be that even when the seed of the two pines fall on the same land the loblolly pine by its rapid growth during the first few years overshadows and effectually crowds out the more slowly growing long-leaf pine, and the latter during this early slow growth are easily destroyed by fires and by live stock. The two are, however, rarely seen associated together in second growth woods. The seed ripening in October fall to the ground rapidly and if there is a warm moist season sprout immediately. In the event of a long warm rain just after the seed are matured they will frequently sprout in the cones and the entire yield will be thus destroyed.

DESTRUCTION OF THE YOUNG PLANTS.

The young long-leaf pine seems to be especially adapted by the form of its root system for growing on a sandy soil. By the end of its first year's growth its root system, which has grown rapidly, consists of a large tap-root which extends 6 to 10 inches deep in the sand, and from the bottom of it branches out the smaller roots which draw nourishment from the soil. It is this deep-seated root system sent thus early far down into the soil which enables this pine to grow on the sand barrens, and it is doubtless because the roots of the loblolly are small and divide for the first year or two into a great many small divisions, lying near the surface, that it does not get sufficient moisture and nourishment from the dry surface sand to enable it to thrive on the sand barrens before this land has been cultivated. This long tap-root of the long-leaf pine frequently goes through the sand into the loam soil and secures for the tree a firm anchorage against storms and enables it to draw its nourishment from a more fertile soil.

The stem parts of the long-leaf pine are as peculiarly adapted for growing on a sand soil as the root system is. Instead of the stem's branching or growing the first year it only puts out a great number of very long thick leaves, exceedingly close to the ground. These leaves soon spread out and help to shade the ground close to the plant and keep it moist. At the end of the first season's growth the single (terminal) bud is not over an inch and a half above the earth and the bud itself is nearly an inch long, so that it can be said that the stem of the seedling does not grow any in

height during the first year, all the energy of the plant being diverted to increasing the root and producing the great tuft of long deep green leaves which spread out immediately below the bud and make the plant resemble more a tuft of some marvelous kind of grass than a young tree. Some of the lowest leaves usually die during the first year; most of them remain on, however, for two seasons.

During the second and third years the growth of the stem in height is slight, though it increases in thickness, but after that, at least in a forest, its growth is wonderful. Frequently in a thick wood where a young tree has been allowed to grow, in 8 or 9 years after height-growth has begun, it will have reached a height of 18 or 20 feet and a diameter of no more than 3 or 4 inches, and will have grown each year from only one bud, the terminal bud, at the end of the woody axis, there being no branches, and no sign of any having been formed. For leaves there will be only a single, broom-like bunch terminating the slender stem. The rapidity with which this stem is raised and the fewness of its branches until the natural height of the tree is reached makes one of the fine qualities of the timber. It gives long stocks which have no knots in them, even small ones, to produce any ununiformity of quality, or to make weak places on the interior of an apparently perfect piece of timber.

This feature which is the cause of so fine a quality of wood is a great drawback to the development of the young trees. This single terminal bud is a very large and complicated structure, and when once destroyed in any way no other bud is usually formed by which the growth of the young seedling can be continued. It is true of most conifers (i. e., pines, firs, cypress and cedars) that they do not readily form buds and that they rarely sprout from the stump and are very difficult to reproduce from cuttings, etc., but with the long-leaf pine such buds are formed and sprouts developed even more rarely than with most other conifers.

THE ENEMIES OF THE LONG-LEAF PINE.

The long-leaf pine has a severer struggle for existence than any other of our forest trees for the reason that in all stages of its reproduction and growth it is more severely and continuously attacked by a greater variety of enemies than any other. Besides the natural drawbacks to its development from the peculiar manner of forming several of its parts, and the fact that these parts when destroyed are not replaced, its large and sweet seed are eaten in large quantities by fowl of various kinds, rats, squirrels, and by swine, which prefer them to all other kinds of mast and, when there is enough long-leaf pine mast, become very fat on it.

As far as has been observed, young long-leaf pines are attacked by no injurious beetles or bark-borers or by any fungi sufficiently to injure them. The mature pines, however, have in past years several times been attacked by bark beetles in such numbers as to destroy the pine over large areas. A few trees which have been killed from their attacks can be seen at any time around the edges of districts where lumbering is in progress, or about districts which have been recently lumbered.

DESTRUCTIVE WORK BY HOGS AND FIRES.

If the destruction by swine ceased with eating mast there would still be sufficient seed left to reproduce some parts of the forests, as the mature trees are gradually thinned out, for one-year-old seedlings are common twelve months after a heavy mast. No sooner, however, has the young pine gotten a foot high and its root an inch in diameter than the hog attacks it, this time eating the roots, which, until two inches in diameter, are very tender, juicy, pleasantly flavored and free of resinous matter. In the loose sandy soil the piney woods hog, or "rooter," finds little difficulty in following and devouring these tender roots to their smallest ends. Many small trees are destroyed in this way. And cattle, furthermore, are said to bite off frequently the tops of the small plants, and with them the terminal buds, in the early spring. This is doubtless done while grazing, more accidentally than otherwise.

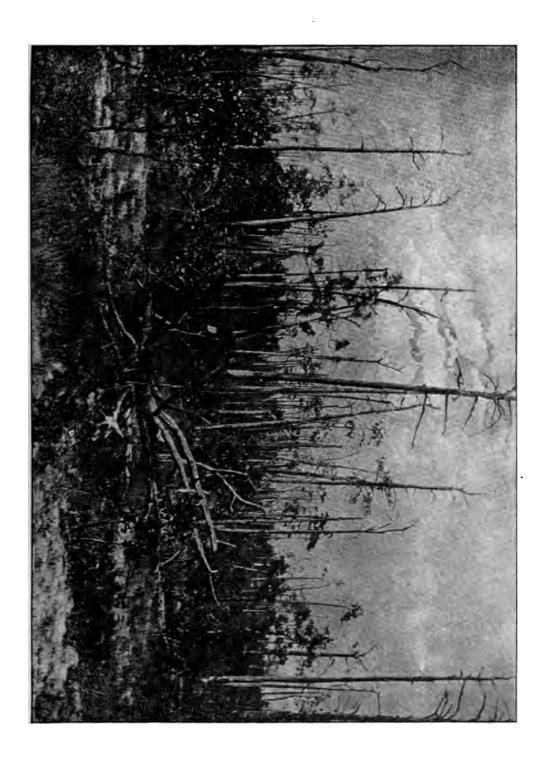
Fires often destroy all the young pines that escape the hogs. They kill the small pines by burning the highly inflammable bracts around the bud and so stop its growth, or in high grass frequently burn all the leaves. Larger trees, even until they are 3 or 4 inches through, are easily killed in spring, when the sap is

rising and the outer layer of wood is growing rapidly, by a hot fire which will burn the thin exfoliated layers of bark all over the trunk. The loblolly pine is less injured by fire because its bark is thicker and so offers more protection to the growing wood; the bark, too, lying closer to the wood in firmly appressed layers, does not so easily take fire. (See, also, the discussion on page 61).

The chief agencies, then, which prevent a regrowth of the long-leaf pine on the high sandy lands are the hogs and the fires; and the attacks of the hogs are directed against parts which seem to have been developed to meet requirements of a plant growing on a dry, barren soil of loose sand. These peculiarly developed parts are the seed, large for a pine, which contain abundant nutriment for the young plant to enable the root to push itself rapidly into the sand; and the long, succulent root which grows for as considerable distance straight down without branching. Since the first settlement of these sandy lands the "ranging" of swine has been allowed in the barrens, and while there were enough pines standing and frequent masts, they fed a large number of hogs.

The practice of firing the barrens has been adopted in many cases with a view to improving the pasturage; while in many other cases, after the trees were boxed, the leaves and trash pulled away from around them, the forests were burned over to prevent in a dry season a chance conflagration getting from under control and burning the faces of the turpentine boxes and the timber. That this policy of burning the barrens is a very bad one and calculated to do far greater damage than that immediately apparent has perhaps been made evident. The accompanying illustration (Plate I) shows one of these long-leaf pine forests, near Southern Pines, where a recent fire destroyed all of the young growth, the turpentine boxes and most of the timber trees.

That sooner or later the present management, or lack of management, which has characterized all dealings with the barrens for the past 150 years must be changed if the long-leaf pine forests are to be made self-propagating, no one who has ever seen their condition or fully realizes what it is can possibly doubt. The logical result of these burnings in the past has been the destruction of millions of feet of standing pine and the prevention of the growth of young trees, which, had they started even fifty years ago would





now be large enough for small mill timber and for turpentine; while the burnings of the present and future, if not soon discontinued, will mean the final extinction of the long-leaf pine in this State.

THE ULTIMATE UTILITY OF THESE WASTE LANDS.

It has been practically demonstrated, in the vicinity of Southern Pines and elsewhere, that, after having been richly fertilized, considerable portions of these sandy pine-barren lands, containing a small portion of loam and organic matter mixed with the sand, are adapted, by their southern situation and light, friable soil, to a high state of productiveness in fruits and vegetables; and these branches of agriculture are rapidly increasing in North Carolina. They appear to be more especially suited for vinticulture and gardening. probable, however, that large portions of these waste lands will not be brought into cultivation during the next fifty years, nor at any time, owing to the extreme poverty of the soil. What then is to be done with this 400,000 acres, once covered with long-leaf pine, but now of little more value than a similar area of a genuine desert? If the present lack of policy in regard to their manage. ment is continued, it is only a matter of a few years before the longleaf pine which is now standing on the sand-hills will also have been destroyed without giving profitable returns to its owners or leaving behind it a young growth of pine to take its place. becomes manifest at once that if the scattering trees, which might serve as seed trees, are entirely removed from this waste land, it will not only be a very difficult but a very costly matter to secure a regrowth of long-leaf pine or any other valuable building tree, either pine or hardwood.

No matter what is the ultimate use to which the land may be put there must necessarily be, on a considerable part of it, trees which grow large enough to furnish timber and fuel more abundantly than the black-jack oak can do. A pine alone can supply such wants when there is only an impoverished soil to grow on, and the long-leaf pine can do this better than any other pine.

No community, least of all one devoted to agriculture, no matter whether it raises cotton, garden truck or fruit, can be independent while at the same time it is dependent on some other section for either fuel or building material. This, however, is what some sections of eastern North Carolina are fast coming to, and the fact is being recognized by not a few of their most thoughtful residents.

That the existence of a highly developed agriculture is sometimes entirely dependent on a forest is shown by the condition of the lands between Bordeaux and the coast of France along the bay of Biscay. This district is the seat of the manufacture of the Bordelais wines, clarets and other light wines, and some of the finest wines are made in vineyards east of the Médoc from vines grown on a highly sandy soil. A great part of this land is covered with forests of pines, which were set out, at great expense, to prevent the shifting of these sandy soils. Before the planting of the forests these lands were sand dunes, or heather lands which formed dunes of moving sand as rapidly as the low, scattered heath growth was removed.

In view of the facts stated in the preceding pages we are driven to the conclusion that the most practicable plan of treatment of these waste lands, with a view of making them again productive of wealth to their owners, is that of protecting these areas against the attacks of hogs and forest fires and thus permitting them to be again covered with a new growth of long-leaf pine.

COST OF SECURING A NEW FOREST GROWTH.

The cost of securing a regrowth of long-leaf pine on most of this waste land would now be very little in addition to what the land-owners must necessarily pay to retain their land which has ceased to be productive or give any returns. Interest on the capital invested in the land probably has to be paid and taxes must be paid yearly. The additional cost would be solely that arising from protecting the land from fire and from excluding cattle and swine for a certain number of years after a mast.

The opposition such a measure would produce would be considerable, especially among a class of indigent citizens who, owning little or no land themselves, have always been accustomed to give their cattle free range over the lands of others, to fire the dead grass for bettering the pasturage, and even to cut timber for home

use on these lands ad libitum. It is the opposition of these people, who constitute so large a part of the voters, that has prevented in several of these eastern counties the adoption of a general law for confining cattle and stock. As timber for fencing material and other purposes becomes scarcer, the more intelligent citizens are coming to see clearly enough the imperative need of such a change, both in our laws and in public opinion, as will suffice to protect the young forest growth from fires and stock, and thus to give the valuable forest trees an opportunity to propagate themselves.

NECESSARY PROTECTION OF YOUNG PINES AGAINST FIRES AND HOGS.

Without a thorough cessation of fires and an equally thorough exclusion of stock, at least until the trees are thickly started and well grown, say until 10 feet high, any effort to produce a uniform growth would be futile. Once that a new growth has secured a firm foothold and has formed a dense covering, the very thickness of it, by its exclusion of most low growth and grass, will be preventive of fires, since the thin covering of pine straw and humus will not carry fire except in very dry seasons or before a heavy wind. The exclusion of swine is a measure which must be absolutely enforced until the trees have reached a diameter of 3 or 4 inches. (See, also, page 57).

The following statements will show what an important part fires play in the destruction of pine scedlings:

In the fall of 1892 there was a very full long-leaf pine mast, and in the following spring seedlings could be seen by thousands. In moderately dense long-leaf pine forests in Montgomery county, where there was about one-half as many of those pines standing as when it was in a virgin state, these pines being mixed with a few post and black-jack oaks and the rest of the land open, there were from 15 seedlings to the square yard in the open to 35 seedlings on an equal area beneath some of the trees. A space which was staked off and noted was examined again in the fall after a fire had passed over it and then it did not average one seedling to the square yard. The soil here was a salmon-colored loam and the grass largely broom-straw (Andropogon Virginicus).

Another tract, which was on the sand-hills of the western section

of Cumberland county, was examined shortly after it had been lumbered. This was not seen in the spring, but when visited in the fall showed by the great number and position of the cones that seed must have fallen abundantly over most of the ground which had since been burnt over. It was hard to find, however, a seedling which had escaped the flames.

Another place examined was in Bladen county, on a sandy loam soil: There were in the spring of 1893 numerous seedling pines there. A later examination in the fall showed a large number still growing, but no fire had passed over them and the roots were not yet large enough for the hogs to root up. A small portion of this last tract has been fenced off and the progress of the seedlings in the enclosure, and those outside, will be compared and the requirements and peculiarities of the young plants studied as they develop.

If it had been possible, immediately after the falling of this mast of 1892, to put the long-leaf pine lands, or at least those parts which are most sandy, and have only a thin cover of pines, or the large areas recently lumbered, under some management which would have given protection to the seed and later to the young pines, in ten years with continued protection there would have been over the larger part of this area a thicket of pines large enough to have been self-protecting in a great measure, and in a fair way to become trees suitable for lumber and for yielding supplies of turpentine.

At the date of this writing it is a safe statement to make that there have been already destroyed over nine-tenths of the pines which sprung up so abundantly less than two years ago. The time which will elapse before another large mast is of course uncertain. Smaller masts should occur, however, in three or four years. Last year (1893) there was none. An examination of the pines shows that there will be very little this fall. The freeze in April of this year (1894) destroyed the pollen of the trees along the western part of the pine belt, but as they have not been examined further east it is uncertain whether it was destroyed there also.

There will consequently be little pine mast in 1895, at least in

the western parts of the long-leaf pine belt, as it requires two seasons for growth and maturity after pollination has taken place.

FOREST MANAGEMENT IN THE WASTE-LAND REGIONS.

Just here, in connection with the discussion as to what policy should be adopted in regard to the treatment of the pine barrens, a brief statement of what forestry is and what it necessarily is not, will not be out of place. The two conceptions as to what forestry is are in part equally erroneous. One of these is that forest management consists in protecting trees with no definite end in view beyond that of protection. The other conception contains a half truth. It is that forest management consists in the production of trees and the systematic management of timbered lands, but that the State or government's ownership of such timbered lands is essential for putting this into practice. This latter view of the matter is fairly correct except that ownership or management by the State or government is by no means an essential feature. In a country such as ours timber lands must be managed by their owners or not at all.

From the point of view of a money-yielding investment, and this is the chief view that need be considered in dealing with most of the lands of eastern North Carolina, the following might stand for a definition of forestry: Forestry consists in the systematic care of forests so that the land will always yield valuable forest trees and so that production of timber may be carried to its highest possible limits. This growth of course is to be utilized, but in such a manner that a young growth of equal value to the one removed may take its place. Such management is not only not inconsistent with private ownership of land, but if properly carried out by private parties can be made more efficacious, at least as far as financial results are concerned, than when carried on by a government or State.

It is true that in some European countries much of the forest is owned by the various governments, municipalities, etc., but much of this land was owned by the respective governments for many vears before any forest management was practiced. Their owner-

ship by the governments was not at all necessary for the practice of forestry in these countries, and there is more forest land under systematic management in Europe owned by private parties than by the governments.

In some of the private forests, as those of the Tyrol, cuttings are restricted and are superintended by trained government foresters, because from the situation of the lands in hilly or mountainous districts the sudden removal of all timber from over a large area might cause the land to wash, so that reforestation could only be accomplished under serious difficulties. The clearing of large areas and their remaining in a state of denudation causes in hilly countries, where the soil washes easily, great floods in the rivers which are filled with detritus washed down from the hills. floods endanger the life and property along the streams, while the deposit of the soil washed down seriously affects arable lands and the channels of the streams. The control of such lands as these is not undertaken by the governments with a view of influencing in any way the owners' profit, but as a measure to protect other citizens whose interests might be much affected by any carelessness or greed of a timber owner.

In Germany, which country probably leads the world in the thoroughness of its forest management, there are about 43,000 square miles of forest.* The government owns about 13,300 square miles of it, various local organizations, towns and small principalities own 6,700 square miles, while the rest, about 21,700 square miles, belongs to individuals, and its management is entirely free from all governmental interference, except so far as the cutting of one person's timber will damage lands or property belonging to another, in which case an injunction to prevent cutting can be obtained from the courts.

THE NECESSITY FOR FORESTS IN THE FUTURE.

The question is asked, Will there be any use, fifty years from now, for a forest grown on this waste land when so large a part of the State and country will be timbered by a second growth of pines

^{*}Paul Pary's Yahrbuch, 1890. Landwirtschaftliche Statistik, 1889.

and hardwoods which have naturally sprung up? Moreover, it may be thought that in that length of time a large part of the original forest growth will still remain uncut.

An examination of the facts in the case will yield an answer. Ten years ago it was thought that the supply of white pine was inexhaustible in Michigan, which State then had far the largest bodies of pine, and in fact nearly all the merchantable white pine in the United States except that in Wisconsin, Minnesota and some in West Virginia. Bulletin No. 5 of the Eleventh U. S. Census showed that in 1890 Michigan had an output of white pine of about 10,000,000,000 feet, board measure (including shingles), and that there was supposed to be only enough timber standing to last the mills for five years longer. Many persons even then ridiculed the idea of the exhaustion of the white pine. A few months ago the Northwestern Lumberman, which had most loudly proclaimed that the white pine was inexhaustible, announced that this season there would be in one district a shortage amounting to many. million feet, and that the total shortage in Michigan alone would probably amount to over a billion feet, board measure. Other soft woods, yellow poplar, etc., will probably be sawn to take its place for several years, and will come from Kentucky, Tennessee, North Carolina and other regions in the Appalachian mountains.

In ten years from now the forests of Michigan will have been a thing of the past, so that within fifty years after lumbering began on a commercial scale the white pine and probably the best hardwoods will have been cut out. These forests of Michigan cut from two to three times as much mixed hardwood and pine to the acre as the pine lands of eastern North Carolina will now yield, after having been picked over for two hundred years.

The forests of Washington are as yet in a nearly virgin condition and are probably the finest in the world. They will cut three times as much to the acre as the pine lands of eastern North Carolina, and although the amount of standing timber was estimated on January 1, 1894, to be near 400,000,000,000 feet, board measure, yet such is the enormous destruction of timber by fire and the rapid increase in the milling industry, which now cuts only 1,000,000,000 feet a year in that State, that those forests will probably not last longer than fifty years.

The forests of all the Northern States have been cut over and the most valuable timber removed. Maine, Vermont, western Pennsylvania and West Virginia still manufacture, however, large quantities of hardwoods, but the supply of them is so rapidly being reduced that in a few years the annual output will be reduced to the growth in the forests during a year.

The condition of the timbered lands is about the same in all the Southern States. The pine in the lower districts has in places been entirely removed, but in other places there is still much left, while the hardwood on the uplands has for a century been called upon to supply local needs and in most places has had the finest timber culled, except toward the mountains of the south-eastern States where there are magnificent virgin forests of hardwoods. These forests of the South are the ones to which the lumbermen of the North are looking as the supply of timber near the seats of consumption becomes exhausted, and once that the tide of millmen turns this way the depletion of the forests of this State and those farther south will be a matter of only a few years.

Bulletin No. 5 of the Eleventh U.S. Census gives the amount of yellow pine and cypress land owned in nine Southern States by establishments located only in Michigan and Wisconsin to be 1,407,358 acres, estimated to have standing on them a total product of eleven billion feet, board measure, of merchantable timber, valued at \$8,723,000. The timber on this land is cypress and hard pines—i. e., long-leaf, loblolly, and short-leaf pines, and this large amount invested shows that Michigan millmen, already foreseeing the exhaustion of the northern forests, are investing in those timbers which are suitable to take the place of the white pine. Even at the present rate of removal, and allowing that there is no decrease in the business from the free entrance into the United States of Canadian lumber, the standing pine in the eastern part of North Carolina cannot last twenty years, and may not last more than fifteen years, unless a wise policy obtains. The indications are, however, that there will be in the next five years a much greater expansion of the milling industry in eastern North Carolina than has taken place during the past five years and a proportionally greater increase in the annual output of lumber, and decrease in the available supply of standing timber.

WILL A REGROWTH OF PINES ON THESE WASTE LANDS PAY?

This question has been asked; and it is the first point to be considered in connection with any attempt to restock these waste lands with long-leaf pine. And in answering this question we may ask another: Will it pay to let these lands lie idle and unproductive? The cost of securing a growth of pines on these lands will be the cost of keeping off the hogs and fires, and this will be but little if any more than what proprietors have to pay at present for the privilege of holding these unproductive tracts. If it pays to own these lands unoccupied and unproductive, it will pay much better to own them if they are restocked, at a slight cost, with long-leaf pines.

One of the chief considerations upon which the final value of a regrowth of long-leaf pine depends is the securing, in as short a time as possible, a thick, homogeneous growth of young trees, and the entire prevention of all fires among the pines. Nowhere else is the truth of the strength of unity more exemplified than in a forest growth, especially in a young and growing forest, on an arid and impoverished soil, where one of the necessities is retaining the moisture in the earth and preserving the humus formed by the decay of leaves. This moisture will serve to supply the trees with water essential for their development and tend to check or even prevent fires. The damage fires do to a forest growth, even after the growth is well started, is considerable and has much influence on the character of the timber. By killing a part of the timber they make the growth open and the stocks short-bodied and filled with limbs and resulting knots. The thicker the growth the taller and straighter will the stocks be, and so much greater and more valuable will be the final yield of timber.

RATE OF GROWTH OF LONG-LEAF PINES.

After a large number of measurements of young growth trees, which have sprung up in enclosures, or where protected, it has

been ascertained that it will require from thirty-five to fifty years for such a growth to reach sufficient size to furnish saw logs 20 feet long and from 14 to 20 inches in diameter. The usefulness of these trees will have begun, however, in less than half of that time, since their increase in size is much more rapid during the earlier years of growth than during the later years. After twentyfive years they will be large enough to hold a turpentine box. About this age, too, they begin to bear mast, and as the foliage becomes more open the more tender grasses of the barrens appear and afford pasturage. Besides this there is a great quantity of litter which yearly accumulates under the trees and can be used, as such litter now is, when it can be gotten, as a mulch for agricultural lands. Moreover, the lands themselves will have gained a permanent improvement from the mould which will have accumulated on the ground during the time that the trees were growing.

FUTURE VALUE OF TURPENTINE ORCHARDS.

What may be the value of turpentine orchards twenty years hence is of course a speculative question. With the great variety of uses to which both rosin and turpentine are put it is hardly likely that in that time any cheaper substitute will be found for them in all their uses.* The area of long-leaf pine which will be under orchard at that date is also largely a matter of conjecture. The observations of the writer and of several specialists who have examined all or parts of the territory covered by the long-leaf pine, would lead to the conclusion that, without some radical change in the manner of boxing, and the reservation by timber owners of large tracts of pine for turpentine culture only, the orchards of the United States, with the possible exception of

^{*}USES OF RESINOUS PRODUCTS.—In'a report upon the maritime pines made in 1878 by M. Desnoyers at the Universal Exposition of Paris the following uses are given for the different resinous products of that tree:

Spirits of turpentine is used in the manufacture of oil colors, varnishes and paints, in the preparation of rubber, is employed in medicine and veterinary arts, and for cleaning and illuminating and making water-proof putties and cements.

Rosin is used in sizing paper, in soap-making, in the manufacture of sealing-wax, for soldering lead and in tinning, and from it is obtained by destructive distillation rosin oil which is used in making lubricants, printing and lithographic inks, paints, etc., and painting beer-kegs Crude turpentine scrape and pitch are also used in many of these manufactures.

those of Texas, will have seen their best days in less than twenty years.

The Report of the U. S. Division of Forestry for 1891 describes the pine lands of eastern Texas and western Louisiana as follows:* In the center of the region above the Red river, pine ridges alternate with tracts of oak and hickory. Toward the Red river the forests covering the undulating pine lands remain practically unbroken to the Sabine river. On the east side of the Red river the area is estimated at 1,625,000 acres, extending northward an average distance of fifty-five miles, cutting from 4,000 to 6,000 feet to the acre, with no change in character to Trinity river in Texas. In that State the forests of long-leaf pine cover about 5,000 square miles, merging toward the north into the region of short-leaf, toward the south into vast forests of loblolly pine. The fact that but little tapping for turpentine has been practiced in this region may be of importance from a market point of view.

Forests suitable for the manufacture of turpentine, being subject to a triple destruction, will probably give out some time before those suitable for lumber will. Turpentine orchards of long-leaf pine are destroyed by being lumbered, by natural exhaustion from continued tapping and by fires; and their trunks being weakened by boxes the trees are more liable to blow over by the winds. They are renewed only to an inconsiderable extent by regrowth. The rate of destruction by each of these agencies has been yearly increasing, and has not yet reached its maximum limit.

FUTURE VALUE OF LONG-LEAF PINE FORESTS.

The future value of a forest of long-leaf pine as a source of lumber is based on these facts. Long-leaf pine wood, even after it has been tapped for turpentine, which has no effect on any of the heart wood except to a slight extent those parts immediately in contact with the faces of the boxes, is much stronger than any other of our pines; and it is especially durable in contact with the soil or when exposed to alternating conditions of being wet or dry. As these qualities of the timber become recognized they will much increase

^{*}Annual Report Secretary of Agriculture, 1891, p. 216.

the value and use of the wood for purposes where such qualities are requisite. The rapid thinning of the woodlands of the eastern United States will cause an increase each year in the value of all timber near centers of consumption; and there is a constant increase in the value of stumpage as the utilization of the forests proceeds. When once the mass of standing woody material, the uninterrupted accumulations of centuries, is destroyed, the entire country will each year be dependent for wood on what may be called the annual increase in the forests.

The lands of the greater part of the northeastern States are already in this condition, and those of the southern States, with the exception of the hardwood forests of the Appalachian mountains, are fast being reduced to a similar condition. This second growth forest is producing very largely nonvaluable woods, having been produced by the seed of inferior species left in lumbering as worthless, and only such of these survive as can naturally withstand the repeated burnings to which the woodlands are subjected. Moreover, most of this second growth is very open and thin, caused by fires and other agencies, and the trees from the same causes are often defective. A large part of the land which should be timber land is unproductive waste land, with absolutely no arborescent growth, and the continued violation of all natural laws concerning plant-life prevents the development of such a growth. demand for wood is yearly increasing and each year the power of the woodlands to supply it is diminishing.

An abundant supply of wood and timber must be an important factor in the future development of eastern, and particularly south-eastern North Carolina, whether that development be an agricultural or manufacturing advancement; but unless there is a more strict observance of the fundamental laws of all plant-life, particularly in respect to the long-leaf pine on the high sandy land, preventing the destruction of the seed and young pines, this section will be in great want of timber at the time when it will need its timber most.

AREA OF WASTE LAND INCREASING.

In conclusion, it can be said that there are now 400,000 acres of waste sandy land in Eastern North Carolina, and that this area is

constantly increasing. This land is covered only with a low, scrubby growth of sand black-jack oaks and in places has mixed with these oaks scattered long-leaf pines, unfit for lumber and exhausted of turpentine by the continued tapping. Malpractice, especially the custom of firing the barrens and allowing stock full range on them, has never given the long-leaf pine an opportunity to reproduce itself except over very limited areas, and where protected. From this cause this pine, which will always have the highest value, both for its timber and the abundant resin which it contains, is in danger of becoming extinct in North Carolina, and indeed in all the States where it now grows, at least as far as its commercial importance is concerned.

IMPORTANCE OF EARLY ACTION.

If the long-leaf pine which is still standing is allowed to seed these lands, and the seed and young pines protected from destruction, a regrowth can be obtained with comparative ease, but if the long-leaf pines now standing are once destroyed, the securing on these waste lands of a growth of trees which will be of economic importance will be both a difficult and costly undertaking, since this pine is the only tree of value in the arts which naturally grows on these barren lands. It will cost very little more to secure a regrowth than it does to retain the lands in their present impoverished and unproductive state, since taxes and frequently the interest on the original investment must be paid.

The adoption of some general law for these districts, requiring stock, especially swine, to be confined, would be of great help in securing a regrowth, but it would be imperative, at the same time, to prevent any fire from passing through the barrens, since one fire can kill in a few hours a growth of pines several years old. The final value of the growth would depend, too, on fires being kept out even when most of the trees were large enough to be uninjured by burning. By the time such a growth reached maturity or became large enough to furnish timber, all the original forests will have been cut over and the usually thin and scattering regrowth will be called upon to furnish not only most of the fuel, but all lumber and timber required in building and manufacturing.

So great is the annihilation of the primitive forests and so rapidly does the demand for lumber increase from year to year that it is doubtful if the entire forests of the Southern States can last longer than two or three decades. The same is true of the pine forests which can be used for turpentine production. The ruin of these forests will cause a marked rise in the value of all forest products, so that a certain and a higher-priced market can be assured for all future forest material.

CHAPTER III.

THE NAVAL STORE INDUSTRY IN NORTH CAROLINA.

HISTORICAL SKETCH.

In Colonial Times.—As early as 1700 the production of naval stores was an industry of some importance in the Colony of Carolina. At the same time the industry was carried on in the adjacent parts of Virginia. In Virginia the products were largely derived from the loblolly pine, while in North Carolina they came chiefly from the long-leaf pine. The products exported from the colony at that date were tar and pitch and some crude turpentine; but the quantity of the latter shipped was small. Tar kilns were made then as now and the process of burning was the same. Indeed, the process is very much the same as that described by Theophrastus as being used by the ancient Greeks.

The tar manufactured in the Southern States was more commonly converted into pitch before being shipped, by the addition of some crude turpentine and the mixture then being boiled down to the right consistency. From north-eastern North Carolina it was shipped by way of Norfolk, Va., to England, the laws of England at that date forbidding colonial products from being shipped to other than English ports. Until about 1800 the making of tar was not as largely confined to North Carolina as it is at present, nor even to the Southern States. Besides being burnt in Virginia from the loblolly and short-leaf pines, some was made in New York and other Northern States from the pitch pine (Pinus rigida), but more for home use than for export. Georgia and South Carolina also produced considerable amounts in colonial days. The method of cutting the boxes for collecting the crude turpentine was then the same as now. The names of some of the parts connected with the process have slightly changed in the meantime. Cornering was then called notching and the virgin dip was called pure dippings. These names continued in general use until the early part of the present century.

Both the tar and the crude turpentine produced in the north-eastern part of this State were marketed, in the early days, usually in exchange for goods, at Nansemond or Norfolk, Va., and there found ready sale. Before the beginning of the present century both commodities had practically ceased to be produced around Albemarle sound. The seat of the industry slowly moved westward from thence up the Roanoke and Tar rivers and southward, as the settlements extended, to Washington and Newbern, both points shipping large quantities of naval stores to New York and Philadelphia, where it was reshipped to England, and there the crude turpentine was distilled. The largest special use for the crude turpentine in the United States then was for mixing with fats, etc., in making yellow soap.

LATER DEVELOPMENTS.—Before 1800 Wilmington became one of the largest shipping points for both crude turpentine and tar. In 1804 the exportation of crude turpentine from Wilmington amounted to 77,000 barrels, and the total amount of naval stores shipped exceeded that from all other ports of the United States. The crude turpentine was brought down the rivers on rafts and small boats from as high as Edgecombe county to Washington, from Wayne county to Newbern, and from all the northern tributaries of the Cape Fear river to Wilmington, and was distilled in crude iron stills partly at the shipping points, partly in Philadelphia and New York, and much also went to England to be there distilled. The spirits of turpentine usually found quick sales and good prices except when overproduction took place, and was preferred in France even to the Bordeaux turpentine, which was made in the department of the Landes in Gascony, being less odorous and more uniform in quality than that. The rosin manufactured was worth very little, getting down as low as 25 cents a barrel and then so low it would not pay to handle it. The tar and pitch manufactured at first gave general satisfaction and were made in large quantities. In 1770 there were nearly 100,000 barrels of tar and pitch shipped from the United States, about one-fifth of this amount being pitch shipped from North Carolina.

In 1799 the tar used in England came in equal proportions from Russia, Sweden and the United States. Later the Carolina tar

and pitch were less esteemed in England, where they were said to burn the cordage more than the products made in the Baltic provinces. This was said to be due to dead wood being used in North Carolina for making tar and the burning being carried on so rapidly and at so high a temperature that wood acids were formed in large quantities along with the tar. American products were also objected to because they were earthy, the receptacle being carelessly made, and were packed in insecure, leaky barrels. These last objections are sometimes made against them now, though the use of cases for shipping has tended to remedy the evil.

In Bothnia and Sweden, on the other hand, only living wood of the fir and usually from the lower part of the trunk and roots were used and burning was carried on more slowly. In 1831 there were imported into England 10,900 lasts of tar, of 14 barrels each. Of these 8,700 came from Russian provinces on the gulf of Bothnia, 1,200 from Sweden and only 1,000 from the United States. The amount imported from the United States has remained at very near these figures ever since.

The total value of the resinous products shipped from the United States, however, increased from about \$200,000 in 1800 to \$567,000 in 1834, and to \$700,000 in 1838. Most of the products shipped up to this time were from North Carolina, as previous to 1838 trees were not tapped for turpentine south of the Cape Fear river, it being a generally held opinion that south of that river the pines would not yield. This error was soon discovered by experimenting with the trees in that section and orchards there soon became as valuable as those farther north.

In 1836 copper distilleries were introduced in this country and at the same time there was an increased demand for spirits turpentine as a solvent of India rubber, this being the cheapest solvent of that article obtainable, and was thus used in the manufacture of rubber goods. It was also used for illuminating purposes, though the different forms of petroleum oils and the general use in towns of illuminating gas, made from coal, soon supplanted it. Stimulated by this increased demand the production of turpentine extended rapidly southward beyond the Cape Fear river into South Carolina, and up the Cape Fear to Cumberland and Har-

nett counties. The British free-trade measure in 1846 gave free entrance into English ports to the products manufactured from turpentine and this stimulated the manufacture of these products in North Carolina. From this date forward the exports of crude turpentine decreased as the exports of spirits turpentine, rosin, tar, etc., increased.

It was found more economical to move the stills as close to the seat of production as possible, so that when rosin was low in value the spirits of turpentine only need be shipped. This allowed work to be done farther from the water-courses, near to which the industry had been previously confined. By 1855 about one-half of the spirits of turpentine shipped from Wilmington was distilled inland. The shipments from Washington and Newbern had already begun to decline, the building of the Wilmington and Weldon Railroad having largely turned their trade toward Petersburg and Wilmington.

By 1860 the orchards from which Washington drew its supply approached exhaustion and production soon ceased. Newbern being farther south, the industry continued there for several years longer, but after 1870 the decline in production became rapid and practically ceased during the past decade. There is now no distillery in full operation within thirty miles of Newbern. North of the Neuse river there were in 1893 only eight distilleries in operation, with an output for that year of less than 7,000 barrels of rosin. Three of these distilleries were in Johnston, two in Nash, two in Wilson and one in Wayne county.

SOUTH-WESTWARD EXTENSION OF THE INDUSTRY.—After 1835 the seat of the production of turpentine began to move south-westward through the Southern States. In 1840 the value of the total product amounted to \$593,451, nearly the entire amount being produced in North Carolina; and in 1860, while the value of the total product in the United States was \$7,454,000, that of North Carolina was \$5,355,778. In 1870 North Carolina, with 147 establishments, manufactured naval store products valued at only \$2,338,000, while the total product of the United States, with 227 establishments, amounted in value to \$3,585,000. In 1893 Georgia made about the same amount of turpentine and rosin

that North Carolina did, while Florida, Alabama, Mississippi and Louisiana altogether made about as much more.

The industry has only become of importance in Mississippi and Louisiana during the past few years, and is still capable of great expansion in these States. The turpentine orchards of Georgia are in about the same condition as those in this State, although there is probably in Georgia more round timber standing. The same may be said concerning the forests in Alabama. There are in Texas, however, between 3,000,000 and 4,000,000 acres of untapped long-leaf pine forests and the turpentine industry there has hardly more than made a beginning.

Inland Extension in North Carolina.—The first turpentine distillery at Fayetteville was established in 1844 by Thomas Lutterlow. The same year the first boxes were cut in what is now Harnett county, near Manchester, by Henry Harrison, who shipped the turpentine from there to Fayetteville to be manufactured. Ten years later there was a distillery owned by Jonathan Worth & Son in operation in the extreme western part of Harnett county near Buffaloe Springs.

The building in 1850 of a plank road from High Point to Fayetteville, which road was followed in a few years by a similar one from Fayetteville through the western section of Cumberland county and another which was projected to Raleigh through Harnett and Wake counties, but only partially finished, caused Fayetteville to become the seat of a large business both in handling turpentine and rosin and in distilling the crude turpentine. The satisfactory prices obtained, and the facility with which the produce could be gotten to Fayetteville on the plank roads for shipment down the Cape Fear river to Wilmington, led to the industry's extending before the outbreak of the civil war, even to the very western limits of the pine belt in Chatham, Wake and Moore counties.

The completion, subsequently, of railroads across the western part of the long-leaf pine belt caused a great deal of the rosin and spirits, manufactured along their lines, to be shipped direct to Northern and other inland consumers, without going via Wilmington. In 1893 over 5,000 barrels of rosin went direct west by way

of Paint Rock, and over one-half as much went direct north or to Norfolk by rail, as was shipped by way of Wilmington. Although the output of rosin and spirits of turpentine has more than doubled in the United States since 1860, the demand has increased nearly as rapidly until within the last few years, when there has been overproduction and consequently low prices.

VALUE OF THE NAVAL STORE PRODUCTS OF THE UNITED STATES.

From the Eleventh Census the total value of the naval stores manufactured in the United States for the year ending May 31, 1890, was \$8,077,379. The product that year consisted of 346,524 barrels of spirits of turpentine, 1,429,154 barrels of rosin, and about 40,000 barrels of tar, pitch and miscellaneous products. The turpentine products given above represent the entire amount produced in the world for commercial purposes with the exception of that made in southern France and Austria, which altogether did not amount to 25,000,000 pounds (about 100,000 barrels).

AMOUNT OF CAPITAL AND LABOR EMPLOYED.

The cost of the crude material used to produce the output of naval store products in the United States in 1890 was \$2,506,440, and the capital directly invested in the manufacture of naval stores in the United States was reported by the Eleventh Census to be \$1,117,265, and in North Carolina \$269,341. This capital, representing 670 establishments, employed 15,313 laborers in the United States and 1,747 laborers, on an average, in North Carolina, where there were reported to be 194 establishments.

The relatively small number of laborers given as employed in this State is due to the fact that the greater part of the turpentine is collected by farmers (or their "hands") who have a small area of turpentine orchard and utilize their time at dull seasons in this way; and many of these are not included in the above estimate. But some of the turpentine collected in other States is also gotten in the same manner.

CONDITION OF THE NAVAL STORE INDUSTRY IN NORTH CAROLINA.

During the latter part of 1893 the Geological Survey made an examination into the condition of the naval store industry in North

Carolina, and particularly into the condition of the turpentine orchards and the prospects of this industry in the State. The statistics for 1893 relating to this industry, which are given below, have been secured by correspondence with naval store dealers and distillers in all parts of the long-leaf pine region and by personal visits to many sections. The figures used in comparisons have been derived from the latest U. S. Census reports, unless credited to other sources.

SPIRITS TURPENTINE AND ROSIN STATISTICS.

The accompanying table shows for the year ending December 31, 1893, the number of turpentine distilleries in operation during the year, and the amounts of rosin and turpentine manufactured in each county, together with the amounts shipped from each county to Wilmington, N. C., and the amounts shipped direct by rail routes to consumers and dealers elsewhere.

| Yield of Rosin and S | pirits Turpentine i | n North Carolina | . 1893. |
|----------------------|---------------------|------------------|---------|
|----------------------|---------------------|------------------|---------|

| | F ERIES. | Rosin Manufactured. | | | Spirits of Turpentine Manufactured. | | |
|------------------|---------------------------|---|---|--------------------------------|---|--|--------|
| | NUMBER OF DISTILLERIES | Barrels shipped to Wilming- ton. | Barrels shipped by rail else- where. | Total number of barrels. | Casks shipped to Wil- mington. | Casks ship'd by rail else- where. | |
| Blåden | 27 | 39,800 | 3,600 | 43,400 | 7,500 | 990 | 8,490 |
| Brunswick | -8 | 12,000 | | 12,000 | 2,800 | | 2,800 |
| Columbus | | 37,200 | | 37,200 | 7,750 | | 7,750 |
| Cumberland | 24 | 21,000 | 15,000 | 36,000 | 1 3,200 | 3,961 | 7,161 |
| Duplin | 5 | 7,800 | | 7,800 | 1,060 | | 1,060 |
| Harnett | 9 | 3,700 | 9,050 | 12,750 | 400 | 2,335 | 2,735 |
| Johnston | 10 | , ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,, | 16,764 | 16,764 | l | 2,632 | 2,632 |
| Montgomery | 12 | | 22,000 | 22,000 | | 5,150 | 5,150 |
| Moore | 34 | 3,125 | 38,207 | 41,332 | 200 | 8,637 | 8,837 |
| Onslow | 12 | 12,600 | 2,700 | 15,300 | 2,700 | 450 | 3,150 |
| Pender | 8 | 10,400 | | 10,400 | 2,060 | | 2,060 |
| Richmond | 13 | 7,170 | 6,017 | 13,187 | 1,800 | 1,083 | 2,883 |
| Robeson | 28 | 30,200 | 9,910 | 40,110 | 4,712 | 3,233 | 7,945 |
| Sampson | 30 | 41,000 | 3,000 | 44,000 | 7,920 | 2,121 | 10,041 |
| Wavne | . 3 | | 3,970 | 3,970 | | 517 | 517 |
| *Other counties. | . 7 | 4,000 | 7,768 | 11,768 | 800 | 1,517 | 2,317 |
| Totals | 256 | 229,995 | 137,986 | 367,981 | 42,902 | 32,626 | 75,528 |

^{*}This includes four counties: Nash with 2 distilleries, Wilson with 2, Lenoir with 2 and New Hanover with 1. The amounts included in this statement for New Hanover county are estimates obtained by adding the average yearly output of one distillery.

The number of counties which produced crude turpentine during the year (1893) was 19. The amounts produced in New Hanover, Nash and Wilson were very small, New Hanover producing practically none. The greater part of the crude turpentine which was manufactured in that county was brought from South Carolina, and from inland counties along the Cape Fear and Northeast Cape Fear rivers.

The total amounts of rosin and spirits of turpentine manufactured in North Carolina and their values are shown in the accompanying table for the year 1893 and the census years ending May 31, 1870, 1880 and 1890 as reported by the United States Census for those years.

Quantity and Value of Rosin and Spirits Turpentine Manufactured in North Carolina.

| YEAR. Number of establishments. | | Rosin. | | SPIRITS OF | | |
|---------------------------------|------------|--------------------|----------------------|------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| | Barrels. | Value. | Casks. | Value. | Total value. | |
| 1870 - 1880 | 147 184 | | | | | \$2,338,309 1,758,488 |
| 1890 1893 | 194 247 | 365,233 367,981 | \$377,310 392,000 | 72,888 75,528 | \$1,293,086 1,283,760 | 1,705,833 1,752,760 |

The total values represent the value of all products manufactured directly from turpentine.

Production has ceased during the past ten years in Wake, Craven and Edgecombe counties. There has been an increase since 1880 only in Moore and Montgomery counties, the number of barrels of rosin produced in Moore county for the year (1893) being considerably larger than the number produced in 1880, though the value of the product is less now than at that date. Montgomery county is credited with no resinous products in the census of 1880, but in 1893 there were 12 distilleries operating there which produced 22,000 barrels of rosin.

DECREASE IN THE PRODUCTION OF CRUDE TURPENTINE.

The quantity of crude turpentine shipped is small now compared with past shipments. All that was shipped last year went direct to domestic consumers, mostly manufacturers of printing

and lithographic inks. Boston was the largest market, New York and Baltimore being next in order. There were 6,331 barrels shipped from Wilmington and 4,600 barrels from other points, making a total of 10,931 barrels, with an estimated valuation of \$12,000. The grades of this crude turpentine were not obtainable.

The general decrease in the amount of crude turpentine produced in the extreme eastern counties during the past twenty years is approximately shown by the decrease in the exports of rosin and spirits turpentine from Wilmington. This will not apply to the more westerly counties and to Harnett, Johnston, Cumberland and Robeson, since additional railroad facilities during the past ten years have turned a large part of their products from Wilmington. In a few of these counties, as in Montgomery and Moore, the product has increased considerably of late, owing to better railroad facilities, but this product is largely transported direct to Northern markets and does not enter into this statement of exports from Wilmington.

The total exports of rosin and spirits of turpentine from Wilmington for every year since 1872, as shown by the records of the Wilmington Produce Exchange, were as follows:

| YEAR | Exports of Rosin, Barrels. | Exports of Spirits of Turpentine, Casks. | YEAR. | Exports of Rosin, Barrels. | Exports of Spirits of Turpentine, Casks. |
|------|-------------------------------------|---|----------|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1873 | 690,151 | 131,236 | 1884 | 342,936 | 71,354 |
| 1874 | 556,182 | 125,837 | 1885 | 314,724 | 66,603 |
| 1875 | 523,330 | 107,420 | 1886 | 331,497 | 63,684 |
| 1876 | 490,555 | 91,592 | 1887 | 381,535 | 71,912 |
| 1877 | 537,704 | 101,832 | . 1888 i | 246,566 | 63,473 |
| 1878 | 581,958 | 118,176 | 1889 | 351,827 | 61,626 |
| 1879 | 512,891 | 91,224 | 1890 | 385,523 | 70,285 |
| 1880 | 447,750 | 101,725 | 1891 | 304,818 | 60,844 |
| 1881 | 486,138 | 87,658 | 1892 | 273,291 | 58,034 |
| 1882 | 414,318 | 87,896 | 1893 | 224,070 | 47,228 |
| 1883 | 453,465 | 82,135 | ı l | • | • |

Total Rosin and Spirits Turpentine Exported from Wilmington, 1873-'93.

When the exports of 1883, for both rosin and spirits of turpentine, are compared with those of 1873 there is shown a falling off of over one-third, while there is a falling off of nearly one-half in the decade between 1883 and 1893. Many distilleries in the extreme eastern counties reported that their territory had not been thoroughly worked, during the last few years, on account of the low prices, and that any rise in prices would largely increase production. This fact may in part account for the more rapid decline in the receipts of rosin and spirits of turpentine at Wilmington since 1883.

The following table gives the foreign exports of rosin and spirits of turpentine from Wilmington and their value for the past ten years. The data were kindly compiled from the records of the custom-house at Wilmington, for the Survey, by Mr. J. M. Cronly, Deputy Collector of that port:

Quantity and Value of Foreign Exports of Rosin and Spirits Turpentine from Wilmington, N. C., 1874 and 1884-'93.

| YEAR. | Foreign Ex | PORTS OF ROSIN. | FOREIGN EXPORTS SPIRITS TUR- PENTINE. | | |
|-------|------------|-----------------|--|---------|--|
| | Barrels. | Value | Gallons. | Value. | |
| 1874 | 248,424 | \$ | 2,530,000 | \$ | |
| 1884 | 300,932 | 405,776 | 1,418,848 | 470,644 | |
| 1885 | 290.165 | 348,849 | 2,375,482 | 689,964 | |
| 1886 | 288,499 | 306,538 | 2,139,091 | 732,642 | |
| 1897 | 333,119 | 338,356 | 2,203,457 | 757,398 | |
| 1888 | 311,613 | 341,825 | 1,988,103 | 695,476 | |
| 1889 | 281,251 | 296,987 | 1,630,795 | 641,025 | |
| 1890 | 302,094 | 394,569 | 1,751,270 | 709,988 | |
| 1891 | 296,918 | 426,007 | 1,473,157 | 565,834 | |
| 1892 | 251,853 | 271,394 | 1,080,231 | 372,534 | |
| 1893 | 231,056 | 299,286 | 918,727 | 256,178 | |

While the foreign exports of rosin have varied but little there has been a steady decline in the amount of spirits of turpentine shipped.

THE ROSIN TRADE.

The bulk of the rosin made in the United States is used in foreign countries, England importing the larger part of it. About two-thirds of the amount manufactured in North Carolina last year went to Europe, and the remainder to domestic consumers. Domestic manufacturers use more of the fine grades of rosin made in this State than foreign manufacturers do. An attempt was made to ascertain the amounts of the different grades of rosin manufactured,

but returns as to this point were frequently imperfect. There were, however, about 4,800 barrels of W. W. and W. G. rosin (the two highest and lightest colored grades)* shipped by rail from the western counties of the pine belt, and about 4,000 barrels of the same grades were shipped to Wilmington, from the more eastern counties of the pine belt. There were about 20,000 barrels of other grades of light rosin (above N.) made in the western counties, and shipped by rail, and about 25,000 barrels of these grades made in the more eastern counties and shipped via Wilmington. It seems that, while Wilmington handled nearly two-thirds of the rosin manufactured in North Carolina it only received about one-half of the finer grades of rosin. Practically all of the finer grades of rosin which were received at Wilmington, during the year 1893, were sent to Europe.

EXPORTS OF TAR AND PITCH FROM NORTH CAROLINA.

Exports of tar and pitch from North Carolina have varied during the past twenty years much less than have those of rosin and turpentine. The exports, both foreign and domestic, of these commodi-

^{*}GRADES OF ROSIN.—The commonly recognized grades of rosin in the United States are as follows: "W. W."—water white; "W. G."—window-glass; "N."—extra pale; "M."—pale; "K."—low pale; "I."—good No. 1; "H."—No. 1; "F."—good No. 2; "E."—No. 2; "D."—good strain; "C."—strain; "B."—common strain; "A."—black.

[&]quot;Water white" and "window-glass," which are the lightest colored and highest priced rosins, are made only from the "virgin dip," and usually only from that gathered during the first parts of the season. The virgin dip is the turpentine taken from the boxes the year or season that they are cut. The last dipping of the first season (the boxes are dipped from six to eight times during a season) give a yellowish turpentine which makes rosin of about the grade "N." The second and succeeding years "yellow dip" is obtained, the turpentine having acquired a decided yellow tinge of color from running down over the face of the tree which was hacked during the preceding summer when it comes in contact with the old and dark-colored resin on its surface, and is subject to the evaporation of the volatile oils in it by being longer exposed to the heat of the sun.

The second year's yellow dip makes usually rosin of the grade "N." during the first part of the season, while only darker grades "L." and "M." are gotten during the latter part of the season. Each year that the boxes are worked the dip becomes more colored, yields a darker rosin, and has less spirits of turpentine in it on account of having to run down a larger surface, covered with colored resin, and be exposed for a longer time to the oxidizing influences of the sun and air. The "scrape," which is the hardened resin adhering to the scarified face of the tree, yields the darker grades of rosin. The common grades are made from old scrape on trees which have been worked several years, and frequently has mixed with it sticks and chips, cut from the tree while the hardened scrape was being removed. The turpentine produced from the lighter colored dippings is of a better quality than that from the darker, being purer and lighter and having less rosin oil in it.

A large part of the dark grades of rosin ("strain" and "common") which are exported to Europe are used in manufacturing rosin oil. The finer grades are used in the manufacture of soaps, paper sizing, etc.

ties from Wilmington for the years 1874, 1884 and 1893 were as follows:

Total Exports of Tar and Pitch from Wilmington.

| YEAR. | Tar, Barrels. | Pitch, Barrels. |
|-------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1874 | 68,619 | 7,400 |
| 1884 | 68,794 | 5,734 |
| 1893 | 52,541 | 3,274 |

In 1893, besides the above, 4,600 barrels of tar and 700 barrels of pitch were shipped North by rail from Robeson and Cumberland counties. This makes a total of 57,100 barrels of tar and 4,000 barrels of pitch, with an estimated value of \$65,000. The foreign exports of tar and pitch from Wilmington, for the years 1873, 1884, 1893 were as follows: In 1873 they were 48,200 barrels; in 1884 they were 20,138 barrels; in 1893, 7,740 barrels. This shows a decline in the foreign exports of more than 50 per cent. during each decade.

TOTAL AMOUNT AND VALUE OF NAVAL STORE PRODUCTS IN NORTH CAROLINA, 1893.

The total amount and value of the naval store products shipped from North Carolina during the year 1893 were approximately as follows:

Amount and Value of North Carolina Naval Store Products, 1893.

| 75,528 barrels of spirits turpentine | \$1,283,760 |
|--------------------------------------|-------------|
| 367,981 barrels of rosin | 392,000 |
| 10,931 barrels crude turpentine | 12,000 |
| 63,100 barrels tar and pitch | |
| Total value of products | \$1,752,760 |

A preliminary report of the Eleventh Census estimates the total products for North Carolina for the year ending May 31, 1890, to have had a valuation of \$1,705,833. No crude turpentine is given in that report and the tar is given at 600 barrels, valued at \$847 for the entire State. This statement is evidently incorrect, since the exports of that product from Wilmington alone amounted to

72,000 barrels for the year 1890 and almost as much for the preceding year.

CONDITION OF THE TURPENTINE ORCHARDS IN NORTH CAROLINA.

As bearing on the future supply of resinous products in North Carolina, a close examination was made into the condition of the long-leaf pine forests now standing in the State, and in the following notes the writer has endeavored to show the character and extent of the existing productive orchards, of those orchards which have been abandoned, the round timber which can be boxed, and the second growth long-leaf pine.

LENGTH OF TIME THAT TURPENTINE ORCHARDS ARE WORKED.

The orchards of the Cape Fear river section have been worked steadily for from twenty to thirty-five years and in Sampson and Bladen counties many bodies of pine are reported as having three sets of boxes on them, having been worked since 1845, with intermissions of a few years for rest and to allow the space between the hacked faces to increase in breadth. The yield from these longworked trees is still considerable when they grow on good soil, and when the trees have been injured in no other way, as by fire charring the faces of the old boxes.

These trees along the Cape Fear river seem capable of standing continuous working longer than those in any other part of the State or even of the United States, there being numerous reports from this section stating that the orchards had been worked from forty to fifty years. From Columbus county only one distiller reported that his trees had been worked as long as thirty-five years, while others stated that theirs were abandoned after having been worked from twenty to twenty-five years. One distiller in Robeson county, on the Cape Fear river, reported fifty years as the maximum time, while for those farther west, in Moore county, approaching the clay uplands and at an elevation of from 300 to 500 feet above the sealevel, a productive limit of twenty years was given. In South Carolina the trees are worked from twelve to fifteen years; in Georgia from four to eight years, except the slash pine (Pinus

cubensis (Friseb.) along the coast, which "runs dry" in one or two years, as is true of the loblolly pine in North Carolina.

It may be said that most of the orchards now producing in North Carolina have been "back-boxed"* and that over four-fifths of the crude turpentine comes from back-boxed trees. Only in Montgomery and the western parts of Moore county are there any extensive bodies of trees which have not been back-boxed. The average time the trees have been worked in these two counties is about seven years, but many of the orchards in Montgomery have only been worked for four years.

AREAS OF ABANDONED TURPENTINE ORCHARDS.

An examination of this region showed that large areas of long-leaf pine forests had been abandoned as no longer profitably yielding turpentine. Such areas, where the trees are still standing, are classed by the distillers as abandoned orchards. When these forests have been removed by fire or cut by lumbermen and no loblolly pine has appeared to take the place of the long-leaf pine, the term waste land is applied to these areas. The following estimates of the amounts of abandoned orchards in the separate counties are based on returns made by 162 distillers in these counties, supplemented by personal investigation by the writer. These areas, in acres, of abandoned turpentine orchards were as follows in December, 1893:

Areas of Abandoned Turpentine Orchards in North Carolina, 1893.

| Bladen county | 60,000 : | acres. | Onslow county | 38,000 | acres. |
|---------------|----------|--------|--------------------|---------|--------|
| Brunswick | 98,000 | " | Pender | 28,000 | 66 |
| Cumberland | 51,000 | 4.6 | Richmond | 32,000 | * * |
| Duplin | 17,000 | 4.6 | Robeson | | |
| Harnett | 52,000 | 4.6 | Sampson | 58,500 | " |
| Lenoir | 20,000 | ٠٠ | Wayne | 30,000 | 44 |
| Johnston | 30,000 | " | Wilson | • | |
| Montgomery | 10,000 | 46 | Other counties | 75,000 | " |
| Moore | 10,000 | " | | | |
| Nash | 25,000 | ** | Total in the State | 718.000 | " |

Included in the term "other counties" are Wake, Edgecombe, Craven, Columbus, New Hanover and Carteret counties. The

^{*}For explanations of this and other terms see pp. 94-96.

amount abandoned during the past few years has been greater than usual, the very low prices making it unprofitable to work thinly timbered orchards longer. The operation of many of these bodies may be resumed should there be any material advance in prices of naval store products, but such a change is hardly probable. these areas of abandoned orchards there is a great range of density of forest growth, varying from that which may be called the normal density, which will cut from 3,500 to 4,500 feet, board measure, to the acre, to that which will scarcely cut 300 feet to the acre, below which latter limit it would be considered waste land unless a growth of loblolly pine has, in part, replaced the long-leaf pine. Although there is very little of this abandoned orchard that is heavily timbered with long-leaf pine, all of it has, more or less, valuable mill timber on it. Much of the timber might again be boxed and profitably worked if protected until the growth of the space between the boxes would allow new boxes to be cut.

ANNUAL ADDITIONS TO THE TURPENTINE ORCHARDS.

The number of acres of round timber being boxed yearly is now very small. An attempt was made to ascertain this amount, but both back boxes and original boxes were included in the returns; these figures, too, were somewhat fragmentary for certain districts. For the seasons 1892–'93 and 1893–'94 the total number of boxes cut in each county were about as follows:

| County. | Season 1892–'93. | Season 1893-'94. | County. | Season 1892-'93. | Season 1893-'94. |
|------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| Bladen | | 95,000 | Nash | 60,000 | 60,000 |
| Brunswick† Columbus | 60,000 | 70,000 | New Hanover* Pender | 33,000 | 22,000 |
| Cumberland Duplin† | | 220,000 4,000 | Onslow | | 18,000 65,000 |
| HarnettJohnston | 82,000 | 70,000 42,000 | Robeson | 197,000 | 96,500 105,000 |
| Montgomery | 35,000 | 60,000 | Wayne | 7,000 | 3,000 |
| Moore Lenoir† | | 78,000 3,000 | Wilson | ······· | |
| · | | 1 | Totals | 1.193.000 | 1.011.500 |

Number of Boxes Cut in North Carolina, 1892-'94.

^{*}No returns made. †Returns not full.

It can be roughly estimated that it would require the trees on 20,000 acres to hold the number of boxes cut in 1893-'94. The proportion of this which was round timber, and which represents the increase in the area of orchard, was under 3,000 acres. The largest single tract ascertained to have been newly boxed was 350 acres in Bladen county. There were other tracts nearly as large in Sampson, Harnett, Richmond and Montgomery counties.

BOXING OF OTHER SPECIES OF PINES.

The loblolly and short-leaf pines are not generally tapped in An attempt was made, however, to find out the number of loblolly pine (P. Taeda) boxes cut last year in Johnston and Robeson counties, where most of them are worked, and the number was found to be under 20,000, showing that a very insignificant amount of turpentine is produced from this tree. There were about 3,000 short-leaf pine (P. mitis) boxes cut last year in Montgomery county. This tree was extensively worked fifteen years ago in Wake and Chatham counties. The young trees are the only ones which yield sufficiently to justify boxing; they yield about two-thirds as much crude turpentine as the long-leaf pine and can be worked from six to seven years. The crude turpentine from the loblolly pine is very thin, and runs so freely that it usually overflows the box and runs down to the ground, unless the boxes are dipped more frequently than the long-leaf pine boxes are. It is said to have so much water in it that when distilled without a large intermixture of crude turpentine from the long-leaf pine only a poor quality of spirits turpentine is obtained.

AMOUNT OF ROUND TIMBER AVAILABLE FOR BOXING.

This name is given to the original growth of long-leaf pine before it has been boxed. It makes, of course, better mill timber than the boxed trees, which have the lower part of the stock around the face of the boxes surcharged with resin, obliterating all signs of the grain and making what is called lightwood. The amount of round timber, in acres, standing in each county December, 1893, was, as nearly as could be determined, as follows:

| Amount of Round Timber | (Long-leaf Pine) in | North Carolina, | December, 1893. |
|------------------------|---------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
|------------------------|---------------------|-----------------|-----------------|

| Bladen | 3,900 € | acres. | Nash | 700 a | acres. |
|------------|---------|--------|---------------------|--------|--------|
| Columbus | 3,700 | " | Onslow | 3,200 | 44 |
| Cumberland | 1,300 | 46 | Pender | 5,400 | " |
| Duplin | 1,900 | " | Richmond | 2,200 | " |
| Harnett | 6,100 | " | Robeson | 6,850 | " |
| Johnston | 200 | " | Sampson | 876 | " |
| Jones | 400 | " | Wake | 700 | " |
| Lenoir | 1,500 | " | Wayne | 200 | " |
| Montgomery | 6,050 | ** | • | | |
| Moore | | " | Total for the State | 55,876 | ** |

The total amount of round timber now standing is very little nore than was yearly being put in orchard during the period between 1840 and 1870. The number of acres of round timber standing in these same counties fifty years ago must have been between 4,000,000 and 5,000,000 acres. Much of this remaining timber will probably never be boxed, being in small bodies in districts where trees have ceased to be worked for turpentine.

YOUNG GROWTH OF LONG-LEAF PINE.

The young growth of long-leaf pine may also be included along with the round pine as timber which in part now, or in the near future, can be worked for turpentine. But unfortunately the acreage of second growth pine which is now, or even soon will be, of sufficient size to be boxed for this purpose, is very small, and the trees in such growth are scattering, consequently they are short-bodied and present little uniformity as regards size or regularity of growth. The figures for this acreage are based on field notes taken during an examination of the pine lands during the winter of 1893—'94. In each case they are probably much in excess of the true amount of young growth of trees large enough to hold a turpentine box. The counties in which any large amount of young growth was observed and the approximate amounts of this in each (in acres) are enumerated in the accompanying table:

Areas of Young Growth of Long-leaf Pine in North Carolina, 1893.

| Bladen county | 3,500 | acres. | New Hanover | 4,000 | acres. |
|---------------|-------|--------|--------------------|--------|--------|
| Craven | 5,000 | " | Robeson | 2,000 | . 44 |
| Cumberland | 2,700 | " | Sampson | 2,500 | " |
| Moore | 700 | " | Others possibly | 10,000 | 4.6 |
| Lenoir | 2,000 | 44 | | | |
| Johnston | 700 | " | Total in the State | 33,100 | 44 |

Some of this young growth has already been boxed, but the amount of turpentine gotten from it is inconsiderable. It varies in age from about eighteen to thirty-five years, and in diameter from four inches to eighteen inches. The amount of young growth loblolly and short-leaf pine is very large, should the price ever allow them to be extensively worked for turpentine.

DECREASING AREA OF TURPENTINE ORCHARDS IN NORTH CAROLINA.

As shown in the above statements the additions to the areas of turpentine orchards during the past few years, from both the taking in of new mature forests and the boxing of young or second growth pine trees has been small. On the other hand, the destructive agencies, such as forest fires, storms and the lumbermen, have been actively at work, and as the result of their combined activities the area of productive turpentine orchards in North Carolina has been reduced to but a small part of what it was half a century ago. Over the large areas north of Neuse river the long-leaf pine has practically disappeared. Over large areas between this river and the South Carolina State boundary line many of the once dense virgin long-leaf pine forests have given place to equally large areas of abandoned pine barrens and waste lands.

DESTRUCTION OF ORCHARDS BY FIRES.

Every year there is more or less destruction of standing timber by fires, both in worked and in abandoned orchards. The loss during the past year and the number of acres burnt over are shown with approximate accuracy in the accompanying tabulated statement:

Some of the Losses from Fires in Long-leaf Pine Forests, 1893.

| | No. of Acres Burnt. | Loss. | |
|--------------|---------------------|--|--|
| Moore county | 10,000 1 5,000 | \$25,000* 12,000† 6,000 5,000 | |
| Totals | 48,500 | \$48,000 | |

^{*}Estimated by W. E. Petty, Esq., Carthage, N. C.

[†]Estimated by Mr. John Blue, of Aberdeen, N. C.

All of these fires took place in the spring, either in March or April, and all were reported as started from the firing of the grass of the pine barrens. The first two fires were particularly severe, going through orchards that were being worked, and ruining not only the boxes, but also killing a great deal of the timber, very little of which was so situated that it could be converted into lumber before being attacked by the borers.

In the fall of 1892 there was another severe fire in Richmond and Moore counties, which destroyed a large amount of timber, and also the village of West End, on the Aberdeen & West End Railroad. The value of the timber alone destroyed by this fire was placed at \$75,000.

The danger and loss occasioned by fires in the forests is not sufficiently understood by the class of persons who are generally the cause of them. In the pine barrens most of the fires are purposely started, and the persons starting them should be held responsible for any loss caused by them. Too great discretion cannot be exercised about a suitable time to burn the woods, when it is deemed absolutely necessary to burn them, and persons should be careful that it is not too late in the season: after the trees have begun to put forth their leaves or shoots, and that the season is not too dry. Much care should be taken to prevent such fires escaping proper bounds and destroying the property of other persons who are in no way connected with the starting of the fire.

The damage of fires is more than local and the loss occasioned by them, or resulting from them, is felt far beyond the immediate district in which they occur. Even when there is no apparent damage it sets a precedent, the following of which is sure ultimately to lead to great damage. And there is always a considerable amount of damage done; enough to far more than counterbalance the advantages supposed to be gained in improving the pasturage of the forests or in other ways.

The illustration (Plate I) facing page 58 is from a photograph of a long-leaf pine forest a few miles west of Southern Pines, Moore county, taken some months after a forest fire had swept through this region. All of the pines at this point were killed. Many of them fell and were partially or completely destroyed, and

the few left standing were practically ruined, as they could not be cut at once. (See, also, pp. 57 and 61 for notes on the destructive work of forest fires).

DAMAGES TO ORCHARDS FROM STORMS.

Besides the injuries to turpentine orchards, during 1893, from fires they were damaged by two severe storms, occurring one in August and the other in October, in the fall. The earlier storm, in August, did but slight damage, except to abandoned orchards. The one of October 14th, however, proved generally destructive to all boxed pines, besides blowing up by the roots many oaks and other hardwood trees. The damages were greater in the south-eastern portions of the State, especially in Columbus, Bladen, Sampson and Johnston counties, but they were by no means confined to these counties. The force of the storm was not uniformly distributed over this area, but was more severe at numerous scattered points. Twenty distillers in these counties estimate that at least one-tenth of their trees were blown down, while other orchards were injured to a less extent, and several thousand acres of abandoned orchard were ruined.

Most of this fallen timber proved to be a total loss, though about 100,000 railroad cross-ties were cut from it at points contiguous to the railroads, and small quantities of it were carried to the saw-mills on the Cape Fear river. Unboxed long-leaf pines suffered very little, and neither the loblolly pine nor swamp timber was damaged to any considerable extent. Boxed pines, as a rule, were broken off at the box. Out of one hundred prostrated long-leaf pines seen near Bladenboro (N. C.) eighty-five were broken off at the box, four above the box but along the face, ten were blown up by the roots, and only one tree was broken off above the face of the box. These facts show the importance of adopting some other system of gathering the turpentine which will avoid the deep boxing of the trees. Such a system is practiced in France, and is described further on in this report (page 96).

AREA OF ORCHARDS REDUCED BY LUMBERING.

Lumbermen are also instrumental to a considerable extent in reducing the acreage of turpentine orchards. In Moore, Richmond and Robeson counties they are rapidly cutting into the orchards. Eleven distillers in the two first counties reported their orchards as having been cut into by lumbermen last year. At least 35,000 acres of new and abandoned orchard must have been cut over during 1893 to have yielded the lumber cut during that year by the mills sawing long-leaf pine.

HOW LONG CAN OUR TURPENTINE ORCHARDS LAST?

It appears from the foregoing that there are in the State less than 75,000 acres of long-leaf pine timber now unboxed which can be added in the future to the turpentine orchards, and that the present yield of turpentine is derived principally from "backboxed" trees, which if not destroyed within twenty years could not continue to yield turpentine for more than that length of time. In point of fact, however, the trees of existing orchards cannot produce turpentine, except in a small way, for even that length of time, since they are being destroyed by fire, or converted into lumber, at the rate of over 60,000 acres a year. Then, too, the rate of destruction increases each year as the number of mills increases. and as the amount of abandoned orchard, which proper precautions are not taken to protect from fire, becomes larger; and these abandoned orchards serve as means of carrying fire to the newer orchards which are being used.

FRENCH AND AMERICAN METHODS OF GATHERING TURPENTINE.

The two chief objections to the American system of boxing trees for turpentine are:

- (1). The injury to the tree produced by the box, interrupting and impairing the life processes and sooner or later damaging the timber or causing its entire destruction, and,
- (2). That the yield of spirits of turpentine is less than it should be, and the rosin manufactured is largely of darker and inferior grades.

A method of tapping the trees, which to a very great extent

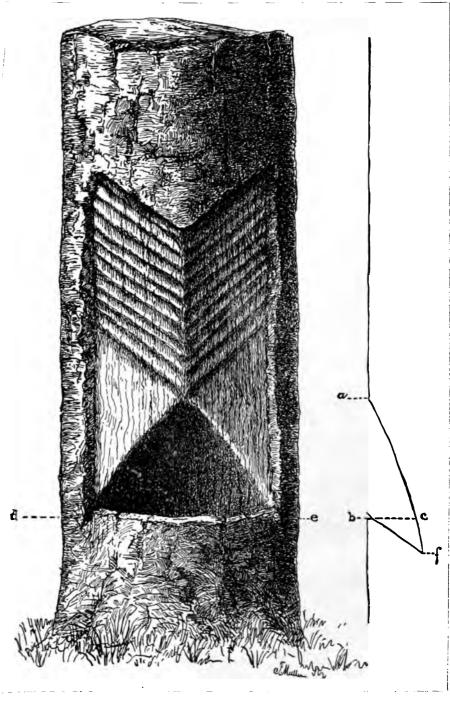
remedies these faults, is the Hugues system, which was first used in France about 1860, and since that time has come into general use in that country, having been found more efficacious than the one previously used there. It presents as great an advancement on the American system now in vogue as the American did on the early French method.

THE AMERICAN SYSTEM OF GATHERING TURPENTINE.

The American method, which can be advantageously used only on stocks over fifteen inches in diameter, consists of cutting in the base of the tree, about eight inches from the ground, a hole called the box. This box, which is hollowed out with a narrow, thin bladed axe manufactured for the purpose, has a length following the circumference of the tree of about fourteen inches (d to e of Plate II), a depth of about seven inches (d to f), and extended back into the wood at the mouth of the box about four inches same time that the box is cut there is a triangular strip removed on either side of it and extending up as high as the tip of the box. This operation is called *cornering* and the channels left where the chips were removed act as gutters leading into the box.

Immediately above this box the thin bark and a thin section of the sap-wood is removed by means of a sharp, bent-bladed implement called the hack. In this process, called hacking or chipping, the implement is drawn at an oblique angle across the surface of the trunk alternately in opposite directions, each pair of grooves made by the hack forming a V, so that the cut surface consists of two planes forming a very obtuse angle, the lines of their union running vertically up the tree above the center of the box, and down which line the resin runs into the box. This scarified surface, called the face, has a breadth of from fourteen to sixteen inches and a depth usually of one and one-half to two inches, rarely going in as deep as the thickness of the sap-wood.

The boxes are cut late in fall or early in spring, and in the first part of March chipping is begun, and is repeated about once a week for from thirty to thirty-five weeks, according to the



AMERICAN PRACTICE OF BOXING AND CHIPPING. [FROM U. S. DEPT. AGR. REPT.]

length of the summer season and the way the resin runs. At each chipping about one-half an inch of wood is cut off. The resin lying in the resin ducts or pores, which are parallel with the grain of the wood, flows out when these ducts are cut and runs down into the box. The object of repeated chipping is to open a fresh surface for the exudation, when the ducts have become clogged by an accumulation in them of hardened resin. By the end of the first season the face has been carried up eighteen to twenty four inches above the box.

The resin which runs into the box, called virgin dip the first season, and the yellow dip of subsequent years is a thick, viscid liquid, more or less transparent and thinner the first season, but hardening quickly on exposure. During the first season it is removed seven or eight times from the box. That resin which hardens on the face is removed by a sharp scraper (scraping) and is mixed with chips and bark, and, besides containing only one-half as much spirits of turpentine as the dip, makes a much harder and darker and withal less valuable grade of rosin than the dip, much of the spirits of the scrape having evaporated or oxidized under the influence of light, heat and air. Each year as the face is carried up higher, about twenty inches a year, there is more scrape and less dip, as the resin exuding from the freshly hacked surface has to run over the entire surface which has already been hacked before it reaches the box, and a large proportion of it hardens and never reaches the box.

The dip, as has been explained, becomes, in succeeding years, gradually darker as work is carried on until it makes only a slightly better rosin than the scrape and contains only two-thirds as much spirits of turpentine as the virgin dip gotten the first year the boxes were worked. There will average two such boxes to a tree, the trees generally being about twenty inches in diameter. After the "faces" have been carried up so high that it is no longer profitable to work them, the trees are allowed to rest for several years and recuperate. During this time the sound wood left between the "faces" broadens, partly covering the old faces, so that on large trees new "boxes" can be cut in between the old ones and

the trees again worked. This is called "back-boxing." There are frequently three sets of boxes put on one tree.

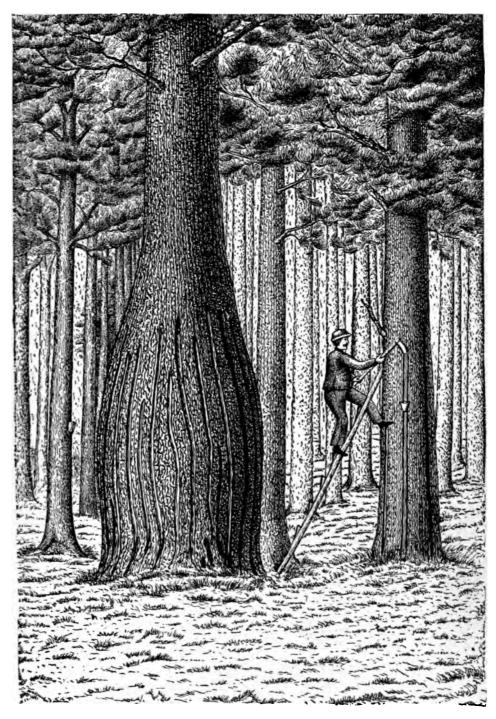
THE FRENCH SYSTEM OF GATHERING TURPENTINE.

The original French method merely removed the bark and a thin layer of sap-wood from a space (face) about five inches wide on each tree, and the resin as it exuded after the repeated chippings ran into a receptacle placed at the foot of the tree to receive it, or frequently into a hole dug in the sand. By the latter method, which was very primitive, the turpentine was mixed with sand, the spirits was absorbed and only a poor grade of rosin was made from it.

The method adopted in 1860, when the production of turpentine was stimulated in France owing to the stoppage of American exports by the blockades during the civil war, was very much in advance of this. The new method, then adopted, may be described in general terms as follows: At the end of February the outer bark for a considerable height is removed on all trees which are to be tapped that year, leaving only a thin layer of bark over the sap-wood. This is to prevent loose bark from falling into the resin. At the first of March, with a peculiar-shaped implement resembling an adze with a bent handle and a curved blade, there is made near the foot of the tree an incision which is four inches broad, two inches high and only one-third of an inch deep. At the bottom of this incision a curved gutter of zinc or galvanized iron, which has a width of the hacked face and teeth on its inner edge, is driven into the wood. This gutter turns the more liquid resin, which flows down into an earthenware or zinc cup hung on a staple immediately below the gutter.

The accompanying illustration (Plate III), taken originally from Professor L. Boppe's work on Forest Technology, but here reproduced from the Annual Report of the Chief of the Division of Forestry, U. S. Department of Agriculture, for 1892, "represents a pine two hundred years old, with more than fifty scars or chips, without apparently any ill effects on the life of the tree."* Some

^{*}An. Rept. Secretary of Agr., Washington, 1892, p. 348.



TURPENTINE ORCHARDING IN FRANCE.

[FROM THE U. S. DEPT. AGR. REPT.]

| | | · | |
|--|--|---|--|
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

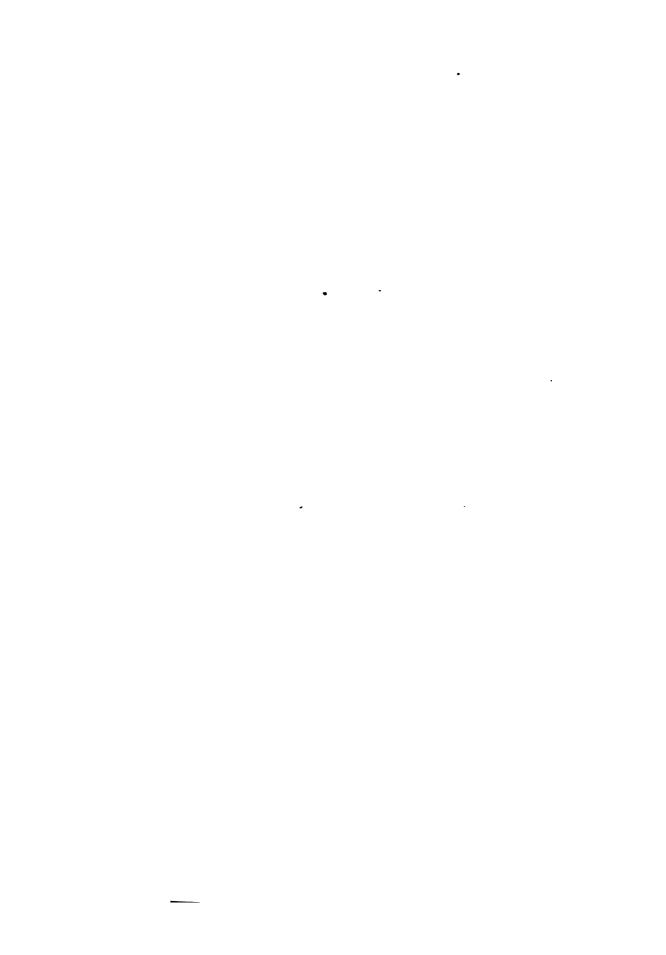




FIG. 1.—TURPENTINE GATHERING (FRENCH SYSTEM), TILL AND POT.

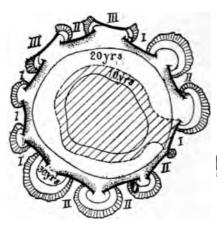


FIG. 2.—CROSS SECTION OF TURPENTINE TREE (FRENCH SYSTEM).



FIG. 3.—FIRE-SAFETY STRIP ALONG RAILROAD, FRENCH TURPENTINE FOREST.

[FROM U. S. DEPT. AGR. REPT.]

of the details of the method are more clearly shown in the figures 1 and 2 of Plate IV.

Figure 1 of Plate IV "exhibits the method of gathering turpentine by the Hugues system, and the use of the till and pot. While formerly the resin was allowed to run into a hole in the sand at the foot of the tree, since 1860, when the production was stimulated by the closing of the American sources of supply, an improvement on the crude method of collecting came into use. It consists in fixing a bent zinc collar or gutter cut from sheet zinc eight inches long and two inches wide, with teeth (see figure) across the chip, which acts as a lip, and conducts the liquid resin into a glazed earthen pot or a zinc vessel of conical shape suspended below the lip. The pots are six inches high, four and a half inches at the opening, and three inches at the bottom, and hold about one quart. At first placed on the ground they are fastened each season above the old chip by means of a nail through a hole or otherwise (see figure). In this way, by shortening the distance over which the resin has to flow, the evaporation of the oil is reduced and there is less liability of impurities to fall into the receiver. cover over the pot is also sometimes used. The pots are emptied every fifteen or twenty days with the aid of a spatula. is collected only twice in the season, in June and November."*

Figure 2 of Plate IV shows a cross section of a pine tree treated according to the French method, bled at different places at different times. Some of the scars are nearly covered over with new wood (as at II), and two of the scars (as at III) have been recently made in new wood between older scars.

"Another improvement which reduces the amount of evaporation and assures cleaner resin consists in covering the chip with a board. This improvement (Hugues system) is said to yield more and purer resin, the yield is claimed to be about one-third larger, and the difference in price, on account of purity, 80 to 90 cents a barrel, while the cost per tree per year is figured at about one cent, besides the proportion of scrape is considerably reduced. This (called gallipot) is collected by hand, except the hardest impure parts (called barras), of which there is hardly any in this system of

^{*}An. Rep. Secretary Agr., Washington, D. C., 1892, p. 350.

collection. Not more than 17.9 per cent. of scrape is expected, as against 29 in the American practice."*

Figure 3 of Plate IV "shows safety fire strip along railroad; a is the elevated roadbed, b is a strip of ground about twenty-five feet wide, which is cleared of all inflammable material. Alongside of this the wooded safety strip about fifty to sixty feet wide; c is a ditch five to six feet wide, a foot or so deep, the soil being thrown toward d. Cross ditches are made through the safety strip every 300 feet. The total width of the whole system of the road on either side is, therefore, eighty to ninety feet. The strip b may be used for agricultural purposes if fit for it; strip c remains wooded, but the forest floor is cleared out and freed of all inflammable material."

Chipping is done forty to fifty times a season, and by the end of the first season the chipped surface has reached a height of twenty inches; that is, while the face is carried in one season just about as high in France as in the United States it is backed from twelve to fifteen times more in the former country than here. This cup can be emptied easily and quickly by lifting it off the tree, and to prevent it being broken can be set aside while hacking and scraping is in progress, which latter operation is done once a year, in the When work is begun on the second and subsequent years the cup and gutter are moved up and refastened so as to be just under the newly hacked surface. The face is rapidly carried up, the tree being hacked more frequently, but a much thinner chip being taken off than is required in the American practice, preserving all the time about the same width and same depth, so that at the end of five years it has reached a total height of twelve feet. From one to ten such faces are put on the pines, according to their size and age, and whether they are to be bled to death (gemmage à mort), in which event the timber will at once be utilized, or bled as long as the tree lives and an abundant flow of turpentine will permit (gemmage à vie).

These faces are worked only five years and then the tree is allowed to rest several years before new ones are put in. The new faces must be put in so that they will be four inches from any other

^{*}An. Rep. Secretary Agr., Washington, D. C., 1892, p. 350. †/bid.

faces, in order that not enough of the inner bark and sap-wood will be removed at one time to kill the tree or seriously injure its life.

ADVANTAGES OF THE FRENCH SYSTEM.

The advantages of the French over the American system fall under two heads: (1). It tends more to protect the trees and prolong their activity. (2). It gives a larger yield, raises the grade of the resinous products and lessens the cost of producing.

RESULTS AS TO THE RELATIVE STRENGTH AND VITALITY OF THE TREES.

Under the French system no "boxes" are cut to weaken the trunk and make it liable to blow down, and in which, sooner or later, rot begins and finally destroys the timber value of the stem. It is in this American "box," too, always filled or covered with inflammable resin while the face is being worked, that fires usually get a start on the tree. There is no limit to the number of new sets of narrow French faces which can be placed, while from the weakening caused by the boxes only a limited number of sets of them can be cut. There are trees in the canton of Cormeau (France) which have been worked for more than 200 years and show over fifty scars. The scars of the narrow faces, although they may be over twice as numerous, are more quickly covered over by the growth of new wood on both sides, since the cambium or generative tissue just under the bark will have twice as many surfaces from which to develop. This enables a tree to more quickly regain its lost vitality, upon which the yield of resin largely depends. The shallow depth which the faces in the French practice are cut, only one-third of an inch, does not injure the life process so much as the deeper cutting practiced in America, which injures the growth of the tree about two-thirds, as is shown by a comparison of the thickness of individual rings of growth before and after boxing.

The purpose the French management has in view is to both preserve and work the forests intended for the production of turpentine as long a time as possible without serious injury to the trees,

since it is a matter of both time and expense to grow a body of pines suitable for tapping.

THE YIELD BY THE FRENCH SYSTEM LARGER IN QUANTITY AND BETTER IN QUALITY.

By using the cup for collecting the turpentine and moving it up each year, so that it will be just below the freshly hacked surface, a larger quantity of purer and lighter colored dip is gotten than would be possible under the American plan, and the material thus collected corresponds always to the virgin dip; it is very free from bark and makes an exceedingly high grade rosin. Under this arrangement there is very little scrape, the surface backed that season being all that has scrape on it. The increased production in France by use of the cup method amounted to four pounds of spirits of turpentine and seven pounds of rosin from every 100 pounds of crude turpentine, and besides there were no chips or trash of any kind in the crude material. The spirits of turpentine manufactured is of a better grade than that made from crude turpentine collected by the old method, being distilled at a lower temperature and with less heat, and all of the rosin, except a small proportion made from the scrape, is of a high grade.

The value of a barrel of the crude turpentine collected by the cups is about one-fourth greater than that collected by the former system. By the cup method there is also a large saving in labor, both in scraping and dipping, and there is no loss of turpentine in dipping from a box to a bucket.

RESULTS OF EXPERIMENTS WITH THE FRENCH SYSTEM IN NORTH CAROLINA.

During the season of 1894 a trial on a limited scale was made to test the merits of the French system and to ascertain by its direct application to the long-leaf pine the exact increase of turpentine collected by it above that yielded by the American practice.

In order to reduce to a minimum the chance of errors it was decided to conduct the experiments at three separate stations under direction of different persons. At two of these stations the turpentine was to be gotten from second-year boxes and at the third

station it was intended to begin a trial with first-year or virgin boxes and continue the work here for several consecutive years to ascertain the comparative annual yield.

Unfortunately in one set of the experiments with second-year boxes the value of the results was vitiated by reason of a considerable loss of turpentine from the receptacles' overflowing. The results in this case will not be considered. Careful and conscientious attention seems to have been given the third set by the person in charge, and the results seem to be of sufficient importance to be given in full. The superintendence of this work during the season was in charge of Mr. Singletery, of Bladenboro, N. C., and it was near this village that the experiment was conducted.

The pines selected for tapping were in a grove with a medium density (about seven), and had an average circumference, breast high, of six feet nine inches. These were by no means the largest trees in this grove, but were selected on account of their vigor and apparent healthiness. The soil was fair, being a moist sandy loam. The forest floor was poor, being covered with a heavy growth of wire-grass, broom grass and low huckleberries. This strip had not been burnt in several years, and since the locality was isolated. being located in the neck of a small swamp, there was little likelihood that a fire would interfere in any way with the carrying out of the experiment. Boxes, usually two to a tree, had been cut in these trees in the previous spring and the trees "worked" for one season (1893), so that there were faces twenty inches in height on each tree. Those faces were from thirteen to fifteen inches broad. Six of these old boxes, with nearly southerly aspects and with faces unshaded by surrounding shrubs, were chosen as suitable for our purpose. Above each of these old faces two narrower faces (each six inches broad) were begun side by side. This method of placing the narrow faces gave each pair of them nearly the same aspect, and since, so far as could be seen, they were under similar conditions and of the same breadth, the amount of resin which flowed from each should have been the same. Six pairs of these narrow contiguous faces were begun above the broad ones on as many different trees, care being always taken that both narrow faces of any one pair were of the same breadth.

The surface of one narrow face of each pair was continuous with the surface of the face below, which was hacked during 1893, and the turpentine which exuded from the freshly chipped surface of this narrow face was allowed to run down the entire surface of the old face into the box cut at the foot of the tree.

Across the base of the other narrow face, which began at the upper edge of the old face, a metal gutter was driven into the wood. This gutter turned the turpentine into a metal cup which hung on a staple beneath it. Chipping was begun on these Both of these narrow faces were hacked at the faces April 20th. same time and the same number of chips were taken from each face, so that the length of both faces was kept equal. metal receptacles and the boxes were emptied six times during the running season. The turpentine taken from the boxes was such yellow dip as is commonly collected from second-year boxes. grade of the turpentine collected in the metal cups was virgin dip, exceedingly free from bark, leaves and chips. It will be understood, from the fact that each of the narrow faces had a breadth of only six inches, that from the six faces in either set there should have exuded only about as much turpentine as is usually collected from three of the large-size faces, fourteen inches broad.

The net weight of the turpentine collected by all of these boxes was 21 pounds; the net weight of that collected by the cups was 24 pounds and a few ounces; that is, by the use of the cups there was a gain of one-seventh in the weight of the dip collected; or had the faces been as broad as they are usually made there would have been during the summer a gain of one pound to each face. The yield of 7 pounds to a box from these picked trees is about one-fifth more than the average yield, which is only between 5.5 and 6 pounds to a second-year box. However, this is immaterial. What we are after is the percentage of the increased yield collected in the metal cups above that of the boxes. This increase was about 15 per cent. in favor of the cups. The application of this to a crop of turpentine would mean considerable aggregate gain and would show more clearly how large the gain really is.

Working out the increased yield on this basis, i. e., one pound

to each box, there would be a gain of 10,000 pounds of dip to a crop of 10,000 boxes, or a gain of 35.8 barrels of dip above the 250 barrels which 10,000 boxes would have produced had each box yielded 7 pounds; or there would be gotten, instead of the 250 barrels of yellow dip from the boxes, 285.8 barrels of virgin dip by use of the cups. The difference in the amount of scrape yielded by the two systems was not near so large as the difference in the amount of dip. This difference, of course, was in favor of the boxes and amounted to less than two pounds from all six of the boxes. This loss of a pound or more was due to the loss of volatile oil by evaporation and loss of scrape which hardened on the old faces. This difference in favor of the boxes would amount in a crop to nearly 23.5 barrels of scrape.

The advantage in favor of the cups, however, lays not only in the increased yield in pounds of turpentine, but also in the higher grade of product obtained by the cups. The value of the entire yield of a crop of 10,000 boxes as determined above would amount, at present prices, to about one-fifth more if collected by the cup than if collected in the boxes. This difference in value would be distributed as follows:

There is an increase in value amounting to \$84, or over 20 per cent. gain, even when the cups are substituted in the place of second-year boxes, and the rate of increase in value of products becomes larger each succeeding year.

As in the other experiment both cups and boxes were tried on first-year faces, of the same length, no difference is expected in the result in favor of either system. It was intended, when this experiment was begun, to move the cups, at the middle of the season, up to the top of the face which had at that time been chipped. This should have yielded, in the cups, a slightly larger amount of dip turpentine than was collected in the boxes, and the grade of

that in the cups should have been higher, since the dip turpentine collected from first-year boxes is usually classed as yellow dip for the last dippings of the season.

It is expected that these experiments will be continued next season (1895) on a larger and even commercial scale to make a further test of their adaptability. This will include a test of the cheapest and most serviceable collecting cups, the best breadth to make the faces, and a trial of different materials for making gutters to ascertain their durability and strength. The use of materials with minimum cost and maximum utility will of course determine the commercial practicability of the system and it is these subjects which it is hoped will be thoroughly investigated during the next year.

The incomplete results from another experimental trial, in which the cups, on first-year faces, were, at the middle of the season, moved up so as to be at the top of the face which had so far been cut, show a gain in the number of pounds of dip collected even larger than that obtained in the preceding trial. As no scrape was collected in this trial, from a misunderstanding with the person in charge, the weight of the scrape cannot be included. It can be said, however, that there was a large difference in the amount of scrape on the two sets of faces, much the larger amount of scrape having settled on the faces with boxes.

There were twelve faces in each set, the arrangements being similar to those stated in the above experiment, except that these faces were broader—from 7 to 7½ inches—and instead of the faces being cut in pairs, one of each kind, they were placed two on each tree without regard to their aspect. The net weight of the turpentine collected from the twelve boxes was 50½ pounds, and the weight of that collected from the cups was 59 pounds, which gives a net yield in favor of the cups of 8½ pounds, or a gain of over 16 per cent. No difference in the grades was noticed in the turpentine, both being classed as virgin dip.

COST OF ADOPTING THE FRENCH SYSTEM.

The cost of the change from the old French method to the modern Hugues system was stated by Desnoyers (chief forest guard of the national forests of France) to be about one cent a year for each To change from the American to the Hugues system it would cost that much, for the cutting and cornering of the boxes, wing two boxes to a tree and 1.4 cents for the cost of each box, unts to nearly three cents for each tree the first year; and by American practice one-fourth of the total yield of turpentine six years is obtained during the first year. In the French ards, on the other hand, the yield is very nearly the same for year. The cups, which are made of glazed earthenware, have ble near the upper rim which can be slipped over a hook or le driven in the tree. Thick galvanized iron makes better ers than zinc, as the former stands driving better and is much injured by atmospheric influences. It is cut in strips four less long and one and one-half inches wide, one of the longer s being cut obliquely to the surface so that it can be easily driven the sap-wood of the pine.

he above-mentioned facts concerning the tapping of the pine rance are taken from Samano's Treatise on the Culture of the itime Pine; Desnoyers' Tapping of the Maritime Pine; Prof. L. pe's Forestry, and The Naval Store Industry in the Report of the of the Division of Forestry in the U.S. Department of Agriure for 1892. This last mentioned publication has a very clear concise account of the different methods of tapping, with the antages and disadvantages of the different systems, and is well strated. It can probably be obtained free of charge by any one ring to know more of the merits of the Hugues system and the lition of the naval store industry in other parts of the United es and in foreign countries.

CHAPTER IV.

THE LUMBER INDUSTRY IN EASTERN NORTH CAROLINA.

HISTORICAL SKETCH.

Until within the past two decades the production of lumber in eastern North Carolina, except for local use, had been small, owing to the great distance from general markets and the limited demand for the hard pines. Wilmington, as early as the middle of the last century, had considerable trade in long-leaf pine lumber with the West Indies and England, and this trade continued in a limited way until the first part of the present century, when with the use of steam in sawing the output was largely increased. Mr. James Sprunt, in his "Information Concerning Wilmington, N. C.," says that the first steam saw-mill established in Wilmington was erected on the western side of the Cape Fear river by a person named Mazerretti in the year 1818.

For a great many years after this Wilmington had a large and growing trade in lumber with the West Indies, but of late years the competition of Savannah, Mobile and Pensacola, which are much nearer to these islands, has prevented any farther expansion of the industry in that direction. Wilmington has always had a large trade in lumber with the Middle and New England States, where the long-leaf pine has been largely used in ship-building, etc.

In the last few years, owing to the increased demand for Southern hard pine, the number and capacity of the mills at Wilmington have been more than doubled. The logs for supplying this demand come from the counties along the Cape Fear, Black and North East rivers and their tributaries, along which lie well-timbered cypress, long-leaf pine and loblolly pine lands. The territory drained by these streams is about 5,000 square miles, over one-fourth of which area is timbered with long-leaf pine that can be floated to Wilmington.

As early as 1830 both Newbern and Washington had large trades in long-leaf pine lumber with foreign ports, mostly in the West Indies. By 1860, however, owing to the exhaustion of the long-leaf pine in these sections, their trade had ceased, and since that time these points have become centers for the production of lob-lolly pine lumber.

LOBLOLLY PINE IN THE TIMBER MARKET.—As the supply of long-leaf pine became exhausted north of the Neuse river other pines were used in its place, the short-leaf pine being the next used and then the loblolly. In many sections these latter have always been the only pines available for building materials.

It is only within the past thirty years, however, that the loblolly pine has entered the general market in the form of lumber, being debarred, previous to that time, because of the fact that so large a proportion of it is sap wood. If used where exposed to the weather it decayed rapidly, and when used for interior work had to be painted, since it "blued" badly. The introduction of dry kilns, which enabled the sap to be thoroughly driven from the timber and the wood perfectly dried, has given it a wide range of uses. Now there is a steady demand for it, as it is extensively used for flooring, ceiling and other interior wood-work, and also for exterior work, for which latter use it is suitable only when thoroughly dried and painted. In the Northeastern States it is being used as a substitute for white pine and spruce, and as the better grades of these become scarcer and consequently more valuable the demand there for loblolly pine lumber increases and the uses to which it is put become more varied.

Since this is the chief timber tree over a large part of the State, it has been used for many years, in the section where it is the only pine, for building and fencing material. For these domestic uses only the largest stocks, and those with the most heart, were selected. For the manufacture of kiln-dried flooring and ceiling, however, those trees are preferred which have the least heart, since the sap wood furnishes a lumber more uniform in quality and color than the heart. Lumber made from the sap wood is also lighter than that from heart wood and the cost of transportation is less. It is marked in the New England and Middle States where it is sold under the name of "North Carolina pine," "North Carolina sap pine," or "North Carolina kiln-dried pine."

There has been a considerable increase in the value of loblolly pine stumpage since it has entered the general lumber market. Twenty years ago loblolly lands ranged in value from 50 cents to \$1 per acre, according to situation in relation to transportation facilities and density of growth. Land similarly situated and timbered now sells from \$1 to \$5 an acre. Original growth loblolly lands will cut from 3,500 to 6,000 feet, board measure, to the acre; second growth from a third to a half less.

STATISTICS OF THE LUMBER INDUSTRY.

The statistics for this report on the saw-mill and forest industries of eastern North Carolina were collected in connection with an investigation of the timber lands of this section, which has just been completed. It is intended more to show the condition of the various branches of the lumber and allied industries, in respect to output and supply, than to give a general treatment of the different departments of the aggregated interests. In this connection there are but imperfect statistics for comparison, these being chiefly estimates prepared for lumber journals.

The area treated of embraces forty-three counties, which constitute the original "long-leaf pine belt" of North Carolina and to which, according to the U. S. Census of 1880, four-fifths of the milling interests of the State were at that time confined. In this enumeration are contained the products of all saw-mills and planing-mills, whether operated in connection with saw-mills or as distinct establishments, excepting entirely local planing-mills and door, sash and blind factories connected with these or distinct. There are in this section ten such local planing-mills and blind factories, which have an output with an estimated value of between \$100,000 and \$250,000 per annum. In spite of the fact that the latter half of the year 1893 was an era of business depression, and consequently there was a curtailed output, there is a marked increase shown in the value of the output of 1893 over that of both 1890 and 1880, according to the census reports for those years.

The value of rough and remanufactured lumber, including shingles, produced in this "long-leaf pine belt" of North Carolina

or the year ending December 31, 1893, was about \$4,559,000. For the census year 1880 it was \$1,340,000, and for the census year 1890 it was, for the entire *State*, \$5,767,687.

The output for 1893 came from 323 lumber-mills, including shingle-mills, with an aggregate capital of \$4,690,000. The capital reported by the census, for the entire State, in 1890 was \$5,319,500, invested in 688 establishments.

The capital engaged respectively in the manufacture of shingles and board cannot be separated, since the manufacture of shingles is largely engaged in by mills producing other lumber products. The number of mills engaged in the manufacture of lumber was 281, with an output in 1893 of 455,865,000 feet, board measure, valued at about \$3,745,000. The number of shingle-mills was 65 (42 exclusively shingle-mills), with an output of 166,180,000 shingles, valued at about \$813,280.

OUTPUT OF LUMBER AND SHINGLES.

The output of lumber and shingles and the capacity of the lumber and shingle-mills in operation in each county for the year ending December 31, 1893, was as follows:

Output of Lumber and Shingles, Eastern North Carolina, 1893.

| | ents. | LUM | BER. | Shine | GLES. |
|------------------|--------------------------|--|--|---|---|
| Counties. | Number of Establishme | Output in 1893, in feet, board measure. | Yearly capacity in 1893, in feet, board measure. | Output in in 1893. | Yearly capacity in shingles, 1893. |
| Bladen | 5 | 2,800,000 | 5,400,000 | 3,500,000 | 5,000,000 |
| Bertie | , 7 | 1,940,000 | 5,000,000 | 3,000,000 | 5,000,000 |
| Beaufort | 13 | 28,350,000 | 35,000,000 | 4,000,000 | 6,000,000 |
| Brunswick | 3 | *2,000,000 | 3,500,000 | | |
| Camden | 5 | 4,500,000 | 6,000,000 | 1,300,000 | 4,000,000 |
| Carteret | 3 | 6,700,000 | 8,000,000 | | |
| Chowan | | 24,400,000 | 30,000,000 | 3,000,000 | 4,500,000 |
| Craven | 16 | 46,700,000 | 53,500,000 | 12,300,000 | 15,800,000 |
| Columbus | | 13,400,000 | 24,000,000 | 15,100,000 | 25,000,000 |
| Cumberland | 10 | 10,500,000 | 18,000,000 | | |
| †Currituck | `··· <u>·</u> ·· | YO 000 | | 4 000 000 | 10.000.000 |
| Dare | 5 | *2,000,000 | 4,005,000 | 6,000,000 | 10,000,000 |
| Duplin | 6 | 1,800,000 | 3,000,000 | 1 500 000 | 0.700.000 |
| Edgecombe | | *2,850,000 | 4,000,000 | 1,500,000 | 3,500,000 |
| Gates | | 2,700,000 | 4,500,000 | 780,000 | 1,600,000 |
| Green | | 2,300,000 | 5,000,000 | 1,500,000 | 2,200,000 |
| Halifax | 5 | *8,000,000 | 14,000,000 | i · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | |
| Harnett | | 6,800,000 | 8,500,000 | 9 500 000 | 1 500 000 |
| Hertford Hyde | 5 | 3,800,000 | 10,000,000 | 2,500,000 3,000,000 | 4,500,000 |
| Johnston | 7 | 6,900,000 | 10,000,000 | 3,000,000 | 4,000,000 |
| Jones | 5 | *7,600,000 | 13,000,000 3,000,000 | 3,700,000 | 2,000,000 |
| Lenoir | 13 | 2,200,000 ± 20,300,000 | 25,000,000 | 8,200,000 | 13,000,000 |
| Martin | 10 | 19,500,000 | 30,000,000 | 15,000,000 | 19,000,000 |
| Montgomery | 3 | 2,300,000 | 3,000,000 | 10,000,000 | 117,000,000 |
| Moore | 30 | 32,320,000 | 49,000,000 | 1,900,000 | 4,700,000 |
| ž Nash | 6 | 3,550,000 | 4,800,000 | 1,000,000 | 4,700,000 |
| New Hanover | $ \mathbf{s} $ | 36,000,000 | 48,000,000 | 1,500,000 | 1,500,000 |
| Northampton | 5 | *5,800,000 | 8,000,000 | 1,000,000 | 1,700,000 |
| Onslow | 3 | 14,500,000 | 16,000,000 | | 3,000,000 |
| Pamlico | 7 | 11,700,000 | 15,800,000 | | 800,000 |
| Pasquotank | 13 | 22,500,000 | 30,000,000 | 19,500,000 | 23,000,000 |
| Perquimans | 6 | 4,900,000 | 7,000,000 | 3,000,000 | 3,900,000 |
| Pitt | 10 | 7,000,000 | 10,000,000 | 3,000,000 | 4,500,000 |
| Pender | 5 | 900,000 | 1,500,000 | 3,300,000 | 4,800,000 |
| Robeson | 12 | 14,700,000 | 18,300,000 | 4,000,000 | 7,000,000 |
| Richmond | 12 | 12,000,000 | 17,500,000 | 1,700,000 | 3,300,000 |
| Sampson | | 1,670,000 | 3,800,000 | 400,000 | 950,000 |
| Tyrrell | 3 | 4,500,000 | 6,000,000 | 7,000,000 | 9,000,000 |
| Washington | 6 | 34,500,000 | 40,000,000 | 27,200,000 | 32,000,000 |
| Wake | 9 | 6,000,000 | 10,000,000 | 2,000,000 | 2,800,000 |
| Wayne | 6 | 8,600,000 | 10,000,000 | 300,000 | 1,800,000 |
| Wilson | 3 | 1,500,000 | 2,800,000 | | |
| Totals | 323 | 452,880,000 | 625,000,000 | 159,180,000 | 208,150,000 |

The figures show the quantity of lumber manufactured in each county rather than the amount cut in each. In some cases logs were carried to large mills from several adjoining counties, and are here credited to counties where sawn.

^{*}Partly estimates made by lumbermen. \dagger No reports made. \ddagger Mills destroyed before the end of the year. \lessapprox Reports incomplete.

The output is at least one-tenth less than it would have been ter normal trade conditions, since 107 mills, with an output of ,000,000 feet, board measure, reported an average idleness of en weeks. Many mills also that did not shut down consider-v reduced their output during a part of the year. The unpreceted freeze during the month of January, 1893, caused many is dependent upon the water-courses for their supply or operator to shut down for several weeks. The output would otherwise been over 500,000,000 feet.

n the preceding statement the output for the respective counties s not necessarily mean that the timber was produced in them, merely that it was manufactured in these counties. Camden, owan and Perquimans counties now produce but a small protion of the timber manufactured in them; it comes from Bertie, the Chowan river, and the counties lying on the southern side Albemarle sound.

The proportion of timber produced by individual counties is re-nearly represented by a subsequent table showing the amounts timber and timbered lands held by logging and milling comies in each county, though there are given no actual figures of production of timber by counties. There are only a few towns he State which have a large annual output, the mills in genloing scattered through the timbered districts.

'he relative rank, capital invested, yearly capacity, output and ue of output of the three producing points, for 1893, were as ows:

ital, Output, etc., at Different Lumber Markets in Eastern North Carolina, 1893.

| Ran | % | | ure. | | I |
|---------|----------|------------|------------|------------|------------|
| mington | 8 | \$530,000* | 36,000,000 | 48,000,000 | \$425,000† |
| | 9 | 385,000 | 38,000,000 | 51,000,000 | 350,000 |
| | 7 | 165,000 | 21,000,000 | 27,000,000 | 188,000 |

ot full, partly based on a bulletin of the U. S. Census of 1890. Intly taken from the custom-house records of Wilmington. cludes James City, a village on the opposite side of the Trent river.

The apparent disproportion between capital and value of output in the various statements is due to the different extent to which remanufacturing is carried at different places. Wilmington, too, largely increased during 1893 the capital engaged there in milling, but not sufficiently early in the year to increase the output in like The output of no shingle-mills or remanufacturing establishments except such as are connected with lumber-mills is included Elizabeth City and Edenton, with twelve mills, had in the above. a combined output of 38,000,000 feet, board measure, and 21,000,000 The shingles made in these places were largely from juniper or white cedar; the lumber was chiefly made from the loblolly pine. All except a small part of the output of Wilmington was from long-leaf pine, that of Newbern and Washington was largely loblolly pine, less than five per cent. being long-leaf. Aberdeen district in Moore county, and the western part of Cumberland county produced in 1893 over 31,000,000 feet of long-leaf pine.

LUMBER PRODUCT FROM DIFFERENT SPECIES OF TREES.

The output in eastern North Carolina, 1893, of lumber and shingles was distributed according to kind of tree as follows:

| KIND OF TIMBER. | Lumber, thou- sand feet, board measure. | Shingles. |
|--|---|---|
| Loblolly pine* Long-leaf pine Cypress Juniper (white cedar) Ash Yellow poplar† | 148,600 6,275 6,300 5,000 | 10,300,000 111,680,000 44,200,000 |

Lumber Product from Different Kinds of Trees, 1893.

^{*}The savanna and short-leaf pine were sawn along with the loblolly and not distinguished from it, so there was no way of getting any accurate information about the quantity of these that was sawn. The savanna pine formed a large part of the material sawn at some mills in the extreme east, but there was no appreciable amount of short-leaf pine sawn except along the western boundary of the pine belt. Loblolly pine was reported as being sawn in thirty-three counties, and in twenty of these no long-leaf pine was sawn. Long-leaf pine was sawn in twenty-one counties and entirely sawn to the exclusion of the loblolly pine in six counties. The counties which produced the most loblolly pine were Beaufort, Bertie, Columbus, Craven, Dare, Gates, Halifax, Hertford, Jones, Lenoir, Martin, Onslow, Perquimans and Washington. Those which produced the most long-leaf pine were Cumberland, Moore, Richmond, Sampson and Robeson counties.

[†]Including small quantities of persimmon, sweet-gum, oak and dogwood.

Of the above amounts of lumber sawn there were 138,420,000 eet remanufactured at the mills, of which 101,420,000 feet were of oblolly pine and 37,000,000 feet were long-leaf pine. Besides this t is estimated that there were 45,000,000 feet of both kinds remanuactured at separate establishments in Moore, Richmond and Perquimans counties.

The amount of lumber used locally, including that shipped to other points in North Carolina, was 79,200,000 feet, of which 52,000,000 feet was long-leaf pine lumber. It seems that long-leaf pine lumber is much more widely used in the State than that made rom the loblolly pine. This is because the long-leaf pine timber asts so much longer than that of other pines when used in exposed ituations, as is generally the case in this State. Most of the lob-olly pine used in North Carolina is sawn in the counties where it is used. What is exported goes to the Northeastern States, about the same amount going by rail as by water. The long-leaf pine lumber, except that from Wilmington, goes to Virginia, Pennsylvania, and other interior States. That from Wilmington goes to coastwise ports and to the West Indies.

LUMBER SHIPMENTS FROM WILMINGTON.

The total shipments of lumber, the foreign exports and the value of the latter, from Wilmington for the years 1873, 1883 and each rear of the past decade were as follows:

| Quantity and | Value of | Lumber | Shipped 1 | from Wilmington | ı. 1873-'93. |
|--------------|----------|--------|-----------|-----------------|--------------|
|--------------|----------|--------|-----------|-----------------|--------------|

| YEAR. | lumber, | †Total foreign exports of lumber, feet, b. m. | foreign exports of | YEAR. | ments of lumber, | †Total foreign exports of lumber, feet, b. m. | exports of |
|-------|------------|---|-----------------------|-------|---------------------|---|------------|
| 1873 | 19,517,768 | 6,920,171 | \$ | 1888 | 41,067,686 | 13,019,000 | \$190,681 |
| 1883 | 40,281,158 | 9,074,077 | | 1889 | 36,679,509 | 10,695,000 | 172,487 |
| 1884 | 37,076,042 | 15,319,000 | 232,537 | 1890 | 40,289,205 | 13,824,000 | 212,094 |
| 1885 | 35,956,829 | 14.912,000 | 238,983 | 1891 | 40,065,567 | 17,532,000 | 287,448 |
| 1886 | 39,512,249 | 9,053,000 | 145,968 | 1892 | 29,580,160 | | 174,446 |
| 1887 | | 11,190,000 | ; 174,121 I | 1893 | | 13,244,000 | |

[•]From the records of the Wilmington Board of Trade. For the compilation of these figures and there obtained from these records the Survey is indebted to Col. J. L. Cantwell, Secretary of the Vilmington Board of Trade. These figures indicate the number of feet in board measure. †From the custom-house records.

PRODUCTION AND EXPORT OF SHINGLES.

The greater part of the sawn cypress shingles, and all of the first-class white cedar (juniper) shingles manufactured in the State, have been exported. The greater part of the pine shingles have been used locally. Wilmington was the only point in the State that has shipped any shingles to foreign ports. It also had a large domestic trade. The total exports of shingles from Wilmington, the foreign exports, and the value of the foreign exports for the years 1873, 1883, and each year of the past decade are shown by the following table:

Quantity and Value of Shingles Exported from Wilmington, 1873-'93.

| YEAR. | Total Exports. | Domestic Exports. | Foreign Exports. | Value of For eign Exports |
|-------|----------------|-------------------|------------------|------------------------------|
| 1873 | 6,338,836 | 3,960,580 | 2,378,256 | \$ |
| 1883 | 6,635,851 | 4,748,951 | 1,886,900 | |
| 1884 | 10,140,707 | 6,510,707 | 3,630,000 | 18,936 |
| 1885 | 7,191,335 | 3,894,335 | 3,297,000 | 18,936 |
| 1886 | 9,265,560 | 7,677,560 | 1,589,000 | 8,749 |
| 1887 | 5,726,453 | 3,499,453 | 2,227,000 | 11,750 |
| 1888 | 6,663,950 | 2,622,950 | 4,041,000 | 21,125 |
| 1889 | 7,316,912 | 3,593,912 | 3,723,000 | 17,946 |
| 1890 | 8,935,064 | 5,305,064 | 3,630,000 | 19,249 |
| 1891 | 5,958,520 | 3,732,520 | 2,226,000 | 12,930 |
| 1892 | 10,274,329 | 7,358,329 | 2,916,000 | 15,519 |
| 1893 | 18,167,500 | 6,314,500 | 1,853,000 | 9,806 |

Much the larger part of the shingles shipped from Wilmington are hand-drawn or rived cypress shingles. These are made entirely in the surrounding counties, especially those along the Cape Fear river. The making of drawn shingles, both from cypress and long-leaf pine, is an industry that has rapidly declined during the past decade. Estimates given by shingle dealers at Wilmington, Newbern and Washington, and smaller places along the seaboard, show a falling off in the production of one-half or more since 1880. This falling off is largely due to the fact that the supply of the best quality of cypress which could be easily reached in the swamps has been in a measure exhausted. The number of rived pine and cypress shingles estimated to have been made last year (1893) was 22,800,000, valued at about \$55,000.

CAPITAL INVESTED IN THE LUMBER INDUSTRY.

The capital reported as invested in milling was \$4,690,000. This was engaged as follows: In milling plants, stock and live assets, \$3,471,100; in timber lands, \$817,432; in railroads and rolling stock, \$408,800. Seventy-four establishments reported that they owned or controlled 630,700 acres of timbered land. Of this 298,700 acres were loblolly pine lands, 219,200 acres were white cedar (juniper) swamp, 89,800 acres cypress and gum swamps, and 24,000 acres long-leaf pine lands. About 300,000 acres of this, including the cypress and white cedar land, is owned, and the rest is controlled for a limited number of years.

The registers of deeds of ten counties reported \$158,934 invested in timber lands in their respective counties, by logging or milling companies of other States. This represented 114,995 acres of land. The swamp land amounted to 51,230 acres and the loblolly pine lands to 63,765 acres. In this connection was also reported 20,000,000 feet of standing loblolly pine, valued at \$22,000. This was situated in Gates, Hertford and other north-eastern counties. Bulletin No. 5 of the U. S. Census of 1890 reported 111,418 acres of yellow pine and cypress land, with an estimated total product of 953,770,000 feet, board measure, of merchantable timber, and a value of \$346,885, to be owned in North Carolina by milling establishments located in Michigan and Wisconsin.

The \$408,800 invested in railroads and rolling stock represents eighteen roads, with 194 miles of track and their necessary equipment. Besides this there are eight railroads exclusively or largely engaged in handling lumber and timber, which had 96 miles of track, and were taxed in 1893 on a valuation of \$256,300.

The capital reported as invested by millmen in lumbering does not by any means represent the total amount of capital engaged directly or indirectly in milling. Forty-two establishments reported 171,800,000 feet, board measure, of their logs as having been brought to the mills by outside capital. This is 31 per cent. of all the logs brought to the mills. The number of persons engaged in handling this timber, taking them to be 45 per cent. of those engaged in logging, in the employment of the mills, was 1,300.

This, with the total number reported as employed by milling companies in logging, makes 2,800 engaged in this branch of the industry. The total number of hands reported as employed in the entire industry, in handling the material from the stump to the finished product, was 8,320.

The rafting of timber to the mills is done by farm laborers during the dull seasons of the year. The price paid at the mills for this timber is from \$3.75 to \$5 a thousand feet, board measure, for loblolly pine, and from \$3 to \$6 for cypress and ash, according to the quality of the timber and situation of the mill. Long-leaf pine brings the same prices as loblolly pine.

THE PRODUCTION OF LUMBER IN NORTH CAROLINA IN 1893.

EXPORTS OF CRUDE LUMBER.—There were operating in North Carolina in 1893 three timber companies, with a capital of \$40,000, reported as engaged in logging for establishments in other States. During the year 1893 there were exported by these and other logging and milling companies logs amounting to about 110,000,000 feet, board measure, to establishments in other States. This amount exported was nearly one-fourth the entire amount manufactured in the State. It consisted mostly of loblolly pine, with some cypress, and had an estimated value in raft in this State of \$500,-000. It went out by way of the Chowan river, and through the Dismal swamp canals and partly by rail. This timber was manufactured chiefly at Franklin, Whaleyville, Suffolk and in the vicinity of Norfolk, Va. Besides this there was exported 9,800 cords of white cedar billets, valued at \$62,000, chiefly to Philadelphia, Richmond and Norfolk. This, however, cannot begin to represent the total amount shipped, since the white cedar was shipped in small amounts from a great many different places, so that but little knowledge could be gained from these sources about the amounts shipped and their value.

RECENT GROWTH OF THE LUMBER INDUSTRY.—An endeavor was made to ascertain the increase of capital invested in milling and the increase in output since 1890, and also to find the amount of increase during 1893. While the number of new plants erected since 1890 was gotten, the capital invested in those that had stopped run-

ning or indefinitely suspended, and their annual output, could not be accurately ascertained. The following table represents, however, very nearly the increase since 1890 in capital, annual shingle and board capacity for mills sawing long-leaf and loblolly pine and cypress lumber:

Increase Since 1890 in Capital and Productive Capacity of Lumber Mills.

| i | New Establishments. | Capital Invested. | Board Capacity, in feet. | Capacity in Shingles. |
|---------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| Loblolly pine and Cypress | 18 14 | \$1,011,300 73,000 | 85,000,000 28,000,000 | 38,000,000 2,000,000 |
| Totals | 32 | \$1,084,300 | 113,000,000 | 40,000,000 |

It was also ascertained that in this same time about twenty plants, with an annual output of 25,000,000 feet, had ceased running. The above increase in loblolly pine mills lay largely in Washington, Onslow, Martin, Lenoir, Halifax, Craven, Columbus and New Hanover counties, and in long-leaf mills in Moore, Nash and Cumberland counties.

The total increase in capital for the year 1893 was \$392,000, and in yearly capacity was 46,000,000 feet.

There was besides this an increase for 1893 of twenty miles of logging railroad, valued, with the rolling stock, at \$80,000.

MISCELLANEOUS WOOD-WORKING INDUSTRIES.

There are several minor industries in eastern North Carolina which are largely or entirely dependent upon timber for their products and which annually consume large amounts of timber or wood.

One of the most important of these industries is that engaged in the manufacture of cooperage. The stock establishments engaged in the manufacture of cooperage in North Carolina during 1893 are situated chiefly in the eastern part of the State, and included three barrel factories making truck barrels and boxes, with an output of 53,000 barrels and 1,790,000 staves, valued at \$22,000; two bucket factories using white cedar; and a great number of

small cooperage concerns engaged in making casks for spirits turpentine from oak, and barrels for rosin and crude turpentine from pine. The barrels for truck were made partly from pine "slabs." with wire hoops, and partly from black-gum staves with cypress hoops and yellow poplar heads.

Besides this there was a large amount of cooperage material, staves, headings and hoops, manufactured in Washington, Dare and other north-eastern counties from cypress and white cedar. The census for the year 1890 reports that there were that year eighty-three establishments manufacturing cooperage in North Carolina, with a capital of \$34,542 and an output valued at \$111,925.

There are a number of special manufactories in the State, including veneer works, spoke and handle factories, etc., using nothing but wood in the manufacture of their products, or largely dependent on wood. The character and extent of these manufacturing establishments and the practicability of increase in the State will be made the subject of a special Bulletin to be published by the Survey at an early date.

PRODUCTION OF TIMBER OTHER THAN MILL TIMBER.

"Ton Timber."—The forests of eastern North Carolina once furnished a large quantity of very valuble pine stocks of exceptionally large size and superior quality, under the name of "ton timber," which were used in naval architecture, and for other purposes requiring extra large strong timbers. These stocks came from both the loblolly and long-leaf pines, the former furnishing the longest and largest pieces. The finest trees for these uses have been removed wherever accessible, and though some of these stocks are still gotten out each year their size is not so large and their quality is not so high as formerly.

During recent years the largest of these stocks have come from up the Cape Fear river, being that growth of loblolly known as rosemary pine. They are procured here and there, only a few at a place, in separate localities, by a number of contractors, so that reliable information as to the amount of production could not be obtained. However, at least 20,000 feet, scale measure, were

exported last year to coastwise and to European ports. A larger quantity of this timber was shipped from Wilmington than from any other point.

RAILROAD TIES.—One of the most constant demands for the best heart pine and young white and post oaks is for making railroad cross-ties. The eastern part of this State not only furnishes all the timber required for the construction and maintenance of its own lines of railroads, but annually exports several thousand crossties to other States. There are about 400,000 cross-ties required yearly to maintain the existing lines of railroad. Of these 400,000 ties about one-half are all-heart long-leaf pine, and average about 7½ feet long by 9 inches broad and 6 inches thick, each containing about 3 cubic feet of wood. The oak ties are larger, especially broader, and are being used more than formerly. There are some cypress and a few white cedar ties in use, and on some roads loblolly pine ties are used. The average price paid for hewn ties is about 22 cents each. As near as could be ascertained there were 22,000 white cedar and cypress, and 30,000 pine ties, exported during the year 1893.

Telegraph Poles, etc.—These are cut from both cypress and white cedar woods. About 7,000 poles are annually required for use in this State, and besides this about 12,000 white cedar telegraph and electric light poles, valued at about \$27,000, were shipped during 1893. The requirements for such white cedar poles usually are that they shall have few knots in them, and very few are cut under 14 inches in diameter at the larger end, so that the finest stocks are required to make them. It would be advisable for more care to be taken of juniper "bays" and swamps after they have been lumbered. Their soil is generally too peaty to be used for agricultural purposes, so that the only real use to which these lands can be put is to let grow on them the young white cedar left after they are cut over. Precaution should be taken to prevent these swamps from being burnt over, during dry seasons, as the forest fires not only destroy the young growth of white cedar, but also burn the thin layer of organic matter, consisting of sphagnum, peat and buried cedar logs, clear down to the sand subsoil, and thus destroy the possibility of a future supply of this timber.

THE PRODUCTION OF OAK STAVES.—From 1840 until 1880 there were annually made in the north-eastern counties many thousand white and red oak staves. During the last fifteen years, however, this industry has declined to a very small part of what it once was. Staves were very largely shipped from Beaufort county to the West Indies, prior to 1860. "Red oak staves" made from black, scarlet, water and spanish oaks were preferred for this trade; while for the European trade, which went by way of Norfolk, New York or Baltimore, "white oak staves" were preferred. The latter were made from white oak, post oak and overcup oak. Between 1868 and 1880 the counties around Albemarle sound produced large numbers of staves, but the practical exhaustion of the best accessible oak has largely reduced their output. Nash county now produces a considerable number of oak staves, and this is the only county in the eastern section of the State that does. Further west, however, large quantities of such staves are made in the upland oak forests which extend through the middle and western parts of the State to Tennessee.

AGGREGATE VALUE OF THE FOREST PRODUCTS OF EASTERN NORTH CAROLINA.

The values of all the timber and lumber products of eastern North Carolina for 1893 may be said to have been as follows:

| Value | of | lumber, including sawn shingles | \$4,558,280 |
|-------|-----|--|-------------|
| " | " | round timber exported | . 562,000 |
| 4.6 | " | "tun" and hewn timber exported | . 12,000 |
| " | | railroad ties produced | |
| " | 4 4 | telegraph and electric light poles | . 27,000 |
| " | | hand-made shingles | |
| " | | products of special manufactories (U. S. Census, 1890) | |
| " | | cooperage products (U. S. Census, 1890) | . 111,925 |

To this amount can be added the value of all resinous products, which amounted, in 1893, to \$1,752,760; and we have as the approximate market value of the forest products for eastern North Carolina in 1893, \$7,320,020. This does not show the real total value of the forest products of this section, since practically all the

fencing material is wood, and over nine-tenths of the fences are made from rails manufactured on the farms and not included in the above amounts. Neither is there included in the above any of the fire-wood, which constitutes nearly all of the fuel used in this section, both for manufacturing and domestic purposes. The value of the fencing cut up, and the cord wood in piles, would amount to considerably over \$4,500,000 a year, for the quantity of both consumed in eastern North Carolina, and this added to the value of the other products, makes an aggregate value of about \$12,000,000 for the forest products of this section, for one year. This makes the forest industry one of the largest in the State. The cotton crop of the entire State had in 1890 a value about equal to this amount.

RECENT TIMBER DEVELOPMENTS, AND THE OUTLOOK.

The tendency of the lumber industry in North Carolina is towards larger establishments, turning out at the mills as highly finished a product as possible, such as flooring, ceiling, moulding, etc. The wisdom of this course is fully sustained by the fact that there were in these eastern counties, in 1880, 306 establishments, which had an output valued at \$1,340,000; while in 1893 there were only 323 establishments, with an output of \$4,559,000. There are now in operation nine band saws, five of which have been put in since 1890; and the change from circular to band saws is being contemplated by several other establishments, since there is a saving in them, not only of motive power, but also a great saving of timber.

Most large mills which will be built in the future, at least those for sawing loblolly pine, will be furnished with band saws.

The next ten years will probably show a much greater increase in milling than the past decade, and a very much larger development of the loblolly pine and hardwood industry. There are several counties in which the loblolly pine has as yet no commercial value, and in which it is only sawn in small quantities for local use. The fact that the mills using this kind of timber, and owning timber land, reported over 2,000,000,000 feet in sight, insures them sufficient material for many years to come. Besides this, the area still unlumbered and not controlled by lumber men, must have at least twice as much standing timber on it as was reported by

millmen for their lands. This does not include any regrowth which is now occupying areas already lumbered.

USES OF THE IMPORTANT WOODS IN EASTERN NORTH CAROLINA.

The long-leaf pine serves for more uses than any other tree of this section. Its largest uses are for heavy building material for houses, bridges, trestles and other places where great strength and length of timber are required; for tank plank, flooring, ceiling, weather-boarding, shingles, railroad cross-ties, and filing. Its special qualities as a wood are not yet sufficiently understood by consumers, and it is put to a great many uses to which an inferior and weaker timber might as well be applied. Its use as tank plank is one to which it has only lately been extensively put, but one to which it is well adapted on account of its durability. It is extensively used for fencing and posts, and in the form of split rails, throughout all the south-eastern section of this State.

The loblolly pine is manufactured chiefly into flooring and ceiling, and to some extent into scantling for frame work, bridge timber, etc. For the last uses the wood is not so well suited as that of the long-leaf pine, though it is extensively used when the long-leaf cannot be gotten. Railroad cross-ties are made from it in the north-eastern counties, but they decay rapidly, since they are largely or entirely of sap wood, and are in contact with a soil unusually damp during the greater part of the year.

The short-leaf and savanna pines have the same uses as the loblolly, though the wood of both trees is different from that of the loblolly. The loblolly pine is also largely used for fencing.

The yellow poplar is manufactured into boards for box stuff, and some of the best quality of lumber into furniture squares. The poplar of the eastern swamps, however, is of an inferior quality when compared with that from the western part of the State, and can only be put to secondary uses. It makes excellent fencing.

Ash is sawn into furniture squares, banister and newel post pieces, and some of the lower grades of wood into boards. Barrel hoops are extensively made from it. Like the poplar its quality is not as high as the ash from the western counties.

White cedar (juniper) is now recognized as one of the most

valuable woods of the eastern United States, and decidedly the most valuable in the eastern part of North Carolina, where it has a large and constantly increasing number of uses. It is employed for making cooperage ware, pails, tubs, railroad tank plank and boat plank, shingles, sashes, railroad ties, telegraph and telephone poles and for fencing. All of these services to which it is put are based on the property it possesses of withstanding exposure to moisture, or alternate wetting and drying, and its small shrinkage. In this State it is also used in the manufacture of cheap furniture, and is said to be particularly suited for such, being easily worked, shrinking very little, and being light.

Cypress is largely used for shingles, and in other ways in which white cedar is used. Besides, on account of its great size, wide paneling, wainscoting and building material, sashes, blinds, exterior mouldings, and other wood-work exposed to the weather, are made from it. The poorer quality wood, where it is wormeaten and "peggy," is sawn into fence boards.

The uses reported for the other woods were very few, and indeed very little of them is being sawn. Some sweet-gum is sawn into lumber for making furniture, but it warps so badly that it is difficult, even when kiln-dried at once, to get good boards for shipment. A use for which it is well adapted is to make veneer ware, butter and lard dishes, crates, small baskets, etc., and it is being largely employed in such manufactures in the eastern section. For making the veneer, the gum logs are cut to a uniform length, steamed thoroughly to soften the wood, placed in a large turning lathe the chisel of which takes off a thin sheet of wood as broad as the log is long. The chisel is moved automatically nearer to the center of the log with each revolution of the latter to make the sheet taken off of a uniform thickness. These sheets are then cut to size and pressed or bent into the shape desired, and steam-dried to prevent any warping.

The black-gum is being used for making staves and crates for use in trucking, for which uses manufacturers say it is well suited, not being heavy, and about the cheapest material that can be gotten.

Several thousand feet of maple was reported by one company among their products as being sawn for use in finishing the interior of railroad cars.

| | ٠ | • | |
|--|---|---|--|
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | · | |
| | | | |
| | ` | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | • | |
| | | | |

INDEX.

| PAGE. | PAGE. |
|---|--|
| Acreage of loblolly pine41 | Cypress in Pamlico county28 |
| merchantable loblolly | peninsula29 |
| pine41 | Pender county26 |
| Action necessary for forest preserva- | Robeson county35 |
| tion71 | Sampson county37 |
| Andropogon tener43 | lands owned by Michigan mill- |
| virginicus61 | men66 |
| Area considered in report14 | manufactures of112 |
| Aristida stricta43 | merchantable40, 42 |
| Beaufort county | uses of123 |
| Bertie county32, 110 | Dare county29, 110 |
| Big swamp35 | Decrease in naval store products76, 80 |
| Bladen county, 35, 45, 79, 86, 87, 89, 110 | turpentine production80 |
| Boxed pines, fertility of53 | amount of standing pine42 |
| often blown down by the | Density of forests65, 70 |
| wind-storms92 | Destination of naval store exports82 |
| Boxing, American system of94 | Destruction of young pines57 |
| weakens the tree92 | Dismal swamp30 |
| Broom grass43 | Distribution of pines18 |
| Broom grass | Dover swamp27 |
| 89, 110 | Dunes, sand, moving23, 50 |
| Camden county30, 110 | Duplin county25, 50, 79, 86, 87, 89, 90, |
| Carteret county27, 110 | 110 |
| Cashie creek32 | Edgecombe county33, 110 |
| Cedar, red, occurrence of26 | Errata128 |
| white (juniper)114, 123 | Exhaustion of forests66 |
| Census, U. S., statistics from, 65, 66, 76, | turpentine orchards90 |
| 78, 84, 108, 115 | Exports of naval stores from Wilming- |
| Chatham county39 | ton81, 82, 84 |
| Chowan county | lumber from Wilmington, |
| river31 | 113 114 |
| Colonial turpentine products73 | Fires, damage by |
| Columbus county, 25, 49, 79, 87, 89, 110 | produce waste lands51 |
| Contentnea creek | destroy pine seedlings55, 57, 61 |
| Craven county27, 89, 110 | Forest lands of Beaufort county28 |
| Cronly, J. M., information furnished | Bertie county32 |
| by82 | Bladen county35 |
| Crude turpentine (see turpentine). | Brunswick county24 |
| Cumberland county, 36, 47, 79, 86, 87, | Camden county30 |
| Currituck county | Carteret county27 |
| Currituck county30, 110 | Chowan county29 |
| Cypress | Chatham county39 |
| in Bertie county32 | Columbus county25 |
| Bladen county35 | ('raven county27 |
| Brunswick county24 | ('umberland county36 |
| Columbus county25 | Currituck county30 |
| Craven county27 | Dare county29 |
| Dismal swamp30 | Duplin county25 |
| Duplin county25 | Edgecombe county33 |
| Greene county33 | Gates county31 |
| Jones county28 | Greene county 32 |
| Northampton county38 | Halifax county38 |
| Onslow county26 | Harnett county36 |
| • | • |

| PAGE. | PAGE. |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Forest lands of Hertford county31 | Increase of naval store industry76 |
| Hyde county29 | |
| | Johnston county34 |
| Johnston county34 | Jones county27 |
| Jones county27 | Juniper (see cedar)17 |
| Lenoir county34 | Kerr (W. C.). quoted50 |
| Martin county32 | Kidder's (Edward) estimate of stand- |
| Vontromore county 20 | |
| Montgomery county39 | ing pine, 188042 |
| Moore county37 | Laborers employed in naval store in- |
| Nash county39 | dustry78 |
| New Hanover county36 | lumber indus- |
| Northampton county, 38 | try115, 116 |
| Onslow county26 | |
| | Lenoir county34 |
| Pamlico county 28 | Live oak, occurrence of |
| Pamlico peninsula29 | Loblolly pine, cut per acre41 |
| Pasquotank county29 | distribution of20 |
| Pender county25 | entire acreage of41 |
| Perquimans county30 | in each county (see sep- |
| | |
| Pitt county32 | arate counties). |
| Richmond county37 | lumber industry107 |
| Robeson county34 | names of16, 107, 112 |
| Sampson county37 | rapidity of its growth41 |
| Tyrrell county29 | regions23, 31 |
| Wake county39 | stumpage108 |
| | |
| Washington county29 | Long-leaf pine, destruction of55 |
| Wayne county33 | distribution of18 |
| Wilson county33 | enemies of56 |
| products of eastern North Caro- | fires in |
| lina120 | forests, value of 69 |
| value of12, 120 | growth of seedling56 |
| regions22 | lumber industry, his- |
| Forestry, meaning of 63 | tory of106, 112, 117 |
| in Kuronan assertias (4) | |
| in European countries64 | merchantable42 |
| Forests, cost of securing60 | masts61, 62 |
| damages to by fire11, 67, 90 | names16 |
| hogs57 | protection of |
| exhaustion of66 | rate of growth of67 |
| growth of in eastern North | seeding53 |
| ('arolina14 | seedlings55 |
| growth of pine barrens14, 44 | |
| | standing42 |
| investigation of by the Sur- | young growth of61 |
| vey9, 13 | Lumber industry, capital invested in, 115 |
| necessity for59, 64 | history of106 |
| of Washington65 | increase of, 9, 116, 117. |
| young growth of61 | 121 |
| French system of tapping pines 96 | statistics of108 |
| turpentine system, cost of104 | local consumption of113 |
| | |
| experiments | production of in North Caro- |
| with100 | lina116 |
| Gates county31 | shipments of from Wilming- |
| Georgia pine16 | ton11 2 |
| Greene county32 | Lutterlow (Thos.), referred to |
| Gums, black and sweet25, 28, 123 | Martin county |
| Halifax county38 | Masts, frequency of |
| Harnett county36 | Merchantable long-leaf pine |
| | loblelly sing |
| Hertford county31 | loblolly pine |
| Heart pine16 | short-leaf pine — |
| History of naval store industry73 | timber in Eastern North |
| lumber industry106 | Carolina |
| Hogs, pines destroyed by57 | Michigan millmen, southern timber |
| Holly Shelter swamp26 | lands owned by |
| Hyde county | Mills, lumber (see lumber). |

| PAGE. | DACE |
|---|--|
| | PAGE. |
| Milling statistics115 | Rosin, production in North Carolina, 80 |
| Montgomery county39 | United States78 |
| Moore county37 | shipped to Wilmington79 |
| Mud swamps, growth in15 | north direct79 |
| Nash county39 | value of production of80 |
| Navel stores superted from Wilming | |
| Naval stores, exported from Wilming | yield by counties79 |
| ton74 | Round timber, acreage of89 |
| history of industry73 | Sampson county37, 47, 79, 86, 87, 89, |
| statistics of78, 79, 80 | 110 |
| production in North Car- | Savanna pine17 |
| olina84 | distribution of22 |
| | |
| uses of68 | in Carteret county27 |
| values of84 | Craven county27 |
| Neuse river33 | Dismal swamp30 |
| Newbern, naval store industry at76 | Virginia31 |
| lumber industry at111 | merchantable41 |
| New Hanover county36 | Second growth pine, character of70 |
| | |
| Nomenclature of trees16 | value of70 |
| Northampton county38 | Seaboard region23, 24 |
| North Carolina pine17, 107, 117 | Short-leaf pine16 |
| sap pine17 | distribution of21 |
| Pamlico county28 | merchantable41 |
| peninsula29 | |
| | in Chatham county39 |
| Pasquotank county30 | Montgomery county, 39 |
| Pee Dee river37 | Nash county39 |
| Pender county25, 79, 86, 87, 89, 110 | Wake county40 |
| Perquimans county30 | Shingles, exported from Wilmington, 114 |
| Pine16 | manufactures of114 |
| barren region24, 34 | Slash pine21 |
| | Soils of agetom North Carolina 14 |
| barrens34 | Soils of eastern North Carolina14 |
| management of63 | swamp lands15 |
| fires in58 | the sand-hill regions59 |
| lands owned by millmen66, 115 | upland regions43 |
| loblolly (see loblolly pine). | Spirits of turpentine (see turpentine). |
| long-leaf (see long-leaf pine). | Sprunt (James), quoted106 |
| Pinus australis (see long-leaf pine)16 | Standing timber in eastern North Car- |
| | |
| echinata17 | lina40 |
| palustris (see long-leaf pine)16 | Staves |
| serotina (see savanna pine). | production of120 |
| taeda (see loblolly pine). | Storms, damage to timber by92 |
| Pitch (see tar). | Strength of boxed trees99 |
| made from tar73 | Swamp lands, area of |
| Dist country 20 110 | |
| Pitt county32, 110 | growth in15 |
| Plank roads77 | of Beaufort county28 |
| Pocosin pine (see savanna pine)17 | Brunswick county24 |
| Poplar, vellow112, 123 | Craven county27 |
| Railroads, logging in North Carolina, 115 | Carteret county27 |
| Railroad ties, production of119 | Duplin county25 |
| | |
| Richmond county37, 49, 79, 86, 87, 89, | Gates county31 |
| | Jones county27 |
| Roanoke river32, 38 | Onslow county26 |
| Robeson county34, 49, 86, 87, 89, 90, | Pamlico county28 |
| 110 | Pender county25 |
| Rosemary pine | Robeson county35 |
| (see loblolly pine). | |
| Posity of Foundationally pine). | Sampson county37 |
| Rosin, at Fayetteville | soils of |
| destination of exports of82 | Tar, colonial manufacture of73 |
| exports of | converted into pitch73 |
| grades made83 | armorta of 74 |
| C | CA PULLS 01 |
| low price of74 | exports of74 production of in North Carolina, 84 |

| PAGE. | PAGE. |
|--|---|
| Telegraph poles, production of119 | Uses of woods122 |
| Topography of eastern North Carolina, 14 | Virgin dip95 |
| Transition region24, 38 | Wake county39, 89, 110 |
| Tun timber, production of118 | Washington county29, 110, 117 |
| Tupelo gum, distribution of31 | Washington, production of naval |
| Turpentine, American method of col- | |
| lecting94 | lumberat 111 |
| crude, exports from North | Waste lands, area of11, 70 |
| Carolina73 | conclusions concerning, 71 |
| exports from Wil- | growth of51 |
| mington76 | origin of51 |
| production of76, | protection demanded for, |
| 77, 80 | 61 |
| markets for81 | policy necessary for, 63, 71 |
| uses of | restocking60 |
| French methods of col- | utility of59 |
| lecting96 | Wayne county49, 79, 86, 87, 89, 110 |
| orchards93 | Wilmington & Weldon railroad, |
| additions to87 | building of76 |
| | Wilmington lumbor trade with West |
| decreasing area | Wilmington, lumber trade with West Indies106 |
| of90 | |
| destruction90, | naval store industry at74 |
| 92, 93 | rosin exports from81 |
| of S'th'n States, 77 | turpentine exports from, 82 |
| value of68 | timber supply for106 |
| spirite, exports of81 | value of naval store ex- |
| production of in | ports82 Wilson county33, 86, 110 |
| N. C78, 80 | Wilson county33, 86, 110 |
| production of in_ | Wood-working industries117 |
| U. S78 | Woods, uses of |
| shipments of79, 83 | Worth (J.) and son, referred to77 |
| shipped to Wil- | Yellow dip95 |
| mington93 | Yellow dip |
| value of produc- | (see short-leaf piné). |
| tion in N. C80 | 16, 19 |
| yield by counties, 79 | poplar (see poplar)112, 123 |
| Tyrrell county29, 110 | Yield of turpentine by French system, |
| Uwharie mountains, timber of39 | 100 |
| · | |

ERRATA.

Page 22, line 14 from top; read appressed for oppressed.

Page 28, line 7 from top; read compact for large.

Page 31, line 19 from bottom; read unlumbered for untimbered.

Page 33, line 9 from top; read exploitation for exploration.

Page 38, line 18 from bottom; read (p. 32) for (p. 20).

Page 42, line 12 from top; insert annually after and there is.

Page 50, line 8 from top; read occur for occurs.

Page 118, line 16 from bottom; read tun for ton.

NMb

J. Co Branner

NORTH CAROLINA GEOLOGICAL SURVEY.

J. A. HOLMES, STATE GEOLOGIST.

BULLETIN No. 6.

TIMBER TREES AND FORESTS OF NORTH CAROLINA.

BY
GIFFORD PINCHOT

AND

W. W. ASHE.



WINSTON:

M. I. & J. C. Stewart, Public Printers.
1897.

| | · | | |
|--|---|--|--|
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

RULLETIN 6. PLATE I.

HARDWOOD FOREST ABOUT GRANDFATHER MOUNTAIN

N. C. GEOLOGICAL SURVEY.

Je Branner

NORTH CAROLINA GEOLOGICAL SURVEY.

J. A. HOLMES, STATE GEOLOGIST.

_

BULLETIN No. 6.

TIMBER TREES AND FORESTS OF NORTH CAROLINA.

BY

GIFFORD PINCHOT

AND

W. W. ASHE.



WINSTON:
M. I. & J. C. STEWART, Public Printers,
1897.

| | | • | |
|---|--|---|--|
| · | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

CONTENTS.

| ÎLLUSTRATIONS | PAGE 7 |
|--|--------|
| BOARD OF MANAGERS | |
| LETTER OF TRANSMITTAL | |
| | |
| Preface | |
| KEY FOR THE DETERMINATION OF LARGER FOREST TREES | 17 |
| TIMBER TREES OF NORTH CAROLINA | 33 |
| Magnolia fætida ; magnolia | 33 |
| Magnolia glauca; white bay | 34 |
| Magnolia acuminata; cucumber tree | 35 |
| Magnolia macrophylla; great-leaved magnolia | 36 |
| Magnolia tripetala; umbrella tree | 37 |
| Magnolia fraseri; mountain magnolia | |
| Liriodendron tulipifera; yellow poplar | |
| Asimina triloba; papaw | |
| Gordonia lasianthus; loblolly bay | |
| Tilia americana; basswood | |
| Tilia pubescens; southern lin | |
| Tilia heterophylla; lin | |
| Ilex opaca; holly | |
| Cyrilla racemiflora; cyrilla | |
| Aesculus octandra ; buckeye | |
| Acer spicatum; mountain maple | 48 |
| Acer pennsylvanicum; striped maple | 49 |
| Acer barbatum ; sugar maple | |
| Acer saccharinum; silver or white maple | |
| Acer rubrum; red maple | |
| Acer negundo; boxelder | |
| Robinia pseudacacia; yellow locust | |
| Robinia viscosa; clammy locust | |
| Cladrastis lutea; yellowwood | |
| Gleditschia triacanthos; honey locust | |
| Cercis canadensis; redbud | |
| Prunus pennsylvanica; wild red cherry | |
| Prunus serotina; wild black cherry | |
| Amelanchier canadensis; service tree | |
| Liquidambar styraciflua; sweet gum | 61 |
| Cornus florida; dogwood | |
| Nyssa sylvatica; black gum | |
| Nyssa aquatica; tupelo gum | 65 |

CONTENTS.

| PA | GB. |
|--|-----|
| Oxydendron arboreum; sourwood | 66 |
| Kalmia latifolia; laurel | 67 |
| Rhododendron maximum; great laurel | 68 |
| Diospyros virginiana; persimmon | 68 |
| Mohrodendron carolinum; snowdrop tree | 70 |
| Fraxinus americana; white ash | 70 |
| Fraxinus pennsylvanica; red ash | 72 |
| Fraxinus pennsylvanica, var. lanceolata; green ash | 73 |
| Fraxinus caroliniana; water ash | 73 |
| Persea borbonia; sweet or red bay | 74 |
| Sassafras sassafras; sassafras | 75 |
| Ulmus americana; white elm | 76 |
| Ulmus alata; winged elm | 77 |
| Ulmus fulva; slippery elm | 78 |
| Morus rubra; red mulberry | 79 |
| Celtis occidentalis; hackberry | 80 |
| Platanus occidentalis; sycamore | 81 |
| Juglans cinerea; white walnut | 82 |
| Juglans nigra; black walnut | 83 |
| Hicoria minima; bitternut | 84 |
| Hicoria aquatica; water hickory | 85 |
| Hicoria ovata; shag-bark hickory | 86 |
| Hicoria alba; white hickory | 87 |
| Hicoria glabra; pignut | 88 |
| Quercus alba; white oak | 89 |
| Quercus minor; post oak | 91 |
| Quercus lyrata; overcup oak | 92 |
| Quercus prinus; chestnut oak | 93 |
| Quercus michauxii; swamp chestnut oak | 95 |
| Quercus virginiana; live oak | 96 |
| Quercus rubra; red oak | 97 |
| Quercus texana; Texas red oak | 93 |
| Quercus coccinea; scarlet oak | 99 |
| Quercus velutina; black oak | 101 |
| Quercus catesbæi; fork-leaf black jack oak | 102 |
| Quercus digitata; Spanish oak | 103 |
| Quercus marilandica; black-jack oak | 104 |
| Quercus nigra; water oak | 105 |
| Quercus laurifolia; laurel oak | 106 |
| Quercus brevifolia; upland willow oak | 107 |
| Quercus imbricaria; shingle oak | |
| Quercus phellos; willow oak | |
| Castanea dentata; chestnut | |
| Fagus ferruginia; beech | |
| Ostrya virginica; ironwood | |
| Carpinus caroliniana; hornbeam | |
| Batula lutas : vallow hireh | 119 |

| P | AGE. |
|--|-------|
| Betula nigra; river birch | . 114 |
| Betula lenta; cherry or sweet birch | |
| Salix nigra; black willow | |
| Populus grandidenta; aspen | |
| Populus heterophylla; cottonwood | |
| Populus monilifera; Carolina cottonwood | |
| Thuja occidentalis; arbor vitæ | . 119 |
| Cupressus thyoides; white cedar | |
| Juniperus virginiana; red cedar | |
| Taxodium distichum; cypress | . 122 |
| Pinus strobus; white pine | |
| Pinus tæda; loblolly pine | . 125 |
| Pinus rigida; pitch pine | |
| Pinus serotina; pond pine | |
| Pinus virginiana; scrub pine | |
| Pinus pungens; Table Mountain pine | . 129 |
| Pinus echinata; short-leaf pine | . 130 |
| Pinus palustris; long-leaf pine | . 131 |
| Picea nigra; black spruce | 133 |
| Tsuga canadensis; hemlock | |
| Tsuga caroliniana; Carolina hemlock | |
| Abies fraseri ; balsam | |
| Sabal palmetto; palmetto | . 136 |
| FORESTS OF NORTH CAROLINA | . 141 |
| Forest divisions | . 141 |
| The coastal plain region | |
| The Piedmont plateau region | 141 |
| The mountain region | |
| FORESTS OF THE COASTAL PLAIN REGION | |
| MARITIME FORESTS | . 144 |
| Soils of the maritime division | |
| Condition of the forests. | |
| | |
| FORESTS OF THE PINE BELT | . 147 |
| Forest trees | . 147 |
| Distinctive growth | |
| Physical characteristics of the pine belt | . 148 |
| Changes in the kind of forest growth | |
| FORESTS OF THE PINE BELT UPLANDS | |
| ONG-LEAF PINE WOODLAND. | |
| The pine barrens | |
| Soils of the pine barrens | |
| Conditions of the forests of the pine barrens. | |
| Possibilities of the pine barrens | |
| Level pine-woodland | |
| 47C T C I DILLO TO VOLIGII U | . 100 |

| | PAGE. |
|--|-------|
| Supply and utilization of long-leaf pine | 158 |
| Treatment required by the long leaf pine forests | 159 |
| LOBLOLLY PINE WOODLAND | 161 |
| Condition of the forests | |
| Merchantable loblolly pine timber | |
| Forest industries. | 164 |
| Forest protection | |
| Reproduction of loblolly pine forests | |
| Sylvicultural treatment of loblolly pine | 165 |
| TRANSITIONAL FORESTS | 168 |
| FORESTS OF LOWLANDS OF COASTAL PLAIN | 169 |
| Oak flats | |
| Merchantable timber on oak flats | 172 |
| Sylvicultural treatment | |
| Gum and cypress swamps | |
| Merchantable timber of gum and cypress swamps | |
| White cedar or juniper swamps | |
| Condition of unlumbered swamps | |
| Treatment of white cedar swamps | |
| The pond pine pocosins | 179 |
| FORESTS OF THE PIRDMONT PLATEAU REGION | |
| Forests of the Piedmont lowlands | |
| Improvement of the forests of the lowlands | |
| Forests of the Piedmont uplands | |
| Soils of the Piedmont uplands | |
| General condition of the forest | |
| Eastern pine belt of the Piedmont plateau | |
| Forests of the e stern granite areas | |
| Treatment required by forests of eastern granite areas | |
| Forests of eastern red sandstone belt | |
| Improvements of the forests of the sandstone belt | |
| Forests of the slate soils. | |
| Deciduous forests of the Piedmont plateau | |
| Forests of the compact red loams or red clays. | |
| Improvement of the forests. | |
| Forest of the loose gray loams. | |
| Condition of the deciduous forests of the Piedmont plateau | |
| Western pine belt of the Piedmont plateau | |
| | |
| Improvement of forest | |
| FORESTS OF MOUNTAIN REGION | |
| Forests of lower mountains | |
| Distinctive growth | |
| Table mountain pine division | 2 |

ILLUSTRATIONS.

| | | AGE. |
|----------|--|-------|
| Merchan | table timber of Table mountain pine division | . 211 |
| Improve | nent of the forests | . 212 |
| | and pitch pine forests | |
| | of the pine forests | |
| - | nent of the forests | |
| - | forests | |
| | of the white pine forests | |
| | able timber of white pine forests | |
| | nent of the white pine forests | |
| | he higher mountains | |
| | he higher mountains | |
| | ees of the higher mountains | |
| | of the forests | |
| | able timber of the higher mountains | |
| | dustries of the mountain regionsthe mountain summits | |
| | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | |
| | ILLUSTRATIONS. | |
| PLATE I. | Forest view looking towards Grandfather mountain. | |
| • | Frontispiece. | |
| II. | Liriodendron tulipifera; yellow poplar | . 39 |
| III. | Tilia heterophylla; lin | |
| IV. | Acer barbatum ; sugar maple | |
| v. | Prunus serotina; group of wild black cherry trees | |
| VI. | Fraxious americana; white ash | |
| VII. | Quercus alba; white oak | |
| VIII. | Quercus virginiana; live oak | |
| IX. | Quercus rubra; red oak | |
| X. | Quercus nigra; water oak | |
| XI. | Castanea dentata; chestnut | |
| XII. | Betula lenta; cherry birch | |
| XIII. | Juniperus virginiana; red cedar | |
| XIV. | Pinus strobus; white pine | |
| XV. | Pinus tæda; loblolly pine | |
| XVI. | Pinus serotina; pond pine | |
| XVII. | | |
| XVIII | • | |
| XIX. | Tsuga canadensis; hemlock | |
| XX. | Sabal palmetto; palmetto | |
| XXI. | Dredge cutting logging canal in eastern cypress | |
| ***** | swamp | |
| XXII. | | |
| YYIII | region | 192 |
| | Mined handmand found of manageria modern | |

ILLUSTRATIONS.

| | PA | GB. |
|-----|---|-----|
| | Map showing distribution of cucumber tree and magnolia | |
| 2. | Map showing distribution of white bay and mountain mag- nolia | |
| 3. | Map showing distribution of umbrella tree and great-leaved magnolia. | |
| 4 | Map showing economic distribution of yellow poplar | 40 |
| | Map showing distribution of basswood, lin, and southern lin | 4: |
| | Map showing relative abundance of sugar maple | 50 |
| | Map showing relative abundance of yellow locust | |
| | Map showing economic and botanical distribution of wild | |
| | black cherry and distribution of wild red cherry | 5 |
| 9. | Map showing relative abundance of sweet gum | 6 |
| 10. | Map showing distribution of black gum and tupelo | 6 |
| 11. | Map showing distribution of persimmon | 6 |
| 12. | Map showing distribution of white ash and water ash | 7 |
| | Map showing distribution of American elm | |
| | Map showing distribution of winged elm | |
| | Map showing distribution of black walnut and white walnut | 8 |
| 16. | Map showing distribution of shag-bark hickory and water- bitternut | 8 |
| 17. | Map showing relative abundance of white and pignut hickories | 8 |
| 18. | Map showing relative abundance of white oak | 9 |
| 19. | Map showing distribution of post oak | 9 |
| 20. | Map showing distribution of overcup oak | 9 |
| 21. | Map showing distribution of chestnut oak and swamp chestnut oak | 9. |
| 22. | Map showing distribution of red oak and live oak | 9 |
| 23. | Map showing distribution of turkey oak and Texas red oak | 9 |
| 24. | Map showing relative abundance of scarlet oak | 10 |
| 25. | Map showing distribution of black oak and laurel oak | 10 |
| | Map showing distribution of Spanish oak | |
| | Map showing distribution of water oak | |
| | Map showing distribution of shingle and willow oaks | |
| | Map showing distribution of chestnut and chinquapin | 110 |
| 30. | Map showing distribution of river birch, cherry birch, and yellow birch | 118 |
| 31. | Map showing distribution of pitch pine and white cedar | 12 |
| | Map showing relative abundance of red cedar | |
| 33. | Map showing distribution of white pine and cypress | 12 |
| | Map showing economic distribution of loblolly pine | |
| 35. | Map showing distribution of pond pine, hemlock, and Carolina hemlock | |
| 36. | Map showing distribution of scrub pine and Table mountain pine | |
| 27 | Map showing economic distribution of short-leaf pine | |
| | Man showing economic distribution of long-leaf pine | |

BOARD OF MANAGERS.

| GOVERNOR D. L. RUSSELL, ex officio Chairman | Raleigh. |
|---|-------------|
| CHARLES MCNAMEE | Biltmore. |
| J. Turner Morehead | Leaksville. |
| | • |
| | |
| | |
| J. A. HOLMES, State Geologist | Chapel Hill |

| | | · | |
|-----|---|---|--|
| · . | | | |
| • | | | |
| | | | |
| • | • | | |
| | | | |
| | • | | |
| | | | |
| | | 4 | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

LETTER OF TRANSMITTAL.

CHAPEL HILL, N. C., June 19th, 1897.

To his Excellency, Gov. D. L. Russell,

Chairman Geological Board, Raleigh, N. C.

Sir:—I beg to submit for publication as Bulletin 6 of the Geological Survey series, a report on the timber trees of North Carolina, by Mr. Gifford Pinchot, and a report on the forests and forest conditions in North Carolina, by Mr. W. W. Ashe. Mr. Pinchot has prepared his portion of this bulletin free of charge for services, and I regard his paper as one of the most valuable which has been prepared for the survey.

There is already a large demand for copies of this bulletin, even in advance of its being published, and its distribution will serve to answer a number of inquiries from many portions of the country, concerning the timber supplies in North Carolina.

With great respect, I beg to remain,

Yours obediently,

J. A. Holmes, State Geologist.

| | | · | | |
|---|---|---|---|--|
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | · | | | |
| | · | · | • | |
| · | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| · | | | | |
| | | | | |

PREFACE.

The present Bulletin was planned as a part of the North Carolina forest exhibit at Chicago. It was begun before the opening of the World's Fair, but, for reasons which need not be recited here, remained unfinished. Since that time it has been continued under stress of other work as opportunity arose, and has reached it present condition only after long delays.

It is intended, first, to present a succinct statement of certain salient characteristics of the more important trees of North Carolina. The forest flora of no other State is more varied, nor in many ways so interesting as this. Partly for this reason, and partly for the uses of this Bulletin in identifying trees throughout the State, a close restriction to those species which are of present value for lumber has not been maintained.

The second part of the Bulletin, a short account of the various forest regions of the State, is contributed entirely by Mr. Ashe, whose acquaintance with the woodlands of North Carolina is so much more extensive than my own that I have thought it best not to attempt to edit his MS. in any way.

In all matters of punctuation, capitalization, and nomenclature, I have preferred to follow the established usage of the Geological Survey throughout, rather than depart from it in a few cases where my individual preference might have been different.

The material contained in the accounts of the various trees has been gathered chiefly from various publications, assisted by such personal observations as I have been able to make, or as have been contributed by different observers. I have to express my indebtedness in particular to Prof. Sargent's magnificent "Silva of North America," to Dr. Curtis' "Trees of North Carolina," and to Dr. Chapman's "Flora of the Southern States." Other authorities have been consulted in the course of preparation, but these are the principal ones.

14 . PREFACE.

The silvicultural notes, largely tentative in character as they must necessarily be, are intended to refer only to the bearing of each species in North Carolina.

Besides Mr. Ashe, to whose notes I am indebted for the descriptions of the root systems and for other material, and myself, many others have joined in the work, but it would carry me too far to acknowledge their services in detail. I must ask them to accept this general expression of my sincere appreciation of their assistance.

GIFFORD PINCHOT.

New York, Nov. 26, 1896.

KEY FOR THE DETERMINATION

OF THE

LARGER NORTH CAROLINA FOREST TREES.

BY

WILLIAM WILLARD ASHE.



KEY FOR THE DETERMINATION

OF THE

LARGER NORTH CAROLINA FOREST TREES.

By W. W. ASHE.

The analytical key given below for the determination of the larger forest trees is based on those characters which are most accessible and can be obtained throughout the greater part of the growing season. A short explanation of some of the terms used is given, which may be of some service.

Opposite leaves are two leaves placed opposite one another, one on either side of the twig. Alternate leaves are leaves not so placed in pairs along the twig.

The leafstem is the stalk on which the leaf stands and by which it is fastened to the twig. A simple leaf is one whose leafstem is attached directly to the twig; a compound leaf, one formed of numerous separate small leaves, or leaflets, which are attached at the end of a common leafstem or along either side of a common leafstem. The leaflets along the leafstem can be arranged opposite each other or alternately.

A bud is placed on the twig at the bottom of each leafstem. It is generally a small brown prominence or spur formed of overlapping scales. Those buds at the end of the twig are larger than those below, and the usual reference is to the end or terminal bud. Buds do not reach their full size and color until about the middle of July, but they can be clearly seen as soon as the leaves and twig are mature in spring. Most buds are placed on the twig just above where the leafstem joins it; some buds, however, are concealed in a cup hollowed out of the base of the leafstem. It is important to know where the bud is, as compound leaves are

determined in this way, the small leaflets which make them having no buds where they join the leafstem, which otherwise might be taken for the twig.

The twiq is the growth of the season. Most trees have the buds and the leaves, which grow from the same point, scattered rather regularly along the twig, only one or rarely two being at the end of the twig; the oaks, however, have from three to five such buds and leaves crowded at the end of the twig, besides those on the stem below, and this characteristic grouping of the buds is used to separate these trees from all others. Two of the magnolias have their leaves and buds so grouped, but on account of the large size of the leaves these will not be confused with the oaks.

The figures in parenthasis refer to the page on which a more lengthy description will be found.

- I. CONIFERS, TREES WITH LIMBS, CHIEFLY EVERGREEN AND RESIN-BEARING, WITH LEAVES RARELY 1/2 INCH BROAD.
- (1) LEAVES OVER ONE INCH LONG, NEEDLE-LIKE, FROM 2 TO 5 COLLECTED IN A SHORT SHEATH .- Pines.
- (a) Leaves 5 together; bark of small limbs whitish
- (b) Leaves 3 together.

Leaves 10 to 15 inches long; bud at end of the twig covered by many ragged, silvery

bracts. (p. 131.) LONG-LEAF PINE.

Leaves 6 to 10 inches long; bud small and resinous; cone or burr cylindrical, 5 to 6

inches long. (p. 125.).....LOBLOLLY PINE.

Leaves 4 to 8 inches long; small bud resinous; cone top-shaped; trees of eastern

swamps. (p 127.).....Pond or Savanna Pine.

Leaves 3 to 5 inches long; cone top-shaped; western trees on dry ridges or rarely in deep

swamps; buds resinous. (p. 126.).....(NORTHERN) PITCH PINE.

(c) Leaves 2 together, rarely 3.

Leaves about 4 inches long; cone less than 2 inches long; young twigs covered with a whitish or pinkish bloom; buds not resin-

ous; large and common trees. (p. 130.).....SHORT LEAF PINE.

Leaves about 2 inches long; cone 21 inches long: small trees with curving branches,

and thin scaly bark on old trunks. (p. 128.)..Jersey or Scrub Pine.

Leaves about 2 inches long; cone large with stout hooked prickles on the ends of the scales; a rare tree, occurring chiefly along the Blue Ridge. (p. 129.)......TABLE-MOUNTAIN PINE.

| (2) LEAVES FLATTENED, RARRLY 1 INCH LONG, SCATTERED SINGLY ALONG THE TWIG; FRUIT NOT A BERRY. |
|--|
| (a) Large and common trees of eastern swamps; not evergreen; the end of the twig falling off in the autumn. |
| Leaves spreading in two rows, one on either side of the twig. (p. 122.) |
| Leaves, appressed to the twig, in many rows on all sides of it; smaller tree than the above, growing in pine barren ponds |
| (b) Trees of the mountains; evergreen. |
| Fruit a small burr or cone, about 1 inch long or less. |
| Leaves white beneath, in two rows, one on either side of the twig; growing along mountain streams. (p. 184.) |
| Leaves scattered on all sides of the twig; scales of the cone larger than the last and spreading; rare trees, chiefly along |
| the Blue Ridge. (p. 135.) |
| Fruit a larger, cylindrical cone, 2 to 4 inches long; trees of high mountains. |
| Leaves green, nearly round, scattered on all sides of the twig. (p. 183.)BLACK SPRUCE. |
| Leaves in one row on either side of the twig, white beneath; trees with white, smooth bark, found on the highest mountains. (p. 136) |
| (3) LEAVES SHORT, SCALK-LIKE, LESS THAN $\frac{1}{8}$ -INCH LONG; TWIGS OF THE YEAR GREEN.— $Cedars$. |
| Spray, that is a bunch of twigs, flattened; fruit a small cone; trees of eastern swamps. (p. 119.)WHITE CEDAR OR |
| Twigs round: fruit a small, blue berry; (often bearing large, hard, brown excrescences on twigs); dry soil. (p. 121.) |
| Twigs, as well as the spray (bunch of twigs) flat- tened; fruit a small cone; rocky slopes of the Blue Ridge, also extensively cultivated. (p. 119.) |
| II. BROAD-LEAF TREES; TREES WITH LIMBS; LEAVES FROM † OF AN INCH TO 10 INCHES BROAD, CHIEFLY DECIDUOUS. |
| (1) LEAVES COMPOUND AND PLACED ALTERNATELY ALONG THE TWIG. |
| (a) Leaflets placed alternately along the common leafstem, 7 to 11 in number; flowers white; fruit a dry pod; S. W. mountains; rare. (p. 56)YELLOWWOOD. |
| (b) Stout thorns at the base of each leafstem and each leaflet; leaflets dotted with translucent dots; bark warty and thorny; sandy sea coast |
| Taxodium distichum imbricaria (Nuttali) Ashe, Handbook of North Carolina, p. 43 |
| (1896). 2 Xanthoxylum carolinianum, Lam. |

| (c) | Twigs angled, frequently bearing two flat- tened thorns at the base of each leafstem; leaflets not toothed, opposite on the leafstem, over 11 in number; flowers white; fruit a dry pod; bark furrowed, not thorny. (p. 54.)Yellow Locust. |
|--------------|--|
| (d) | Twigs round, stout; frequently compound thorns scattered over limbs and trunk; leaves, frequently twice compound, with rather small, toothed leaflets; fruit a long, dark brown, pulpy, many-seeded pod. (p. 56.) |
| (e) | Twigs sticky or clammy; fruit a dry pod; Macon county, also cultivated; a shrub or in cultivation a small tree. (p. 55.) |
| (f) | Twigs smooth, bearing prominent brown buds; leaflets sharply toothed, smooth; flowers white, small, in large clusters; fruit small, red and berry-like; bruised bark on twigs bitter and scented like cherry bark; highest mountains |
| (g) | Twigs not thorny or sticky; usually from 2 to 4 buds above each leaf-scar; sharply toothed leaflets opposite on leafstem, over 3 inches long, 5 to 13 in number; fruit a nut, with a husk dividing in 4 parts.— <i>Hickories</i> . |
| | Leaves and leafstems smooth, not hairy; leaflet 6 to 7; buds scaly. |
| | Leaflets 5, smooth; no resinous particles on lower surface; nut not angled, with a thick shell and thin husk, often pear- shaped; bark not scaly. (p. 88.) |
| | Leaflets very large, 5 or 7, smooth, but thickly dotted beneath with resinous particles; twigs, smooth, shining, pur ple-brown; nut angled, whitish or mealy, rather thin-shelled; the husk greenish-brown, roughened with minute prominencies, often splitting to the base; large trees with shaggy or loose (HICKORY ² . bark; common. (p. 88.) |
| | Leaflets 5, smooth; nut white, small, sharply angled, with thin, white shell and thick husk, the fruit globular; bark very shaggy; trees of dry or rocky (HICKORY ³ . ridgesSMALL OR CAROLINA SHAGBARK |
| | Leaflets 5 to 11, downy or hairy beneath; buds scaly. |
| | Leaflets 5 or 7, soft-velvety beneath; nut with thick husk and thin, white (HICKORY. shell; trees with shaggy bark. (p. 86.)Shag or Scaly-bark |
| | Leaflets 5 to 9, soft-downy beneath; twigs and buds very stout; nut brown, oblong, thick-shelled: husk thick; large trees of low grounds, with shaggy bark; infrequent LARGE SHAGBARK HICKORY4. |
| | |

¹Pyrus americana, (Marshall) De Candolle.

²Hicoria odorata, (Marshall) Sargent.

³Hicoria carolinæ-septentrionalis, Ashe. Notes on the Hickories, Chapel Hill, N. C. (4896.)

⁴Hicoria laciniosa, (Michaux fils) Sargent.

```
Leaflets 7 to 11, rough-hairy beneath; nut thick-shelled, with thick husk;
          bark of tree rough but not shaggy. (p. 87.)......White Hickory.
          Leaflets scurfy beneath with silvery particles; leafstem and midribs hairy; nuts thick-shelled, the husk usually adhering to it; bark very rough; small trees on sondy soil.
          trees on sandy soil; throughout except
          high mountains......SAND HICKORY1.
      Leaflets 7 or more, and leafstem, often smooth; nuts thin-shelled and bitter; husk thin and adhering to the nut; end buds,
      long, yellow, without scales (naked).
          Leaflets 7 to 11, soft-velvety or smooth-
          ish beneath: nut large, very thin-shelled and bitter; husk thin. (p. 84.)......BITTERNUT HICKORY.
          Leaflets 9 to 13, smooth; nut small, very
          thin-shelled and bitter; confined to the
          lower Cape Fear section. (p. 85.) WATER (BITTERNUT) HICKORY.
(h) Leaflets smaller, over 11 in number; fruit a
    nut with a husk or rind which does not split
    at all on the mature nut; pith brown, cham-
    bered. - Walnuts.
          Leaflets soft-velvety; fruit nearly round. (p. 83.) BLACK WALNUT.
          Leaflets clammy or sticky; fruit oblong. (p. 84.) WHITE WALNUT.
(2) LEAVES COMPOUND AND PLACED OPPOSITE ON THE TWIG.
(a) Leaflets 5 or 7, spreading from the same point
    at the end of the leaf-stem; fruit 2 or 3 brown
    nuts in a yellow or brownish husk. (p. 47.).....BUCKEYE.
(b) Twigs and buds green and shining; leaflets 3
    or 5, coarsely toothed; fruit with 2 wings. (p. 53.).....BOXELDER.
(c) Twigs stout and brown; buds brown and
    scurfy; fruit with a single wing.—Ashes.
        (1) The very broad wing entirely surround-
            ing the seed; leaflets 5 to 9, green both
            (2) Fruit narrowly winged at one end only;
            leaflets 7 to 9.
              Leaves whitened beneath; twigs
              either smooth or velvety. (p. 70.)......WHITE ASH.
              Twigs, buds and green lower surface
              of leaves velvety; fruit narrowly
              Twigs and leaves smooth: leaves
              bright green beneath, sharply toothed. (p. 73.). GREEN ASH.
(3) LEAVES SIMPLE AND PLACED OPPOSITE ON THE TWIG.
(a) Leaves entire, thin, oblong, large, over 2 inches
    long, downy beneath; flowers, slender, droop-
    ing, white; fruit plum-like......FRINGE TREE2.
(b) Leaves evergreen, thick, smooth, pointed, 3 to 5 inches long; fruit large, 1-seeded; rich
    hummocks along the coast ...... DEVILWOOD OR OLIVE's.
 <sup>1</sup>Hicoria villosa (Sarg.) Ashe.

<sup>2</sup>Chionanthus virginica, Linnæus.

<sup>3</sup>Osmanthus americanus, (Linnæus) Bentham & Hooker.
```

| | Leaves toothed, oblong, small, 2 inches long; buds small and acute, or large, round, and flattened from the top; flowers seeming solitary, large and white; fruit a cluster of red berries; twigs purple or green. (p. 63.) | | | | | |
|--|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| | shrubs several kinds of BLACK HAWS 1. | | | | | |
| (e) | Leaves broader and short, 3 to 5-lobed; fruit with wings.—Maples. (The three first frequently grown as shade trees.) | | | | | |
| • | Buds red, blunt; leaves white beneath, generally with 3 shallow lobes; very common; wings of fruit inch long. (p. 52.) | | | | | |
| | Buds red, blunt; leaves white beneath with 3 to 5 lobes; wings of fruit more than 1 inch long; cultivated. (p. 51.) | | | | | |
| | Buds brown, acute; leaves over 2 inches wide, green or white beneath with 3 lobes, each lobe 3-notched; large trees with rough, hard, shaggy bark; fruit 1; inch in length. (p. 50.) | | | | | |
| | Leaves as in the sugar maple, but only half the size; fruit less than one inch long; small trees with smooth gray bark, branching near the ground; rocky river banks in the counties drained by the Yadkin and Catawba rivers | | | | | |
| | Small trees of the high mountains, above 3,000 feet, with striped branches, green twigs and large, smooth, 3-lobed leaves; long, stalked, purplish buds. (p. 49.)STRIPED MAPLE. | | | | | |
| | Small trees of the highest mountains, over 4 000 feet, with purplish twigs and 3-lobed leaves, velvety beneath. (p. 48.)MOUNTAIN MAPLE. | | | | | |
| (4) | LEAVES SIMPLE AND ALTERNATE OR SCATTERED ALONG THE TWIG. | | | | | |
| (a) Leaves mostly rather large, 3 or more inches long, nearly as broad as long, more or less heart-shaped. | | | | | | |
| | (1) Small trees; leaves smooth and with entire edges; fruit a pod; flowers in early spring, bright red. (p. 57.) | | | | | |
| | (2) Larger trees, with leaves triangular, smoothish, finely toothed on the margins; buds resinous when crushed.— Cottonwoods. | | | | | |
| | Trees of eastern swamps; leaves | | | | | |
| Species of Viburnum. Acer leucoderme, Small, Bul. Tor. Bot. Cl., xxii, p. 367. | | | | | | |

| finely toothed; leafstem flat; twigs angled. (p. 118.) | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| Trees of lowgrounds, eastern and middle sections; leaves finely toothed; leafstem round. (p.118.) | |
| Trees on dry slopes of the Blue Ridge; leaves, about 2 inches long, coarsely toothed; leafstem flat- tened. (p. 117.) | Aspen. |
| (3) Mostly trees on the mountains or cool banks; flowers white, in early summer; fruit a small, dry berry; leaves sharply toothed; twigs with large buds and inodorous bark.—Lins or Lindens. | |
| Leaves thin and nearly smooth, green both sides; found chiefly around high mountains. (p. 42.) | |
| Leaves thickish and white beneath: Leaves thickish, velvety beneath; found chiefly on cool hummocks near the coast. (p. 44.) | • |
| (4) Small trees of rich woodland; bark ill- scented when broken; fruit, ripening in summer, a black, edible berry; often cultivated. (p. 79.) | |
| (b) Leaves about as broad as long, 2 to 5 inches long, not heart shaped in outline; buds scattered; large and common trees except last. | |
| Leaves large, with a broad notch at the top, lobed on the sides; large buds flattened; in rich woods and along streams. | (YELLOW POPLAR. (p. 39.)Tulip-tree or |
| Leaves small, deeply 5-lobed: crushed buds resinous scented; twigs often with corky wings; fruit a rough ball, about 1 inch in diameter hanging by a stem 2 to 3 inches long. (p. 61.) | Sweet Gum. |
| Leaves 3 to 5-lobed, white beneath with soft wool; leafstem covering the bud; trunk of tree smooth and whitish above; fruit a rather smooth ball, about 1 inch in diameter, hanging by a | 24) |
| slender stem; mostly along streams. (p. Leaves with sharp spines along their edges, thick, evergreen, dark green; trees with smooth gray bark. (p. 46.) | , |
| (c) Leaves large, 4 to 30 inches long, oblong in outline, not toothed or lobed; flowers large and white.—Magnolias. | |
| Leaves thick, evergreen, over 6 inches long, brown-hairy beneath; Brunswick county, and frequently cultivated. (p. | (MAGNOLIA. 33.)EVERGREEN |
| Leaves smaller, white beneath; bark white and smooth; buds silky; eastern swamps | WHITE BAY. |
| Leaves 4 to 6 inches long, greenish beneath; bark furrowed; buds silky-hairy; mountains | |

Leaves large, 10 to 80 inches long; buds

silky; rare; western. (p. 86.).............GREAT-LEAVED MAGNOLIA. Leaves 10 to 15 inches long, with a deep notch at the bottom, often collected at the end of the twig; buds not hairy; high mountains. (p. 38.)......WAHOO OR MOUNTAIN MAGNOLIA. Leaves 10 to 20 inches long, pointed at each end, collected at the ends of the twigs; along streams. (p. 37.)......UMBRELLA TREE. (d) Leaves longer than broad, 2 to 8 inches long; twigs mostly brown, with from 2 to 5 buds crowded at the top, other buds scattered below; fruit an acorn, i. e. a nut with the base enclosed in a scaly cup.—Oaks. (1) Leaves not at all lobed or toothed, except on vigorous shoots, wedge-shaped or triangular or long and narrow in outline; leafstems short.—Water Oaks and Willow *1) Leaves green on both sides. Leaves 4 to 6 inches long, triangular in outline, thick; buds large; twigs thick; acorn large, ‡ inch wide; small trees; bark rough, black. (p. 103.).....BLACK-JACK OAK. Leaves narrowly triangular, 2 to 3 inches long; twigs slender; buds small and blunt; nut small; trees with smoothish gray bark; eastern. (p. 105.).......WATER OAK. Leaves very narrow, pointed; twigs slender; in the middle and eastern parts of the State, usually in wet places. (p. 108).....WILLOW OAK. Leaves paler beneath and downy; banks of streams along the Blue Ridge and to the westward. (p. 107)......SHINGLE OAK. *2) Leaves whitened beneath, 2 to 5 inches long; extreme east. Leaves very narrow; acorn small, globose, whitened; small trees on dry (WILLOW OAK. sandy soil. (p. 107.).....BARREN OR UPLAND Leaves broader, evergreen; large trees, on the coast, with a long acorn. (p. 96.).....LIVE OAK. (2) Leaves more or less lobed, the divisions tipped with a bristle.-Red Oaks and

Leaves broad, 3-lobed at the top. (p. 103.).....BLACK-JACK OAK.

shallow lobes; on the sea coast. (p. 106.)....LAUREL OAK.

the sides; mountains.....LEA'S OAK1.

Black Oaks.

long.

*1) Leaves with a leafstem less than 1 inch

Leaves narrow, 1 to 1 inch broad, with

Leaves about 2 inches wide with 3 lobes at the top or shallow lobes on

Leaves green and smooth on both sides with many long, often curved

¹ Quercus leana, Nuttall.

lobes; acorn large; cup with coarse, spreading scales; small trees with (JACK OR SAND OAK. rough, gray bark; on pine barrens. (p. 102.)..Fork-LEAF BLACK. *2) Leaves with a long and slender leafstem, 1 to 3 inches long, green beneath. Leaves over twice as long as broad, the lobes acute; rare; middle section......BARTRAM'S OAK1. Leaves broader, generally not twice as long as broad with many lobes on each side; large trees. ¿) With deep and rounded hollows between the lobes of the leaves; large Light gray bark on limbs; nut half covered by the cup; common on dry, stiff or gravelly soils; twigs brownish. (p. 99.)......SCARLET OAK. With dark gray bark on branches; only base of nut covered by the cup; rare; along streams of the middle counties; twigs steel gray. (p. 98.). TEXAS RED OAK. ?) With shallower, acute hollows between the lobes of the leaf. Leaves downy beneath; cup covering half of the large nut; bark rough and black. (p. 101.)......BLACK OAK. Leaves smooth beneath; cup very shallow; bark striped, dark, and light gray; western. (p. 97.)....(NORTHERN) RED OAK. *3) Leaves whitened beneath; leafstem slender; nut small, globular. (p. 103.).....SPANISH OAK. (3) Leaves more or less lobed or toothed, the divisions rounded and not bristletipped; leafstems less than 1 inch long; bark gray, furrowed or shaggy. — White Oaks and Chestnut Oaks. Leaves deeply 5 to 9-lobed; nut nearly covered by the cup; in the eastern swamps. (p. 92.)......OVERCUP OAK. Leaves deeply 5 to 7-lobed; cup one-half the length of the acorn; small trees, common on dry soil. (p. 91).....Post Oak. Leaves 7 to 9-lobed; cup of acorn Leaves thick with many, rounded, shallow lobes; bark deeply fur-rowed; dry soil; western; acorn very large. (p. 93.).....Rock Chestnut Oak. Leaves thin, velvety beneath, with many rounded, shallow lobes; bark shaggy; swamps and river banks eastward. (p. 95.).....SWAMP CHESTNUT OAK. (e) Leaves more than 3 inches long, sharply

toothed on the sides and with prominent,

¹ Quercus heterophylla, Michaux.

straight veins; buds scattered along the twig, as are the leaves. (1) Buds oblique to the axis of the twig; fruit edible, brown nuts enclosed in a prickly burr. Leaves over 6 inches long, green both sides. (p. 109.)......CHESTNUT. Leaves about 4 inches long, whitedowny beneath......CHINQUAPIN1. (f) Leaves about 4 inches long, veins not straight and prominent, evergreen, thick, smooth, dark green, irregularly toothed, sharply pointed; flowers large, white; fruit a woody capsule; small tree of eastern swamps with a straight trunk, not forking and narrow, conical.top. (p. 42.).....LOBLOLLY BAY. (g) Leaves generally less than 3 inches long (with exceptions under 221 and 2), and scattered along the twig as are the buds. (1) LEAVES NOT TOOTHED ON THE MARGIN, 2 TO 5 INCHES LONG. Leaves and twigs aromatic; fruit a deep blue berry on a red stalk. Leaves evergreen, thick, dark green, hairy beneath, as is the brownish twig; eastern swamps. (p. 94.).....RED BAY OR SWERT BAY'. Leaves as in the above, but smooth beneath, as are the twigs; sandy sea coast.....SMOOTH RED BAY. Leaves often 2 or 3-lobed; bark aromatic; fields and fence rows; twigs green......Sassafras. Leaves and twigs not aromatic; fruit Leaves thickish, smooth, evergreen, narrowed at the base; fruit many small capsules; small trees or shrubs with smooth, thin, brown bark; eastern swamps. (p. 47.)......CYRILLA. Leaves 2 to 4 inches long; bark not aromatic; fruit a small blue berry; common throughout the State. (p. 63.).....BLACK GUM. Leaves 4 to 6 inches long; rarely coarsely toothed; fruit a blue berry 1 inch long; deep eastern swamps. (p. 65.).....TUPELO GUM. Leaves about 2 inches long, thick, evergreen, pointed; flowers white;

¹Castanea pumila, Linnæus. ²Persed borbonia pubescens (Pursh) nom. nov.: P. pubescens, Sargent, Sylva, vii, p. 7 (1885). ³Prunus caroliniana, (Miller) Aiton.

Fruit when ripe roundish, yellow, pulpy and edible; astringent when green, the 4-lobed calyx persistent at its base; seed several, flat; fields. (p. 68.)......Persimmon. (2) LEAVES LOBED, OR TOOTHED ON THE MARGIN. Fruit pulpy or fleshy, as in apple or cherry. Leaves often lobed; twigs armed with stout thorns; fruit a small sour apple one inch in diameter, yellow when ripe; flowers pink, sweet-scented. Leaves variously lobed or toothed, twigs often armed with long slender thorns; buds very small; flowers white, about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch in diameter in large, flat-topped clusters, in spring; fruit, berry-like, orange or red, in clusters; small trees with bark of trunk scaly or pealing off in thin sheets or scaly......several kinds of......RED (HAW) THORN3. Leaves silky-hairy beneath; the edible red fruit small and berry-like; bark smooth and white. (p. 60.)......SERVICE TREE. Bark of trees bitter to taste; leaves smooth, finely and sharply toothed; fruit one-seeded. Fruit a black cherry; flowers in a drooping raceme at the end of the twig; frequent. (p. 59.)......WILD BLACK CHERRY. Fruit a red cherry; flowers in slender, long stemmed clusters along the sides of the twig; occurs only on highest mountains. (p. 58.)......WILD RED CHERRY. Flowers in long-stemmed clusters along the sides of twig; fruit red or yellow when ripe, about inch long; seed flattened; small trees, some-times with thorny branches; fields, waste places or along streams...... 2 kinds of......WILD Plum3. Bark of tree often with corky outgrowths; fruit a small 1-seeded sweet berry; leaves thin and nearly smooth, Fruit various, either a nut or dry. A. Leaves over three times as long as broad. Leaves green beneath and not hairy, finely toothed, long and narrow, to i inch broad; twigs brittle, yellow or red; common along streams and wet places, except in the coastal plain where it is largely replaced by the next. (p. 116.)......BLACK WILLOW.

¹ Pyrus coronaria, Linnæus and C. angustifolia, Aiton.

² Species of Cratægus.

3 Prunus americana, Murshall and P. angustifolia, Marshall.

| Like the above, but the larger leaves, though smooth, whitened beneath; easternWARD WILLOW Leaves whitened beneath with a fine down, at least when young; later smooth but white; twigs mostly red and purple; small slender trees, along streams, chiefly western and central |
|--|
| smooth, acid when chewed. (p. 66.)Sourwoo A. Leaves less than three times as long as broad. |
| Terminal bud over i inch long; fruit a 3-angled nut, bark of trunk smooth, light gray; leaves straight-veined. (p. 111.) |
| Small trees with smooth, light gray bark, fluted trunk, beech-like leaves and hop-like clusters of fruit; bud short; very common along streams. (p. 118.) |
| Leaves 3 to 4 inches long, sharp-pointed, downy beneath, as is the leafstem; flowers, white, bell-shaped, in drooping clusters; fruit about ½ inch long, 3 angled, the angles winged; usually small trees with striped green and brown branches; along streams and cool hollows in the mountains. (p. 70.) |
| Bark of small limbs peeling off in thin papery layers; flowers in catkins in spring; fruit cylindrical in shape, 1 inch long, covered with green bracts, each with a seed at its base within.—Birches. |
| Layers of bark red or pinkish; leaves pale beneath; common along streams. (p. 114.)RIVER BIRG Layers of bark silvery white; trees of highest mountains; leaves green beneath. (p. 113.) |
| Bark of twig having the taste of winter- green (or peppermint) when chewed; flowers and fruit of the above; trees of cool mountains. (p. 115.)Sweet or Cherry Bire |
| The remaining native forest trees all have have small leaves. from 1 to 2 inches long long, green both sides and finely and sharply toothed. They are either elms or elm-like in the appearance of their foliage, and it is difficult to give accessible leaf-characters for their identification. |
| Twigs yellowish or light brown; buds minute, sometimes clustered; fruit a small scaly nut; bark smooth, dark gray; confined to the lower Cape Fear section |

¹Salix longipes wardii (Bebb) nom. nov.; S. nigra wardi, Bebb, Bul. U. S. Nat. Mus. xxii, p. 114.
2Salix discolor, Muchlenburg.
3 Planera aquatica, Ginel.

trees, with shaggy, brown bark, (BEAM OR IRONWOOD. growing on rich hillsides; western. (p. 112.)....... Hop-horn-Remaining large trees; fruit a winged seed falling in spring before the leaves appear; extensively cultivated for shade trees. -Elms.Twigs very hairy; the leaves broadly oval, rough and hairy; twigs gummy when chewed; infrequent. (p. 78.).....SLIPPERY ELM. Twigs smoothish; leaves over 2 inches long, but slightly rough; bark on large trees mostly scaly. (p. 76.).....WHITE ELM. Twigs smoothish; the leaves about 2 inches long; bark on large trunks firm and furrowed; the bark of twigs often corky winged. (p. 77.)......WINGED ELM.

III. PALMS; TREES WITHOUT LIMBS; lmited in this State to the PALMETTO, a small tree with unbranched stem about 10 inches in diameter and a small crown of evergreen leaves two feet or more in breadth;

| · | | |
|---|---|--|
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| · | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | • | |
| | | |
| | | |

TIMBER TREES OF NORTH CAROLINA

BY

GIFFORD PINCHOT



TIMBER TREES OF NORTH CAROLINA

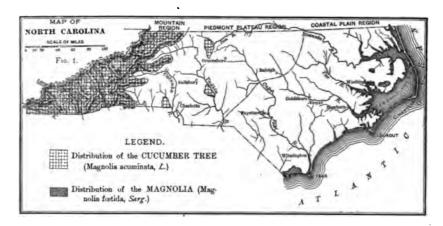
By GIFFORD PINCHOT

Magnolia fœtida, Sargent.*

(MAGNOLIA.)

A large pyramidal tree, with gray or light brown bark covered with small thin scales, reaching a height of 90 and a diameter of 4½ feet.

It occurs southward from the mouth of the Cape Fear river, rarely more than fifty or sixty miles from the coast, to Mosquito inlet and Tampa bay, Florida; along the Gulf coast to the valley of the Brazos river, Texas; in western Louisiana and southern Arkansas, and on the bluffs of the lower Mississippi, where it reaches its best development.



In North Carolina, where it grows to an average height of 50 to 70 feet, it is found rather sparingly in Brunswick county, in the southeast corner of the State (fig. 1), growing in the rich, moist soil of river swamps.

It reproduces itself rather slowly in the latitude of this State,

and young seedlings are very rarely found in the forest, although the tree flowers and matures fruit not only regularly but, for the most part, abundantly as well.

The long thick leathery evergreen leaves are downy underneath, and remain upon the tree for two years. The fragrant creamywhite flowers are very large and conspicuous, often 7 or 8 inches across. The oval fruit is rusty brown in color, 3 to 4 inches long by 1½ to 2½ inches broad. The winter-buds are thickly covered with dark rusty hairs. The roots, finely divided, penetrate the soil to a moderate depth.

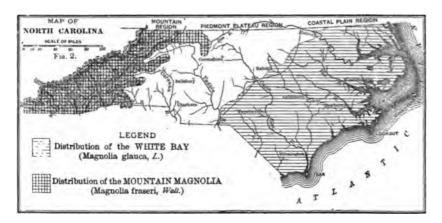
The wood is moderately hard, close-grained, not strong, easily worked, not durable in contact with the soil, and is as valuable as that of the other magnolias; creamy-white in color; the thick sapwood nearly white. Although well suited for cabinet work and interior finish, the wood is little used except for fuel.

Magnolia glauca, Linnæus.

(WHITE BAY. SWEET BAY. SWAMP BAY.)

A slender tree, with gray branches and light brown small-scaled bark, reaching a height of 70 and a diameter of 3½ feet.

It occurs in deep, wet swamps as far north as Massachusetts, where it is reduced to a low shrub, and extends from New Jersey



southward, generally near the coast, to Florida, where it reaches its best development, and southern Texas. It is not found in the

Appalachian mountains. In the South Atlantic and Gulf states it forms, with the loblolly bay and red bay, low, almost impenetrable thickets on the borders of pine barren ponds and shallow swamps, and reaches its best development in the interior of Florida.

In North Carolina, where it attains an average height of 12 to 25 feet, it is confined to wet lands or the margins of bodies of fresh or salt water in the eastern part of the Piedmont plateau and in the coastal plain region (fig. 2, p. 34), although not common in the former. In the coastal plain region there are two well-marked forms, dependent upon the quality of the soil; one, a tree of some size, the other rarely over 10 feet in height. With the white cedar it forms a large part of the growth of the "juniper bays." Sometimes after the white cedar has been cut, and usually after these swamps have been burned, thickets of this bay appear.

Seed is borne abundantly every year. The rate of growth is fairly rapid, especially in youth. Trees of all ages sprout freely from the stumps, and shoots usually appear after a tree has been killed by fire.

The oblong leaves, which are pale green above and white beneath, are partly deciduous in this State, especially toward the Piedmont plateau. The pure white fragrant flowers bloom in May, and the dark red fruit is oval, smooth, 2 inches long, and 1½ inches broad. The winter-buds are thickly covered with fine hairs. The tree has a superficial root system.

The wood is soft; light, close-grained, and not strong; light brown in color; the thick sapwood creamy-white. It is occasionally used for broom handles and woodenware. A tonic and diuretic is obtained from the bark.

Magnolia acuminata, Linnæus.

(CUCUMBER TREE.)

A tall slender tree, with furrowed dark brown bark broken into numerous thin scales, reaching a height of 90 and a diameter of 5 feet.

It occurs from western New York through southern Ontario to

southern Illinois, and southward along the Appalachian mountains to southern Alabama and northeastern Mississippi. It grows sparingly in central Kentucky and Tennessee, and in portions of Arkansas, and reaches its best development in the mountains of Tennessee and the Carolinas.

In North Carolina, where it attains an average height of 60 to 80 feet and an average diameter of 3 to 4 feet, it is found on moist, fertile soil in the mountains, and rarely as far to the east of the mountains as Stanly county. (Fig. 1, p. 33.) Seed is produced frequently but seldom abundantly. Though young seedlings are common, many of them are quickly crowded out by other species when the mature trees are removed. Smaller trees sprout from the stump to a limited extent. The rate of growth is rapid.

The rather broad, pointed leaves are bright green above and slightly paler below. The yellowish-green flowers appear towards the latter part of May, and the dark red fruit is oblong, 2½ to 3 inches long by 1 inch broad. The winter-buds are densely covered with silky white hairs.

There are numerous deep lateral roots and, rarely, a taproot.

The wood is soft, satiny, light, not strong, close-grained and durable; light yellow-brown in color; the thin sapwood often nearly white. It is used for water pipes, troughs, flooring and cabinetmaking. This tree has been cut to a large extent in most of the mountain counties except Alleghany, Graham, Mitchell, Clay, Watauga, Yancey, Macon, and Swain.

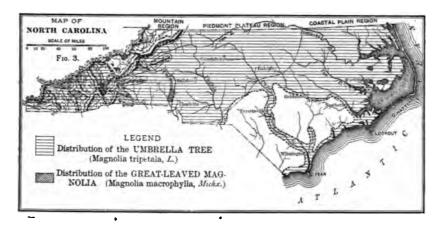
Magnolia macrophylla, Michaux.

(GREAT-LEAVED MAGNOLIA.)

A spreading tree, with thin smooth, light gray bark divided into minute scales, reaching a height of 50 feet and a diameter of 20 inches.

It occurs from the sheltered valleys about the base of the Alleghany mountains of North Carolina and southeastern Kentucky, to middle and western Florida and southern Alabama, and through northern Mississippi to the valley of the Pearl river in Louisiana,

and in central Arkansas, reaching its best development in northern Alabama.



In North Carolina, where it attains a height of 15 to 30 feet, it is found in Lincoln county and to some extent on the French Broad river about Asheville. (Fig., 3.)

It bears seed in large quantities at frequent intervals. Few years pass without some mast. Young seedlings are, however, uncommon in the dense woods. Young trees sprout vigorously when cut.

The leaves are very large, from 20 to 30 inches long and 9 to 10 inches broad, and are clustered at the summit of the branches. The white fragrant flowers are also large, and the bright rose-colored fruit is broadly egg-shaped and 2½ to 3 inches long. The large winter-buds are covered with thick silky white hairs. There are strong lateral and numerous fibrous roots.

The wood is hard, close-grained, light, and not strong; light brown in color; the thick sapwood light yellow. It has no commercial value.

Magnolia tripetala, Linnæus.

(UMBRELLA TREE.)

A small tree, with irregular branches, and smooth, light gray bark marked with numerous small blister-like excrescences, reaching a height of 40 feet and a diameter of 18 inches.

It occurs along the Appalachians from Pennsylvania to central Alabama, and extends in the south Atlantic states nearly to the coast, and westward to middle Kentucky, Tennessee and northwestern Mississippi, and central and southwestern Arkansas. It reaches its best development among the Smoky mountains of Tennessee and North Carolina.

In North Carolina, where it attains a height of 25 to 35 feet, it is found on rich, moist, deep soil throughout the State (fig 3, p. 37), but is nowhere common. The production of seed is frequent and abundant, and seedlings are found wherever a group of mature trees occur. It is easily propagated by shoots from the stump.

The large thin, oblong leaves are clustered at the ends of the branchlets. The conspicuous white flowers, about 5 inches in diameter, appear in May. The bright rose-colored fruit is egg-shaped, 3½ to 4 inches long. The large purple winter-buds are covered with a whitish bloom.

The wood is light, soft, weak, close-grained; brown in color; the heavier sapwood creamy-white. It has no commercial value.

Magnolia fraseri, Walter.

(MOUNTAIN MAGNOLIA. WAHOO. INDIAN BITTERS.)

A slender tree, with regular and wide-spreading or contorted branches, and dark brown, smooth or minutely scaled bark. It reaches a height of 40 feet and a diameter of 18 inches.

It occurs from the mountains of southwestern Virginia to southern Alabama and western Florida, and westward through east Tennessee and northern Mississippi to the valley of the Pearl river. It grows in the valleys of mountain streams, and reaches its best development on the tributaries of the Savannah river, and on the slopes of the Black and Big Smoky mountains. Locally abundant, it is the least widely distributed of the American magnolias.

In this State it occurs in all the counties west of the Blue Ridge and in the western parts of those immediately east of it. It is most common in Ashe, Mitchell, Yancey, Swain, Macon, Transylvania, and Burke counties. (Fig. 2, p. 34.)





YELLOW POPLAR

Seed is produced nearly every year and young seedlings are abundant in the woods. Cattle are very fond of the young plants. Old trees are apt to be hollow at the butt and not uncommonly throughout the trunk.

The large leaves, which are crowded at the end of the branchlets, are smooth, glossy, pointed at the apex and eared at the base. When fully expanded the beautiful cream-colored flowers often measure 8 or 9 inches across. The bright rose-colored fruit is oblong, 4 to 5 inches in length and 1½ to 2 inches broad. The large winter-buds are purple.

The wood is light, soft, weak, close-grained; light brown in color; the thick sapwood creamy-white. It has no commercial value.

Liriodendron tulipifera, Linnæus.

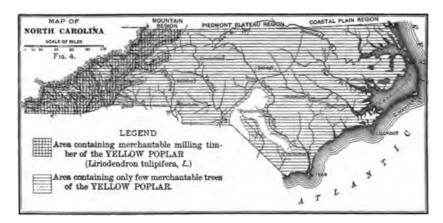
(YELLOW POPLAR. TULIP TREE. WHITEWOOD.)

A large tree of the first commercial value, with a small pyramidal head and brownish-gray bark, reaching a height of 190 and a diameter of 10 feet. The trunk is straight and cylindrical, and in the largest specimens often free from branches to a height of from 80 to 100 feet. (Plate II.)

It occurs from Rhode Island to southwestern Vermont, west to the southern shores of Lake Michigan, and south to northern Florida, southern Alabama and Mississippi, and southeastern Missouri and the adjacent parts of Arkansas; reaching its best development on the tributaries of the Ohio and the lower slopes of the high mountains of North Carolina and Tennessee. It grows habitually in deep, rich, moist soil. Although widely distributed, it is seldom the predominant tree in the forest.

In North Carolina, where it reaches an average height of 60 to 100, and an average diameter of 3 to 4 feet, it is found in all parts of the State. (Fig. 4, p. 40.) In the coastal plain it occurs on fertile soil with sweet gum, black gum, swamp chestnut oak, and water oak, or on peaty soil with the white cedar (juniper).* Throughout this section the trees are apt to be hollow; there is a larger amount of sapwood, and the timber is inferior in quality to that in the middle and western sections. In the Piedmont pla-

teau it is found in ravines and on north hillsides, and is largely used for cabinetmaking and interior woodwork. It is most abundant, attains its greatest size, and forms its finest timber on the



lower mountain slopes in the counties west of the Blue Ridge, where trees 8 to 10 feet in diameter and more than 150 feet high are occasionally found. Throughout this region it is the chief building material.

Trees growing in the open mature seed in abundance nearly every year; forest trees less frequently. Young seedlings are common in the woods and grow rapidly if not heavily shaded. Cattle eagerly devour young plants. Although trees over four feet in diameter are often hollow at the butt, it is uncommon to find the trunk unsound throughout. The quality of the timber is seldom injured by wind shakes.

The leaves are smooth, bright green, 4 lobed, with a deep rounded incision on either side and a broad shallow notch at the apex. The greenish-yellow tulip-shaped flowers appear in May, and the fruit is a narrow, light brown cone. The dark reddish winter buds are covered with a whitish bloom.

The wood is light, soft, brittle, not strong, close and straight-grained, easily worked, and does not split or shrink easily; yellow or brown in color; the thin sapwood creamy-white. The yellow poplar is one of the most useful, as well as one of the largest, of American deciduous trees. It is largely used for construction, inte-

PAPAW. 41

rior finish, boat building, shingles, pumps, and woodenware. A tonic and stimulant is made from the inner bark of the root.

Large quantities of poplar have been sawed in the last few years in eastern North Carolina and used in the manufacture of crates, trucking boxes, etc., but there is still a great deal of timber standing in the counties north of the Neuse river. The merchantable poplar has been cut for the most part in the midland counties. It has been estimated that about 500,000,000 feet of merchantable yellow poplar is standing in the mountains of western North Carolina. This is principally in Ashe, Alleghany, Watauga, Mitchell, Yancey, Haywood, Transylvania, Swain, Graham, and Macon counties. Asheville is the chief seat of the manufacture of poplar lumber; a great deal is manufactured also at Dillsboro, Magnetic City, and Cranberry. Between 12,000,000 and 13,000,000 feet of poplar was sawed for shipment during 1892 in the counties west of the Blue Ridge, and half as much more for local use.

Asimina triloba, Dunal.

(PAPAW.)

A shrub or low tree, with slender spreading branches and dark brown bark marked with large ash-colored blotches, sometimes reaching a height of 40 and a diameter of 1 foot.

It occurs from western New York and the northern shores of Lake (Intario, southward to central and eastern Pennsylvania, westward to southern Michigan, southern Indiana and eastern Kansas, and south to middle Florida and eastern Texas. It is comparatively rare toward the Atlantic seaboard, but very common in the Mississippi valley, reaching its best development along the tributaries of the lower Ohio river and the streams of central and southern Arkansas, where it grows in deep rich and rather moist soil, sometimes to the exclusion of other trees.

In North Carolina it occurs in all parts of the State, and is most abundant in the northeastern and middle sections on somewhat swampy or alluvial lands, where it reaches an average height of from 10 to 15 feet. It is rare in the sand barrens of the south-

eastern part, and altogether wanting in the high mountains. It reproduces itself freely.

The large deciduous leaves are sharp pointed at the apex and contracted at the base. The flowers, which are nearly 2 inches across, are a dull deep red at maturity. The edible fruit is dark brown, almost black, oblong, rounded, 3 to 5 inches long by 1 to 1½ inches broad, and from 6 to 12 ounces in weight.

The pointed winter-buds, & of an inch in length, are covered with rusty brown hairs.

The wood is light, soft, weak, coarse-grained, spongy, with the annual layers clearly marked; light yellow in color; the thin sapwood somewhat lighter.

Gordonia lasianthus, Ellis.

(BAY. BULL BAY. LOBLOLLY BAY.)

A medium size tree, with a narrow, compact head, and dark red-brown scaly bark, broken into regular shallow furrows and parallel rounded ridges. It reaches a height of 75 and a diameter of 2 feet; or is rarely a low shrub.

It occurs from the southern part of Virginia to southern Florida and westward to the valley of the Mississippi river. It is most common in Georgia and eastern Florida, reaching its best development in damp situations.

In North Carolina it occurs in the coast region, where it reaches a height of 50 to 70 feet, and a diameter of 18 to 24 inches.

It bears some seed nearly every year, and full seed years are frequent. Young seedlings are common throughout the range of the species.

The thick dark evergreen leaves are oblong, pointed at the apex and narrowly contracted at the base. The fragrant white flowers appear late in summer; and the fruit is a woody, eggshaped capsule. The narrowly pointed winter-buds are covered with pale silky hairs.

The wood is light, soft, close-grained, not strong or durable;

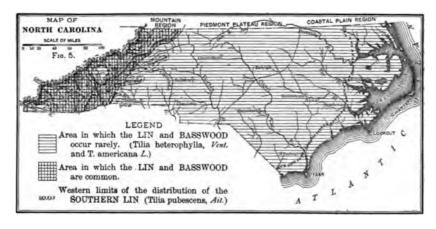
light red in color; the thick sapwood lighter. It is occasionally used for cabinetmaking; and the bark has been locally employed in tanning.

Tilia americana, Linnæus.

(BASSWOOD. LIN. LINDEN.)

A tall tree, with slender, often pendulous branches, and thick, furrowed, light brown bark covered with small, thin scales. It reaches a height of 130 and a diameter of 4 feet.

It occurs in rich soil from northern New Brunswick to the southern shore of Lake Winnipeg, and southward through the Atlantic states to Virginia, along the Appalachian mountains to Alabama and Georgia, and to eastern Texas. It reaches its best develop-



ment along the northern tributaries of the lower Ohio river. One of the most common trees of the northern forest, it formerly occupied exclusively large tracts of the richest land.

In North Carolina, where it attains a height of 50 to 80 and a diameter of 1 to 4 feet, it is found more or less widely distributed in the mountains and in the upper part of the Piedmont plateau along the slopes of mountain spurs and higher hills, while in the lower Piedmont and coastal plain regions it is found sparsely distributed as a smaller tree. (Fig. 5.)

Basswood bears seed very abundantly every 2 or 3 years. The young growth is eagerly devoured by cattle. Specimens over 2

feet in diameter are usually hollow at the butt and not uncommonly through the entire stem. Stumps of trees which have been cut or blown down sprout vigorously. Windfalls are frequent.

The large thick roundish leaves are sharp-toothed, narrow-pointed at the apex, and unevenly heart-shaped at the base. The clusters of small white flowers are borne on an oblong, leaf-like bract, and the fruit is egg shaped, about ‡ inch in length and covered with short gray wool. The dark red winter-buds are stout, egg-shaped, and pointed. The root system is a network of strong lateral roots.

The wood is soft, straight-grained, not durable; light brown in color; the thick sapwood hardly distinguishable. It is largely used for lumber, and, under the name of whitewood, in the manufacture of woodenware and furniture, for carriage-making, and for the inner soles of shoes. It is extensively used for paper pulp, and occasionally the inner bark is made into coarse cordage and matting.

In this State it is not sawed into lumber to any considerable extent, but large numbers of trees are cut in the winter that cattle may feed upon the buds and twigs. It is much prized by apiarists because the clearest honey and whitest comb are made from its flowers.

Tilia pubescens, Aiton.

(SOUTHERN LIN. LINDEN.)

A slender tree, with a large oval crown, slender gray branches, and rough dark bark, reaching a height of 60 and a diameter of 2 feet.

It has been found as far north as Long Island, and it grows in cool, moist situations on the coast of North and South Carolina and Georgia, in northern Florida, Louisiana, and Texas. It is not a common tree.

In North Carolina, where it reaches a height of 50 to 60 feet, it occurs on deep, sandy, fertile soil, usually on the margins of swamps or streams, in the coastal plain region. (Fig. 5, p. 43.) In the Piedmont plateau region it occurs rarely, if at all.

A large proportion of the seed, which is borne frequently and in abundance, is unproductive, and seedlings are uncommon. It sprouts very freely from the stump.

| | • | |
|---|---|--|
| - | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |



LIN OR BASSWOOD

The leaves are covered beneath with a thin, rusty down. The flowers are smaller than in the preceding species, and the dry globose fruit is small, pubescent, and usually one-seeded. The winterbuds, which are covered with a short, fine pubescence, are of a dark reddish-brown color. The Southern lin has numerous usually deeply seated lateral roots.

The wood is similar to that of Tilia americana, of which this tree has been considered a variety.

Tilia heterophylla, Ventenat.

(LIN. LINDEN.)

A tree, with slender branches forming a pyramidal head, and furrowed bark broken into short thin light brown scales, occasionally reaching a height of 60 and a diameter of 4 feet. (Plate III.)

Growing in moist soil, often over limestone rock, it occurs from Pennsylvania southward along the Appalachians to northern Alabama and central Florida, and westward to middle Tennessee, Kentucky, and southern Indiana and Illinois; and reaches its best development on the mountain slopes of eastern Tennessee. It is not common.

In this State, where it reaches an average height of 40 feet and an average diameter of 12 to 18 inches, it is most common in the mountains, (fig. 5, p. 43), and occurs sparingly in the Piedmont plateau and coastal plain. It is much more abundant in North Carolina than Tilia americana, and bears seed more frequently and generally in greater quantity. It is readily propagated by shoots. Unless protected the low growth is almost immediately eaten by cattle.

The linden borer, Saperda vestita, Say, bores into the sapwood of the standing tree.

The leaves are generally larger than those of Tilia americana, and are covered on the lower side with a silvery white down. The flowers appear earlier in the spring, and the round fruit, \(\frac{3}{2}\) inch in diameter, is covered with short gray down. The egg-shaped winter-buds are bright red, covered with a whitish bloom.

The wood is soft, light, straight-grained, not durable; light brown in color; the thin sapwood hardly distinguishable. Commercially it is not distinguished from the wood of Tilia americana.

Ilex opaca, Aiton.

(HOLLY.)

A small tree, with short, slender branches, which form a pyramidal head, and roughened light gray bark, reaching a height of 50 and a diameter of 4 feet.

At the north it grows in dry gravelly soil; at the south, in rich, moist situations. It occurs from Massachusetts to Florida; in the valley of the Mississippi from southern Indiana to the gulf of Mexico; and through Missouri, Arkansas and Louisiana to eastern Texas. It is common south of the Hudson in fertile bottom lands, except in the Appalachian region and just west of it, where it is exceedingly rare; and reaches its best development in southern Arkansas and eastern Texas.

In this State, where it grows to an average height of 30 feet, and an average diameter of 12 inches, it is common except in the mountains. Specimens growing in the coast region are much larger than those found further inland.

Fertile trees generally bear seed every year, although not with uniform abundance, and young growth is common in open spots. Old trees do not sprout from the stump as readily as young ones.

The oval evergreen leaves are thick, leathery and armed with spiny teeth. The flowers are small but conspicuous from their number. The round fruit is about ‡ inch in diameter, dull red or rarely yellow in color, and remains on the tree during the winter. The winter-buds are short, blunt or pointed, the narrow-pointed scales slightly hairy on the margins. The holly has a tap-root and numerous lateral roots.

The wood is light, tough, not strong, very close-grained; nearly white in color; the thick sapwood somewhat lighter. It is easily worked, takes a beautiful polish and is much used for cabinet-making, interior finish, and turning.

The merchantable holly has been largely cut in the northeastern counties; trees large enough for commercial use still remain, however, scattered through counties on the coast.

Cyrilla racemiflora, Linnæus.

(IRONWOOD. LEATHER WOOD. BOXWOOD.)

A slender tree, with numerous wide spreading branches, and bright red-brown scaly bark, reaching a height of 35 feet and a diameter of 14 inches; or often a broad bush.

It occurs in various situations from North Carolina southward near the coast to middle Florida, and westward to eastern Texas, reaching its best development on the coast of the gulf of Mexico.

In this State it is found usually along streams and swamps from Hertford county southward, its western limits passing through Halifax, Wake, and Anson counties.

It usually produces seed very abundantly every second year, and young trees and seedlings are common on the borders of swamps and pine barren ponds. Trees are frequently hollow through the entire stem, even when quite young, generally as the result of a broken branch.

The small thick oblong leaves are partly evergreen in the extreme eastern part of the State. The numerous whitish flowers appear in slender racemes in the early part of summer, and the very small fruit is broadly egg-shaped. The narrow-pointed winterbuds are covered with chestnut-brown scales. The roots are lateral and superficial.

The wood is heavy, hard, weak, close-grained; light brown in color; the sapwood a little lighter; and is not used in North Carolina.

Aesculus octandra, Marshall.

(BUCKEYE. SWEET BUCKEYE.)

A large straight tree, with small, rather pendulous branches

and dark brown scaly bark, reaching a height of 90 and a diameter of 4 feet, or towards its southern or southwestern limit reduced to a low shrub.

It grows in deep fertile soil from Pennsylvania southward along the Alleghanies to northern Georgia and Alabama, and westward to southern Iowa and Indian Territory and western Texas, reaching its greatest development in the Alleghany mountains of Tennessee and North Carolina.

In this State it occurs as a tree in the mountains, and in the Piedmont plateau, where it is reduced to a mere shrub.

Trees growing in the open produce seed nearly every year; forest trees less frequently. Seedlings are common except in deep shade, especially in the Piedmont plateau. Young trees grow rapidly if sufficiently exposed to the light.

The buckeye stem-borers, Steganoptycha claypoleana, Fernald, and Proteoteras æsculana, Riley, penetrate the leaf-stems and twigs. Trees over 2 feet in diameter, particularly in very damp situations, are apt to be hollow or affected with dry rot.

The leaves are composed of 5 to 7 elliptical, pointed, sharply toothed leaflets. The yellowish flowers appear late in spring in large erect clusters, and the fruit is 2 or 3 inches long, with the reddish-brown seeds 1½ to 2 inches broad. The winter-buds are large and scaly.

The wood is light, soft, compact, and difficult to split; creamy-white in color; the sapwood hardly distinguishable. Although one of the commonest trees in the high mountains, it has but few uses; the softness of the wood and the fact that it decays rapidly when exposed to the weather or in contact with the soil, excludes it from construction. It is sometimes used with linden for ceiling and other interior work.

Acer spicatum, Lamarck.

(MOUNTAIN MAPLE. SWAMP DOGWOOD.)

A small bushy tree, with slender upright branches and reddishbrown bark, reaching a height of 30 feet and a diameter of 8 inches. It occurs in the shade of other trees, from the valley of the St. Lawrence westward to northern Minnesota and the Saskatchewan region, and southward to northern Georgia; reaching its best development in the mountains of North Carolina and Tennessee.

In this State, where it is usually a shrub 6 to 10 feet high, it is confined to cold, damp places in the high mountains. It bears seed about every third year; seedlings are not common; but young sprouts are very abundant around old trees, which latter are usually hollow.

The leaves are 3 or rarely 5-lobed, coarsely toothed and downy beneath. The greenish yellow flowers are in erect, slender clusters. The fruit is bright red in July, turning brown late in the autumn, and is rather more than an inch across. The winter-buds are sharply pointed. The root system is superficial.

The wood is light, soft, close grained, compact; light brown in color; the sapwood being much lighter. The mountain maple does not grow large enough for commercial use.

Acer pennsylvanicum, Linnæus.

(STRIPED MAPLE. SWAMP DOGWOOD. DEERWOOD.)

A small tree, with slender, upright branches, and roughened reddish-brown bark. It reaches a height of 40 feet and a diameter of 10 inches, but is often much smaller, and shabby in habit.

It occurs from the valley of the Saguenay river westward to northeastern Minnesota, and southward to northern Georgia. It is common in the northern Atlantic states, but reaches its best development in the mountains of Tennessee and the Carolinas.

In this State it is confined to the coldest and dampest parts of the high mountains. Seed is produced annually or once in two years. Small trees are very sensitive to fire, but when burned sprout readily from the stump.

The leaves are large, 3-lobed at the end, and sharply toothed. They are much eaten by cattle. The greenish flowers occur in loose, drooping racemes, and the winged fruit is smooth, $\frac{3}{4}$ inch in length. The bright red winter-buds are stalked.

The wood is light, soft, and close-grained; light brown in color;

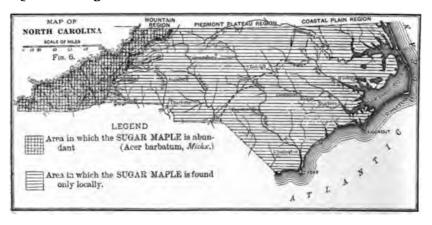
the thick sapwood of 30 to 40 layers of annual growth, still lighter. It is not used in North Carolina.

Acer barbatum, Michaux.*

(SUGAR MAPLE. SUGAR-TREE. ROCK MAPLE.)

A large tree of great commercial value, with a broad round top when old, and light gray-brown deeply furrowed bark, reaching a height of 120 and a diameter of 4 feet. (Plate IV.)

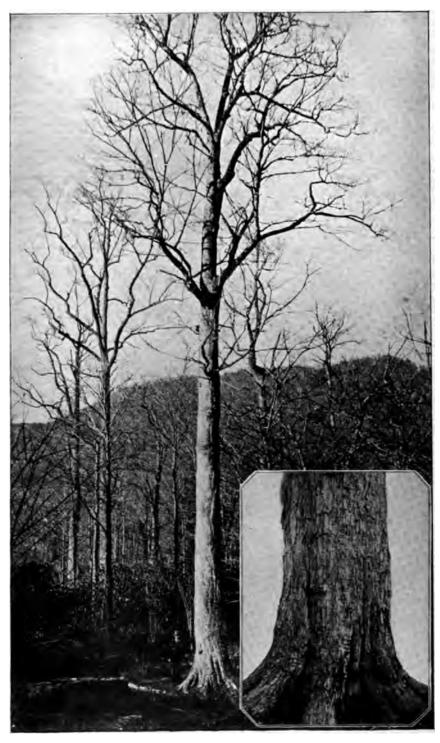
It grows in rich woods, often forming extensive forests, and is most abundant in the mountains. It occurs from southern Newfoundland to the Lake of the Woods, southward to northern Alabama and western Florida, and westward to Minnesota, eastern Nebraska, Kansas and Texas; reaching its best development in the region of the great lakes.



It occurs throughout this State, growing to an average height of from 50 to 80 feet and a diameter of 2 to 3 feet, but is most common in the mountains. It is a small tree in the Piedmont plateau and reduced to a mere shrub in the coastal plain region, where it is confined to borders of streams and swamps. (Fig. 6.)

The sugar maple bears seed about every third or fourth year. Seedlings are very abundant in the woods, and bear dense shade remarkably well; they spring up quickly in thinned woods, also, and where lumbering has been in progress.

*Acer saccharinum, Wagn.



SUGAR MAPLE

| • | | | |
|---|--|--|--|
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

Glycobius speciosus, Say, a borer destroys the trees by girdling them or penetrating the wood, and young specimens are killed by a timber beetle, Corthylus punctatissimus, Zimm., which enters and mines the stem at or near the surface of the ground.

The leaves are 3 to 5-lobed, with rounded notches, heart-shaped at the base, smooth above, and glaucous beneath. The greenish-yellow flowers occur in umbel-like clusters, appearing with the leaves in the spring. The winged fruit is an inch in length. The purple winter-buds are pointed, ‡ inch in length. The sugar maple has a tap-root and numerous strong lateral roots.

The wood is heavy, hard, strong, close-grained, tough, and takes a good polish. The heartwood is light brown; the thin sapwood, of 30 or 40 layers of annual growth, somewhat lighter. It is more valuable than the wood of any other American maple, and is largely used as fuel, for interior finish, furniture, and turnery, in ship-building, for the handles of tools, saddle-trees, shoe-lasts, shoe-pegs. Curled and bird's-eye maple are highly prized for cabinet work. Maple sugar is produced chiefly from this tree, and its ashes make a valuable fertilizer.

Acer saccharinum, Linnæus.*

(SILVER MAPLE. MAPLE. SOFT MAPLE.)

A large tree, with upright main branches and pendulous branchlets, and reddish-brown scaly bark, reaching a height of 120 and a diameter of 4 feet.

It grows in rich soil, and is most common west of the Alleghany mountains. It occurs from New Brunswick to Ontario, southward to western Florida, westward to eastern Dakota, eastern Nebraska, the valley of the Blue river, Kansas and the Indian Territory, reaching its best development in the basin of the lower Ohio river.

In this State, where it is not very common, it occurs in the upper part of the Piedmont plateau and in the mountains along streams and in cool situations, and attains a height of 30 to 50 and a diameter of 1 to 2 feet.

*Acer dasycarpum, Ehrh.

Young growth is frequent on moist land, where the forest cover is light, and in old fields. It produces seed at irregular intervals, and for the most part, not abundantly. Trees under a foot in diameter sprout freely from the stump. Very large specimens are apt to be hollow.

The deeply cut 5-lobed leaves are pale green above and silvery white beneath. The crowded clusters of greenish-yellow flowers appear before the leaves in early spring, and the pale chestnut-brown winged fruit is prominently netted-veined, and from 1½ to 3 inches in length. The short thick winter-buds are covered with bright red scales. The silver maple has a small tap-root and numerous strong lateral roots.

The wood is hard, strong, close-grained, compact, easily worked, and rather brittle; faintly tinged with brown, with thick sapwood composed of 40 to 50 layers of annual growth. It is sometimes used for cheap furniture and flooring. Maple sugar is occasionally made from this tree.

Acer rubrum, Linnaus.

(RED MAPLE. SWAMP MAPLE. MAPLE.)

A slender tree, with upright branches and dark gray flaky bark, reaching a height of 120 and a diameter of 4½ feet.

It grows in low, moist situations, from Quebec and the Lake of the Woods southward to the Indian river, Florida, and west to the eastern parts of Dakota, Nebraska, Indian Territory, and Texas; and reaches its best development on the lower Ohio and its tributaries.

In this State it occurs in swamps and low grounds, from the coast to the mountains, but is most abundant in the coastal plain.

There is a large production of seed about every second year; young trees are always common in damp woods and along streams. Old trees sprout from the stump less rapidly than younger ones.

The leaves are smaller and not so deeply cleft as those of the silver maple. The flowers, which appear early in spring, are bright scarlet or, less commonly, dull yellowish-red. The winged fruit is scarlet, dark red or brown, ½ to 1 inch in length; it ripens

early in summer and sprouts immediately on falling to the ground. The short winter-buds are blunt and covered with thick dark red scales. The red maple has numerous strong lateral roots.

The wood is very heavy, close-grained, easily worked, and not very strong. It is light brown in color; the thick sapwood, somewhat lighter. But little has been cut in North Carolina. It is employed mainly for interior finish, furniture, gunstocks and similar uses. Maple sugar is occasionally made from this species, the sap being mixed with that of the sugar maple; and there does not appear to be any marked difference between the sap from the two species, except that that from the red maple contains a smaller per cent. of sugar.

Acer negundo, Linnæus.*

(BOXELDER. ASHLEAF MAPLE.)

A tree, with a short trunk, and light gray or brown, deeply furrowed bark, reaching a height of 70 and a diameter of 4 feet.

It ranges from Vermont to Florida; extending northwest and west to Lake Winnipeg, and the eastern slopes of the Rocky mountains; and southward to Texas, New Mexico and Arizona. It grows on the banks of streams and lakes and the borders of swamps, reaching its best development in the valleys of the tributaries of the lower Ohio river. In good soil it grows rapidly.

In North Carolina it is rare in the coastal plain region, but common in the Piedmont plateau and west to the mountains, attaining an average height of 15 to 25 feet.

The leaves are composed of from 3 to 5 or rarely, sparingly toothed leaflets. The yellowish-green flowers occur in drooping clusters, usually appearing before the leaves; the sterile and fertile flowers on separate trees. The winged fruit is 1½ to nearly 2 inches long, with the thin netted-veined wings diverging at a very sharp angle. The winter-bads are covered with pale down; the lateral bads blunt, the terminal bad acute. The light, soft, weak, close-grained wood is creamy-white, with a thick and hardly distinguishable sapwood. It is sometimes used for interior finish,

^{*} Negundo aceroides, Moench.

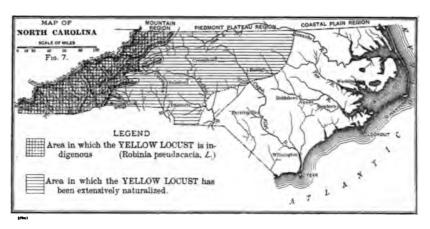
cheap furniture, woodenware, cooperage and paper pulp. Maple sugar is occasionally made from this species.

Robinia pseudacacia, Linnæus.

(LOCUST. BLACK LOCUST. YELLOW LOCUST.)

A slender tree, with erect brittle branches forming an oblong head, and deeply furrowed dark brown bark. It reaches a height of 80 and a diameter of 4 feet.

It occurs from Pennsylvania to Georgia along the Appalachian mountains, growing with hickory, black walnut, ash, white oak, and the chestnut; and reaches its best development on the western slopes of the mountains in West Virginia. It has been naturalized in most of the states east of the Rocky mountains.



In this State it occurs on the lower ridges of the mountains, and probably for some distance east of the Blue Ridge. (Fig. 7.)

Forest trees bear seed only once in three or four years. In the open the production of seed is more frequent and seedlings, which are short-lived in the shade, more common. The locust is readily propagated by root suckers, and trees as large as one foot in diameter sprout from the stump. The growth is rapid in youth; in mature trees much slower. When cut in the forest, it is usually succeeded by oaks and chestnut. Old trees are apt to be hollow at the butt, and frequently in the upper part of the stem, from the entrance of water where the brittle limbs have been broken off.

A borer, Cyllene robiniæ, Forster, destroys the value of large trees or kills them entirely, and bark beetles often kill the young plants. The timber is also attacked by the larvæ of Xylesthia clemensella, Chamb.

The leaves consist of from 7 to 19 thin ovate leaflets. The white flowers appear in April in large drooping clusters, and the bright red-brown fruit is a stout pod 3 to 4 inches long. The minute naked winter-buds are inconspicuous. The locust has numerous superficial lateral roots.

The wood is heavy, hard, close-grained, and very durable in contact with the soil; brown or light green in color; the very thin sapwood, of 2 to 3 layers of annual growth, pale yellow. It is extensively used in ship-building and for treenails, construction, posts, and other purposes where durability in contact with the ground is desired. It is excellent fuel, and is altogether one of the most valuable timbers of the American forest. The bark of the root is tonic, purgative, and emetic.

Large quantities of locust have been cut in Jackson, Macon, Swain, and Rutherford counties.

Robinia viscosa, Ventenat.

(CLAMMY LOCUST.) .

A small tree, with slender spreading branches and smooth dark brown bark, reaching a height of 40 feet and a diameter of 12 inches.

It occurs in the high mountains of the Carolinas, and has become extensively naturalized east of the Mississippi. In this State it is found on Buzzard ridge in Macon county, growing as a shrub only a few feet high. It has not been seen growing wild in any other locality since the time of Michaux.

The twigs and leaf-stalks are covered with a sticky substance. The rose-colored flowers are in short rather compact clusters and the fruit is a pod 2 to $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches in length. The minute winterbuds are covered up in the scars of the leaves of the previous season.

The wood is heavy, hard, close-grained, and brown in color; the thin sapwood light yellow.

Cladrastis lutea, Koch.

(YELLOW WOOD. VIRGILIA. CHITTAM.)

A tree, with branching trunk, wide-spread pendulous branches, and smooth silvery gray or light brown bark, reaching a height of 60 and a diameter of 4 feet.

It occurs in central Kentucky, central Tennessee, on the mountains of eastern Tennessee and in North Carolina, and is one of the rarest and most local trees of eastern North America. It grows generally in rich soil, and reaches its best development near Nashville, Tenn.

In this State, where it is found in Swain, Clay, Macon, and Cherokee counties, it has an average diameter of 18 inches and a height of about 40 feet.

Large numbers of pods are borne about every second year, but they contain many abortive seeds. Seedlings are common near old trees, when cattle are excluded. Numerous sprouts come up around old trees and about live stumps.

In Clay county a large part of the foliage of yellow wood is often destroyed in the early fall by the leaf miner insect.

The leaves are composed of 7 to 11 broadly oval entire leaflets placed alternately along the leaf stalks. The white flowers are borne in long terminal drooping racemes. The fruit is a pod 1½ to 4 inches in length. The lustrous brown downy winter-buds are in fours, superposed, and crowded together to form a cone. The superficial lateral roots are long and very tough.

The wood is heavy, very hard, strong and close-grained; bright clear yellow in color; the thin sapwood almost white. It takes a good polish, is used for fuel and gunstocks, and yields a clear yellow dye.

Gleditschia triacanthos, Linnæus.

(HONEY LOCUST.)

A large tree, with slender spreading branches and dark rough deeply fissured bark, reaching a height of 140 and a diameter of 6 feet.

It occurs from Pennsylvania westward to eastern Nebraska, Kansas, and Indian Territory, southward to northern Alabama, Mississippi, and Texas, reaching its best development in southern Indiana and Illinois. It has been naturalized east of the Alleghany mountains, growing in moist fertile soil, or less commonly on dry gravelly hills.

The honey locust is scarcely known as a forest tree in North Corolina. Specimens of it, however, are found commonly on farms and along fences in the Piedmont plateau, and sparingly in the other sections.

It bears some seed every year and a large amount every third year. Seedlings, which are frequently found on dry ground under old trees, grow very rapidly. Sprouts are common about young specimens and appear quickly around the stumps of felled trees.

The leaves consist of numerous small, oblong, remotely toothed leaflets, and are sometimes doubly pinnate. The inconspicuous greenish flowers are in small spikes, and the fruit is a dark brown pod, often 10 to 18 inches in length. The minute winter-buds occur three or four together. Very sharp and rigid three-forked or simple spines, 3 to 4 inches long, and bright chestnut-brown in color, are very plentiful on some individuals and nearly or quite wanting in others. The honey locust has long superficial roots.

The wood is hard, strong, coarse-grained, and very durable in contact with the ground; red or bright red brown in color; the sapwood, of 10 to 12 layers of annual growth, thin and pale. It is largely-used for fencing, for the hubs of wheels, and somewhat in construction.

Cercis canadensis, Linnæus.

(REDBUD. JUDAS TREE.)

A small tree, with a short trunk, bright red-brown furrowed bark, and smooth light brown or gray branches, reaching a height of 50 feet and a diameter of 12 inches.

It is found from New Jersey to Florida, Alabama and Mississippi, Indian Territory, Louisiana and Texas, growing on the bor-

ders of swamps and in rich bottom lands; and it reaches its best development in southern Arkansas, Indian Territory, and eastern Texas.

In North Carolina, where it attains a height of 15 to 25 feet, it occurs in the coastal plain and Piedmont plateau regions.

The dark green glossy leaves are broadly ovate, pointed at the apex, and truncate or heart-shaped at the base. The conspicuous bright purplish-red flowers are in clusters along the branches, and appear before or with the leaves in early spring. The fruit is an oblong compressed many-seeded pod, from $2\frac{1}{2}$ to $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches long. The winter-buds are blunt and chestnut-brown in color.

The wood is rather coarse-grained, heavy, hard, and not very strong. Its color is a rich dark brown, tinged with red; the thin sapwood lighter.

Prunus pennsylvanica, Linnæus.

(WILD RED CHERRY. FIRE CHERRY. BIRD CHERRY. PERUVIAN.)

A small tree, with slender branches, a narrow head and smooth reddish-brown, or in old trees, dark red-brown scaly bark. It reaches a height of 30 to 40 feet and a diameter of 12 to 18 inches; but at its northern and western limits it is a low shrub.

It occurs from Newfoundland to British Columbia, south through the northern states to Pennsylvania, Michigan, Illinois, and Iowa, on the eastern slopes of the Rocky mountains in Colorado, and along the Alleghany mountains of North Carolina and Tennessee; and reaches its best development on moist, rather rich soil, in the Big Smoky mountains of Tennessee. It often takes possession of ground which has been cleared by fire.

In North Carolina it is confined to damp situations on the slopes of high mountains, above an elevation of 3,500 feet. (Fig 8, p. 59)

It bears seed in great abundance, and usually every year. After spruce or Carolina balsam, or sometimes beech and maple forests, have been burned, a growth of fire cherry often springs up, but it is apt to be replaced by the original growth in about torty years, which is the average length of life for this tree.

The oblong, sharply pointed leaves are finely toothed, shining





A GROUP OF WILD CHERRY TREES

green and smooth on both sides. The white flowers appear late in the spring in numerous clusters, and the fruit is small, round and bright red.

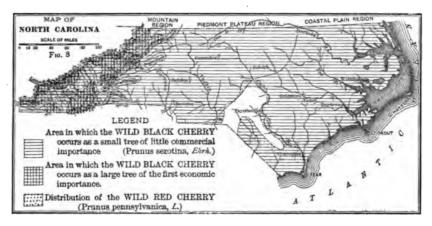
The light, soft, close-grained compact wood is light brown in color; the sapwood a clear yellow.

Prunus serotina, Ehrhardt.

(WILD BLACK CHERRY.)

A tree of the first commercial importance, with small horizontal branches and dark red-brown scaly bark, reaching a height of 100 feet and a diameter of 5 feet. (Plate V.)

It occurs from Nova Scotia to Tampa Bay in Florida, and westward to the Missouri river in Dakota, eastern Nebraska and Kansas, Indian Territory and Texas, and is found also in southern New Mexico and Arizona, and in parts of Mexico, Central and South America. It reaches its best devolopment on the high slopes of the Alleghany mountains. It was once common in all the Appalachian region, growing with the white oak, the white ash, the green ash, the sugar maple, the yellow buckeye, the hickories and the black birch.



In this State, where it attains an average height of 60 to 80 and a diameter of 2 to 3 feet, it occurs through all parts of the State, but is less common in the coastal plain, where the soil and climate are not so favorable to its growth. It reaches its best dimensions on the rich cool slopes of the mountains. (Fig. 8.)

Forest trees bear fruit abundantly about every third or fourth year; trees growing in the open more frequently. Seedlings are common in moist, rather open situations. In the higher mountains, where only it grows large enough to be of economic importance, trees over three feet in diameter are apt to be hollow or redhearted. Old trees are often shaky. After lumbering, the black cherry is frequently followed by birch, ash, spruce, and maple.

Clisiocampa americana, Stretch, the tent caterpillar, destroys the young trees by denuding them of their foliage.

The leaves are oblong, smooth, taper-pointed, and finely-serrate with short incurved teeth. The flowers appear in late spring in long, slender, drooping racemes; and the fruit is bitter, nearly black when ripe, and from \(\frac{1}{3}\) to \(\frac{1}{2}\) inch in diameter. The blunt or pointed winter-buds are bright chestnut-brown.

The wood is light, strong, rather hard, with a close straight grain; light brown or red in color; the thin sapwood, of 10 or 12 layers of annual growth, yellow. It takes a beautiful polish, and no other North American wood is more suitable for cabinet-making and fine interior finish. The largest and best trees in all parts of the country have already been cut. The bark yields tonics and sedatives.

There are only a few bodies of fine trees still standing in western North Carolina. They are situated principally in Mitchell, Yancey, Swain and Macon counties.

Amelanchier canadensis, Medicus

(SERVICE TREE. SHAD BUSH. WILD CURRANT.)

A small tree, with a tall trunk, small spreading branches, and pale red-brown scaly bark, reaching a height of 50 feet and a diameter of 18 inches.

It occurs from Newfoundland along the shores of the Great Lakes, southward to northern Florida, and westward to Minnesota, eastern Nebraska, eastern Kansas, Louisiana, and southern Arkansas; reaching its best development in the mountains of North Carolina and Tennessee.

In the coastal plain region of North Carolina it is hardly more than a shrub, and is known as wild current. It reaches its largest size on the shaded slopes of the mountains, where it is called service tree.

About every third year this tree bears fruit in large quantities; during intermediate years, sparingly or not at all. Seedlings are common in moist and shady woods.

The leaves are small, finely toothed, acute at the apex and rounded or heart-shaped at the base. The white flowers appear in drooping racemes in early spring. The sweet edible rounded fruit is dark purple when ripe, and from \(\frac{1}{2}\) to \(\frac{1}{2}\) inch in diameter. The pale chestnut-brown pointed winter-buds, \(\frac{1}{4}\) inch long, are covered with slightly hairy scales. The service tree has numerous superficial lateral roots.

The wood is heavy, exceedingly hard, strong and close-grained; dark brown in color; the thick sapwood, of 40 to 50 layers of annual growth, lighter. It takes a good polish, and is occasionally used for the handles of tools.

In North Carolina the wood has few uses; large numbers of trees, however, are cut every year for the fruit.

Liquidambar styraciflua, Linnæus.

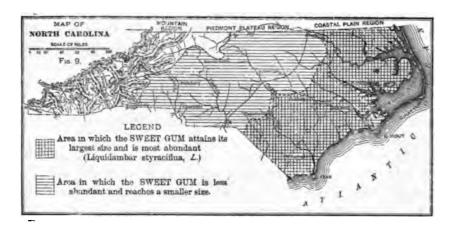
(SWEET GUM. RED GUM.)

A large tree, with straight cylindrical trunk, dark deeply furrowed bark, and branches often winged with corky ridges. It reaches a height of 140 and a diameter of 5 to 6 feet.

It occurs from Connecticut to Missouri, south to Central Florida and westward, through Arkansas and Indian Territory, to Texas, reaching its best development in the bottom lands of the Mississippi basin. It is common in low wet situations.

In this State, where it attains an average height of about 60 and an average diameter of 2 to 3 feet, it is common in moist situations from the coast to the mountains. (Fig. 9, p. 62.) West of the Blue Ridge it is sometimes found south of the French Broad river. It is in the coastal plain that it attains its largest dimensions, growing frequently in deep swamps with the black gum and cypress, to a diameter of 5 or 6 feet and height of one hundred feet.

Sweet gum bears fruit annually or every other year, but much of the seed is abortive. Young seedlings are common on damp hillsides and bottom lands that have been cleared, they are also



frequent in damp pine woods, where, however, they seldom develop into large trees. After sweet gum has been cut a thick growth of the same species usually springs up together with yellow poplar, white oak and maple. The largest specimens are frequently hollow at the butt. This tree sprouts freely from the stump.

The smooth shining leaves are deeply 5 to 7-cleft with sharp pointed finely toothed divisions. The inconspicuous flowers occur in early spring. The fruit is a long stalked, globular, dry, rough head, hanging on the tree through the winter. The acute ovate winter-buds are dark brown in color.

The sweet gum has a very large and long tap-root, as well as long superficial roots.

The wood is heavy, hard, not strong, rather tough, close-grained, and liable to warp and shrink; bright brown in color; the sapwood nearly white. It takes a good polish and is used for flooring, clapboards, cabinet work, vencering, barrels, and street paving. The balsamic exudation is sometimes employed in cases of catarrh and as an ointment.

Only an inconsiderable quantity has been sawed in the State.

but it is now being largely used for the manufacture of crates baskets, veneering, barrels, etc.

Cornus florida, Linnaus.

(DOGWOOD. FLOWERING DOGWOOD. BOXWOOD.)

A small tree, with flattened spreading top and rough blackish bark, reaching a height of 40 feet and a diameter of 18 inches.

It is common in rich woods from southern New England west to southern Ontario, and south to Florida and eastern Texas.

In this State, where it reaches an average height of 12 to 20 feet, it occurs throughout. In the coastal plain it forms a lower story under the long-leaf pine. In the Piedmont plateau and mountain region it grows under oaks, hickories and yellow poplar.

Dogwood generally bears fruit abundantly every year, and young seedlings are common in open woods, and in mixed coppice woods on moist soil. When once started it bears a deep shade. The acute ovate leaves are opposite and often somewhat clustered toward the ends of the branchlets. The flowers occur in a head surrounded by 4 white bracts, which make the cluster appear like a single large flower, and the bright red oval fruit grows in bunches. The awl-shaped leaf-buds, as well as the twigs, are purplish and covered with a whitish bloom. The rounded flattened grayish-brown flower-buds replace the terminal buds on the fertile branches. The dogwood has numerous long lateral roots.

The wood is hard, heavy, strong, close-grained, and tough; brown in color; the sapwood lighter. It takes a beautiful polish, and is extensively used for turnery, wood engraving, the bearings of machinery, the hubs of wheels, barrel hoops, shuttles, spindles, etc. The bark yields a tonic.

Large quantities have been cut in the eastern and central sections of the State, along the railroads, and manufactured into spindle, shuttle, and shoe-last blocks, but the supply has by no means been exhausted.

Nyssa sylvatica, Marshall.

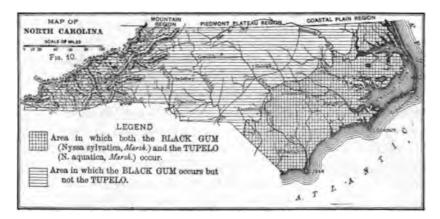
(BLACK GUM. SOUR GUM.)

A large tree, with horizontal branches and short spur-like lateral

branchlets, reaching a height of 100 and a diameter of 5 feet. The bark is deeply cut, light brown, often tinged with red, or, as in some large specimens in the coastal plain region of this State, scaly or nearly smooth, dark brown or black.

It occurs from Maine and Vermont to central Michigan, and southward to Tampa bay, Florida, and the Brazos river, Texas.

In North Carolina, where it has an average height of 50 to 60 feet and an average diameter of about 2 feet, it occurs in the swamps and wet lands of the coastal plain and Piedmont plateau,



and in the mountains up to an elevation of 3,000 feet, along dry ridges with red and white eaks and chestnut. In the eastern sections, with the sweet gum and water ash, it forms a large part of the growth of the deeper swamps, and there reaches its largest size within the State. (Fig. 10.)

It produces seed plentifully once in two or three years, and young seedlings appear in moist open woods and on cypress lands after lumbering. Large trees are apt to be hollow at the butt and frequently through the whole stem. The black gum sprouts readily from the stump.

The rather thick shining leaves are oblong, pointed and usually entire. The greenish flowers, which appear after the leaves in spring, are inconspicuous, and the bluish-black oval fruit is about ½-inch long. The dark brown conical buds are slightly thicker than the smooth flexible twigs. The black gum has deeply seated lateral and numerous superficial roots.

The wood is heavy, strong, soft, very tough, and hard to split and work, inclined to check, and not durable in contact with the soil; light yellow or nearly white in color; the thick sapwood lighter, often hardly distinguishable. It is used for the hubs of wheels, rollers in glass factories, ox yokes, and piles.

Very little has been cut in this State for lumber. In the last few years, however, it has been coming into use as a cheap material for boxes and trucking barrels.

Nyssa aquatica, Marshall.

(TUPELO GUM.)

A large tree, with dark brown, deeply furrowed, or, in old specimens, scaly, smoothish bark, reaching a height of 100 and a diameter of 4 feet.

It occurs from southern Virginia to Georgia, through the Gulf states to Texas, and through Arkansas and southern Missouri to Illinois; reaching its best development in the cypress swamps of western Louisiana and southeastern Texas.

In this State it is confined to the deep swamps of the coastal plain, where it grows with cypress, water ash and black gum, attaining a height of 80 and a diameter of 4 feet above the trumpet-shaped base. (Fig. 10, p. 64.)

Seed years are frequent. Young trees are common along moist, deep swamps, in open woods, and in spots where the cypress has been removed. The large swollen butt, 8 to 15 feet in diameter, is usually hollow, and there is frequently also a hollow in the top of the stem, where a branch has been broken off. The middle of the trunk is nearly always sound.

The leaves are larger than in the preceding species, dark green and smooth above and somewhat downy below. The yellowish-green flowers appear in March and April. The oblong fruit is dark purple and an inch or more in length. The smooth light brown terminal buds are nearly round, the lateral buds minute. The twigs are slightly angular, light brown and smooth, and much thicker than those of the black gum. There are numerous lateral and superficial roots.

The wood is light, soft, not strong, close-grained, compact, unwedgeable, and light brown or nearly white in color. It is used for turning, woodenware, broomhandles, and wooden shoes. The roots are sometimes used as a substitute for cork for net floats. The wood has only a few local uses in North Carolina.

Oxydendron arboreum, De Candolle.

(SOURWOOD. SORREL TREE.)

A small tree, with pendulous branches and deeply furrowed gray-brown bark, reaching a height of 60 feet and a diameter of 20 inches.

It grows usually in rather dry soil, and occurs from western Pennsylvania along the Alleghany mountains to western Florida and Mobile bay, westward to middle Tennessee, and through the northern portions of the Gulf states to western Louisiana. It attains its best development in eastern Tennessee.

In North Carolina, where it reaches a height of 50 to 60 feet and a diameter of 12 to .15 inches, it is rare (and usually a shrub) in the coastal plain, not uncommon in the Piedmont plateau, and most abundant in the lower parts of the mountains. It reaches its largest size on the eastern slopes of the Blue Ridge.

The sourwood bears seed prolifically and for the most part every year. Young seedlings are usually very abundant, especially in rather dry woods which have been thinned. Sprouts grow readily from the stump, but do not attain a very large size. Trees over 10 inches in diameter are usually hollow.

The small rounded fruit is in large loose clusters. The oblong pointed leaves are acid, whence the name. The flowers and fruit occur in loose drooping panicles, 7 to 8 inches long. The red winter-buds are very small, and the flexible twigs are mahogany-red in color. The sourwood has numerous lateral roots. This tree is especially prized on account of the delicious transparent honey made from the flowers.

The wood is heavy, hard, very close-grained, compact, brown in color; the sapwood somewhat lighter. It takes a beautiful

polish, and is used for the handles of tools, bearings of machinery, etc.

Kalmia latifolia, Linnæus.

(LAUREL. IVY. WICKY.)

A small evergreen tree, with short crooked branches, and dark reddish-brown furrowed bark, the narrow ridges separating into long scales. It reaches a height of 40 feet and a diameter of 20 inches.

It occurs in rich woodlands from New Brunswick and Lake Erie to western Florida, and through the Gulf states to western Louisiana and the valley of the Red river, Arkansas; reaching its best development in the southern Alleghany mountains, where it often forms dense impenetrable thickets.

In this State, where it grows to an average height of 10 to 15 feet, it is most abundant in the mountains, but occurs in the Piedmont plateau, and extends into the coastal plain region.

The laurel bears seed every year, and for the most part in abundance. Young seedlings, in all stages of growth, are common in moist open places in the mountain region, and above 3,000 feet on rather dry soil. The fires which are frequent on these dry ridges are very destructive to both young and old plants, but the laurel sprouts so freely from the stump that it often takes exclusive possession of areas subject to repeated fires.

The evergreen leaves are thick, smooth, entire, acute at the apex and contracted at the base. The white or pink flowers are produced in conspicuous clusters at the ends of the branches, and the rounded fruit set with sticky hairs is ripe in September. The winter-buds are small, oblong, and greenish. The roots consist of many large knots and burls, from which strong lateral roots diverge.

The wood is heavy, hard, strong, brittle, close-grained, and compact, brown in color; the sapwood somewhat lighter, and the broad medullary rays darker. It takes a good polish, and is used for the handles of tools, in turnery, and for fuel. The leaves, from which an ointment is made, are supposed to be poisonous to cattle. The root-burls, sometimes called ivy grubs, are used in

turnery. Large quantities are taken out at Cranberry, Elk Park, and many other places in the mountain counties.

Rhododendron maximum, Linnæus.

(RHODODENDRON. LAUREL.)

A small tree, with spreading top and grayish-brown scaly bark, reaching a height of 40 feet and a diameter rarely exceeding twelve inches; or more frequently a tall straggling shrub.

It occurs from Nova Scotia and Lake Erie south through New England, New York, and along the Alleghanies to northern Georgia; reaching its best development on the steep rocky banks of streams in the southern Alleghany mountains. It is never found on limestone soils.

In North Carolina, where it grows to an average height of 8 to 12 feet, it is very common in the mountains, often forming impenetrable thickets, and occurs in ravines in the Piedmont counties as far east as Surry and Gaston.

Rhododendron usually produces seed every year, and young seedlings are common in moist open spots. Numerous sprouts appear around old trunks and around the stumps after cutting. Several stems generally grow from the same burly roots.

The thick leathery evergreen leaves are acute at the apex and narrowed toward the base. The flowers are pale rose-color or white, dotted with yellowish-green spots, and are produced in large compact clusters at the ends of the branchlets. The dark red-brown fruit is a dry capsule, half an inch long, and encloses many seeds. The buds are large, scaly and conical.

The wood is heavy, hard, strong, brittle, close-grained, compact, light clear brown in color; the sapwood lighter. It is occasionally employed in turnery, for tool handles, etc. A decoction of the leaves is used for rheumatism, sciatica, etc.

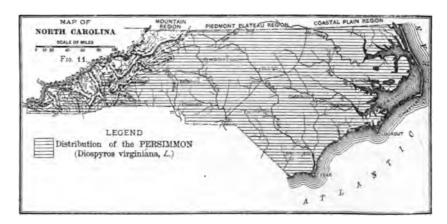
Diospyros virginiana, Linnæus.

(PERSIMMON.)

A small tree, with slender branches forming a rounded top and rough, dark brown, gray or black bark, reaching a height of 115 and a diameter of 2 feet.

It occurs commonly in old fields from southern Connecticut to southern Ohio and southeastern Iowa, south to Bay Biscayne, Florida, southern Alabama and Mississippi, and west to southern Missouri, Arkansas, eastern Kansas and Indian Territory, and the valley of the Colorado river, Texas; and reaches its best development in the lower Ohio basin.

In this State, where it reaches an average height of 30 to 40 feet and an average diameter of 18 to 20 inches, it is found throughout, except in Ashe, Watauga, Mitchell, and Yancey counties and in the higher mountains. (Fig. 11.)



Fertile trees bear fruit in abundance annually or every second year. Seedlings are common near the old trees in damp soil, and in old fields when protected from fire. Young plants are shortlived in deep shade.

The rather thick smooth shining leaves are oval, dark green above, pale and often downy below. The yellowish flowers are small and inconspicuous, the male and female usually produced on separate trees. The edible fruit is rounded, about one inch in diameter, and orange-red when ripe. The winter-buds are small, egg-shaped and pointed. The persimmon has thick fleshy black stoloniferous roots; it has a taproot as well as numerous long lateral roots.

The wood is heavy, hard, strong, very close-grained, compact; the heartwood, seen only in very old specimens, dark brown to nearly black in color; the thick sapwood lighter brown with dark spots. It takes a good polish, and is used for shoe-lasts, plane

stocks, shuttles, large screws, mallets and the shafts of wagons. A decoction for diarrhoa, hemorrhage, etc., is made from the fruit, from which persimmon beer is also produced.

Large quantities have been cut in North Carolina near the railroads.

Mohrodendron carolinum, Britton.*

(SNOWDROP TREE. SILVERBELL TREE.)

A tree of medium or small size, with reddish-brown, broadly ridged bark, and bright brown smooth branches striped with pale shallow longitudinal fissures, sometimes reaching a height of 90 and a diameter of 3 feet.

It occurs commonly in rich soil along streams from the mountains of West Virginia to southern Illinois, southward to middle Florida, central Alabama and Mississippi, and through Arkansas to western Louisiana and eastern Texas; reaching its best development in the southern Alleghany mountains.

In this State, where it reaches an average height of 15 to 25 feet, it is found in the Piedmont plateau as far east as Surry and Mecklenburg, and thence westward it is not uncommon, especially along the upper portions of the water courses.

The silverbell tree produces seed every two or three years and young plants are common in damp shady woods. Specimens over one foot in diameter are apt to be hollow.

The thin leaves are finely serrate, light green above, pale, and slightly downy below. The flowers, which appear with the leaves in spring, are white, bell-shaped, and are borne by slender drooping stems. The large dry fruit, about 1½ inches long, has four wings and contains a bony nut. The hairy winterbuds are small, obtuse, and dark red or light brown.

The wood is light, soft, close-grained, compact, light brown in color; the sapwood lighter. It has no uses in North Carolina.

Fraxinus americana, Linnæus.

(WHITE ASH.)

A large tree of the first commercial value, with stout, upright

*Halesia tetraptera, Linnæus.

| | · | |
|--|---|--|
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |



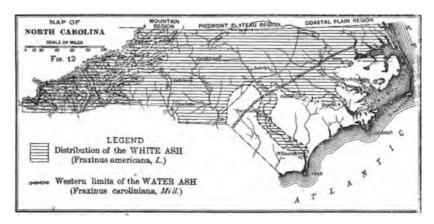
WHITE ASH

ì

or spreading branches and grayish furrowed bark, reaching a height of 120 and a diameter of 6 feet. (Plate VI.)

It grows in low, rather moist soil, from Nova Scotia to northern Minnesota, southward to northern Florida, central Alabama and Mississippi, and west to eastern Nebraska, Kansas, Indian Territory, and eastern Texas; reaching its best development in the basin of the Ohio river.

In North Carolina, where it grows to an average height of 50 to 80 and a diameter of 2 to 3 feet, it occurs throughout the State. (Fig. 12.)



The white ash produces seed abundantly about every 3 or 4 years, though individual trees along streams, or when isolated, bear more frequently. The young seedlings, which are not common, stand shade well, and are usually found in moist situations, often at a considerable distance from the parent tree. Large trees are usually sound, but sometimes have large heart-cracks. In the mountains a mixed growth of oaks, lin, and buckeye replace the white ash after lumbering. The timber is attacked while still standing, especially when growing in swamps, by Fatua denudata, Harris, the ash sesia.

The leaves are composed of 5 to 9, usually 7, stalked leaflets. The inconspicuous flowers appear before the leaves in spring, the male and female on separate trees, and the narrow-winged fruit is 1½ to 2 inches long. The rust-colored winter-buds are covered

with short hairs. The ash has numerous deep-seated lateral roots.

The wood is heavy, hard, strong, coarse-grained, tough, becoming brittle with age; the heartwood brown; the sapwood nearly white. It is extensively used for agricultural implements, wagon-making, handles, oars, cabinet and interior work, and by shipwrights, turners, and coopers.

Large quantities have been sawed in the mountains of this State, chiefly for lumber and furniture. Asheville, Dillsboro, and Elk Park are important centres for the manufacture of ash lumber. In 1892 about 8,000,000 feet was sawed in the mountain counties and shipped mainly to Cincinnati and Philadelphia. About as much more was manufactured during the same year in other parts of the State. A large amount of white ash is still standing in the mountain region and in some of the river swamps of the eastern counties.

Fraxinus pennsyvanica, Marshall.

(RED ASH. ASH.)

A tree of medium size, with stout, upright branches and slightly furrowed dark gray or deep prown bark, reaching a height of 60 feet and a diameter of 20 inches.

It occurs in rich moist ground from New Brunswick to southern Ontario and northern Minnesota, and southward to northern Florida and central Alabama; attaining its best development in the northern Atlantic states. It is rare west of the Alleghany mountains.

In this State, where it grows to a height of 50 to 60 feet, it is confined to the Piedmont plateau.

The red ash produces seed about as often as the white ash, but seedlings are less common and confined principally to the neighborhood of water courses. Numerous sprouts spring up after cutting, but do not develop into large trees. Birch, white oak and red maple usually form the growth after lumbering.

The leaflets are 7 to 9 in number, obscurely toothed, narrowed at the apex into long, slender points, lustrous on the upper sur-

face, and downy beneath; the leafstalks also covered with a silky down. The male and female flowers appear on separate trees late in spring, and the narrow-winged fruit is like that of the white ash, except that the end of the wing is usually more rounded. The dark, russet-brown rounded winter-bud is downy. The red ash has numerous lateral and superficial roots.

The wood is heavy, hard, strong, brittle, close-grained and compact, rich brown in color; the sapwood light brown streaked with yellow. It is used for paper pulp and for the same purposes as that of the white ash, to which it is inferior.

Fraxinus pennsylvanica var. lanceolata, Sargent.

(GREEN ASH. ASH.)

A tree of medium size, with slender, spreading branches and gray or dark brown bark, rarely exceeding 60 feet in height and 24 inches in diameter.

It occurs in low, rather moist soil, from Vermont to northern Florida, westward to the valley of the Saskatchewan river and the Rocky mountains of Montana, the Wasatch mountains of Utah and the eastern and northern ranges of Arizona. It is most abundant in the Mississippi basin.

It is not a common tree in North Carolina, and is confined to the upper part of the coastal plain and to the Piedmont plateau, where it reaches a height of 60 and a diameter of 2 feet.

The leaflets are smooth and bright green on both sides, and narrower, shorter, and often more sharply toothed than those of the red ash. In the West the species and variety are connected by many intermediate forms. East of the Mississippi river the trees are quite distinct.

The wood is heavy, hard, strong, brittle, rather coarse-grained; brown in color; the thick sapwood lighter. It is inferior in quality to the wood of the white ash, but in this State is not distinguished from it commercially.

Fraxinus caroliniana, Miller.

(WATER ASH.)

A small tree, with slender branches which form a narrow top,

and light gray furrowed bark, reaching a height of 40 feet and a diameter of 12 inches.

It occurs in deep river swamps from southeastern Virginia near the coast to Florida, westward through the Gulf states to the valley of the Sabine river, Texas, and southwestern Arkansas. It is also found in Cuba.

In North Carolina, where it reaches an average height of 30 to 40 feet, it is confined to the deep swamps of the coastal plain region. (Fig. 12, p. 71.)

It bears seed abundantly every year or two. Trees in deep swamps have swollen butts which are usually hollow, but as a general rule the upper part of the stem is sound.

The leaves are composed of from 5 to 7 large, long-stalked leaflets. The male and female flowers appear in February and March upon separate trees. In the fruit the wings extend to the bottom of the seed, and are sometimes three in number. The winter-buds are chestnut-brown in color. The water ash has numerous deeply seated lateral roots.

The wood is light, soft, not strong, brittle, close-grained, and compact; the heartwood nearly white, sometimes tinged with yellow; the sapwood lighter. It is of less value than that of many of the other ashes.

In the eastern section of North Carolina it is largely manufactured into lumber. The best logs are usually sawed into furniture squares.

Persea borbonia, Sprengel.

(RED BAY. SWEET BAY.)

An evergreen tree, with dark brown-green branches and deeply furrowed reddish bark, reaching a height of 70 and a diameter of 3 feet.

It occurs in low rich soil from southern Delaware south to Bay Biscayne and Cape Romano, Florida, and through the Gulf states to southern Arkansas and the valley of the Brazos river, Texas, near the coast.

In this State it is a small tree or shrub, and occurs in the coastal plain region. Old trees over 8 inches in diameter are frequently hollow.

The oblong entire evergreen leaves are 2 to 3 inches long and, like the twigs, have an aromatic odor when bruised. The flowers are small and in close panicles, and the fruit is an ovate 1-seeded deep blue drupe. The small dark brown winter-buds and dark twigs are downy. The red bay has a lateral root system.

The wood is heavy, hard, very strong, brittle, very close-grained, and compact; bright red in color; the sapwood much lighter. It takes a beautiful polish, and was formerly somewhat used in shipbuilding, interior finish and cabinet work.

Sassafras sassafras, Karsten.

(SASSAFRAS.)

A large tree, with green or yellowish-green branchlets and furrowed gray bark. It sometimes reaches a height of 90 and a diameter of 7 feet, but is reduced to a shrub at its northern limit.

It occurs from eastern Massachusetts and southwestern Vermont, west through southern Ontario and central Michigan, to southeastern Iowa, eastern Kansas, and Indian Territory, and south to middle Florida and the valley of the Brazos river, Texas; reaching its best development in southwestern Arkansas and Indian Territory.

In this State, where it rarely exceeds 40 to 50 feet in height, it is most common in the coastal plain and Piedmont plateau regions, and rare on the higher slopes of the mountains.

Seed is produced at frequent intervals, and young seedlings are common in old fields when protected from fire. Spronts spring readily from the stumps of young trees and from the spreading roots, and in many cases become large trees.

The leaves are very variable, being ovate and entire, or 2 to 3-lobed. The greenish-yellow clustered flowers appear in early spring, the sterile and fertile on separate trees, and the oval fruit is blue in color, with a thick reddish stem. The egg-shaped winter-buds are large.

The wood is light, soft, weak, brittle and coarse-grained, very durable in contact with the soil, and apt to check in drying. It is slightly aromatic. The heartwood is dull orange-brown in color; the thin sapwood light yellow. It is used in boat building, fencing, cooperage, and for ox yokes. An aromatic stimulant is derived from the bark of the root.

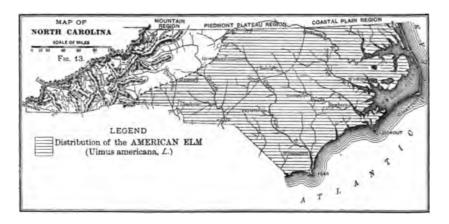
Ulmus americana, Linnæus.

(AMERICAN ELM.)

A large tree, with short spreading or long pendulous branches and scaly dark brown trunk, reaching a height of 120 and a diameter of 11 feet.

It occurs in rich moist soil from southern Newfoundland to the northern shores of Lake Superior and the eastern slope of the Rocky mountains, south to Florida, and west to Dakota, central Nebraska, Indian Territory, and Texas; reaching its best development in the northeastern United States.

In this State, where it reaches an average height of 60 to 70 and diameter of 4 to 5 feet, it occurs abundantly in most of the swamps



of the coastal plain and extends westward as far as Guilford and Mecklenburg counties. (Fig. 13.) It is smaller and much less common toward its western limit.

Seed is borne generally every year in abundance, and young plants are common in damp open places. The American elm does not sprout readily from the stump.

A larva of a longicorn beetle, Saperda tridentata, Oliver, loosens the inner bark and channels the surface of the wood so as frequently to kill the tree. The American elm also suffers severely from canker-worms, Paleacrita vernata, Peck, and Eugonia subsignaria, Huebner, and the imported elm-leaf beetle, Galeruca scanthomelæna, Schrank, all of which feed upon and destroy the foliage.

The leaves are usually smaller and less rough than those of the slippery elm. The small greenish-brown flowers are in numerous lateral clusters and appear early in spring. The flattened oval winged fruit is hairy on the margin, and ripens and falls before the leaves appear. The buds are smooth, rather small and acute. The American elm has long, well developed lateral roots.

The wood is heavy, hard, strong, tough, rather coarse-grained, compact, and difficult to split; the heartwood light brown; the sapwood lighter. It is used for wheel stocks, saddle-trees, flooring, and cooperage, and is exported for boat and ship-building.

In North Carolina the wood of this tree is not much used, and very little of it has ever been cut.

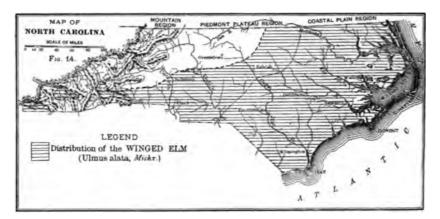
Ulmus alata, Michaux.

(WINGED ELM. WAHOO. CORK ELM. SOUTHERN ELM.)

A small tree, with slender branches and close finely ridged light brown bark, reaching a height of 50 and a diameter of 2 feet.

It occurs on dry gravelly or often on moist soil from southern Virginia, through the middle districts to western Florida, southern Indiana and Illinois, south to the Gulf coast, and southwest through southern Missouri, Arkansas, and the eastern portion of Indian Territory and Texas; reaching its best development in southern Missouri and Arkansas.

In this State, where it reaches an average height of 30 to 45 feet, it grows along swamps and streams, and is nowhere uncommon except on the mountains. (Fig. 14.)



The winged elm bears seed abundantly at intervals of 2 or 3 years, and young plants are frequent along streams or swamp land.

The leaves are smaller than those of the American elm and the brown twigs more slender. The small clustered flowers are on slender foot-stalks, and the oval winged fruit is deeply notched, and hairy on the margin. There are numerous long superficial lateral roots.

The wood is heavy, hard, not strong, very close-grained, compact, unwedgeable; brown in color; the sapwood lighter. It is used for hubs, blocks, and tool handles.

Ulmus fulva, Michaux.

(SLIPPERY ELM.)

A tree, with deeply furrowed dark brown bark and dark graybrown branches which form a broom-shaped crown, reaching a height of 135 and a diameter of 4 feet.

It occurs in rich soil from the valley of the lower St. Lawrence river to northern Dakota, and south to northern Florida, central Alabama and Mississippi, and the valley of the San Antonio river, Texas.

In this State, where it reaches an average height of 30 to 50

feet and a diameter of 12 to 18 inches, it is most plentiful in the Piedmont plateau, less so among the mountains, and is found occasionally in the coastal plain region.

The slippery elm produces seed at rather irregular intervals of 2 to 4 years, and for the most part not abundantly. Young seedlings are rare except in damp, somewhat shaded places near the parent tree.

The thick ovate oblong coarsely toothed leaves are very rough on the upper surface and downy beneath. The flowers occur in lateral clusters on short foot-stalks, and the flat-winged fruit is round, but not fringed. The rounded reddish-brown winter-buds are hairy. The slippery elm has numerous deeply seated lateral roots.

The wood is heavy, hard, strong, very close grained, compact, and durable in contact with the soil. The heartwood is dark brown or red; the sapwood lighter. It is used for wheel-stock, fencing, railroad ties, sills, and in shipbuilding. The mucilaginous inner bark is medicinal.

Morus rubra, Linnæus.

(RED MULBERRY.)

A tree, with dark brown, much-broken bark and smooth gray branches, reaching a height of 65 and a diameter of 7 feet.

It is found generally in rich soil from western Massachusetts and Long Island, N. Y., through southern Ontario, central Michigan, and the Black Hills of Dakota, eastern Nebraska and Kansas, south to southern Florida, and the valley of the Colorado river, Texas; reaching its best development in the basins of the lower Ohio and Mississippi rivers.

In this State, where it grows to an average height of 30 to 50 and an average diameter of 1 to 2 feet, it is found throughout, being most abundant on the Piedmont plateau and very rare in the mountain region.

The red mulberry bears large quantities of seed every year or every other year, and seedlings are found on moist soil through the forests of the Piedmont plateau region. Numerous sprouts come up after cutting.

The broad, heart-shaped, pointed leaves are rough above and downy below. The flowers are inconspicuous, and the deep red or purple fruit is sweet and edible, with an agreeable, slightly acid taste. The winter-buds are large, reddish, smooth and conical.

The wood is light, soft, not strong, rather tough, coarse-grained, compact, very durable in contact with the soil, light orange-yellow in color; the sapwood lighter.

It takes a good polish, and is largely used for fencing, cooperage, snaths, and, at the South, for ship and boatbuilding. The leaves have been used for feeding silkworms, but are not well adapted for that purpose.

Celtis occidentalis, Linnæus.

(HACKBERRY.)

A large tree, with bark often much roughened by small ridges, and flexuous, smooth, brown branches. It reaches a height of 130 and a diameter of 5 feet, or sometimes is reduced to a low shrub.

It occurs in rich bottoms or on dry hillsides from the valley of the St. Lawrence river west to eastern Dakota, south through the Atlantic region to southern Florida, and to Texas; being most abundant and reaching its best development in the basin of the Mississippi river.

In this State, where it reaches an average height of 50 to 70 feet and a diameter of 18 to 20 inches, it is found throughout, except in the high mountain counties, as Ashe, Watauga, Mitchell, and Yancey, and attains its greatest size and abundance in the alluvial swamps of the coastal plain.

It bears seed plentifully and as a rule every year. Seedlings are common near old trees and along river bottoms.

The leaves are ovate, toothed, taper-pointed, and smooth at maturity. The greenish flowers are inconspicuous, and the

rounded, purplish-red fruit, from 1 to 1 inch in diameter, is sweet and edible.

The wood is heavy, rather soft, not strong, coarse-grained, compact, clear light yellow in color; the sapwood, lighter. It takes a good polish, and is largely used for fencing, and occasionally in the manufacture of cheap furniture.

Platanus occidentalis, Linnæus.

(SYCAMORE. BUTTONWOOD.)

A large tree, with deep brown smooth bark, scaling off in thin, brittle plates, leaving the tree a mottled polished white, or with bark uniform and rough. It reaches a height of 130 and a diameter of nearly 14 feet.

It occurs in rich moist soil, generally near streams, from southern Maine and the northern shores of Lakes Ontario and Erie west to eastern Nebraska and Kansas, south to northern Florida, central Alabama, Mississippi, and southern Texas; reaching its best development in the bottom lands of the Ohio and Mississippi rivers. It is a very common tree.

In this State, where it reaches a height of 90 and a diameter of 5 or 6 feet, it occurs throughout, growing to its best size along the alluvial swamps of the Piedmont plateau. It is least abundant on the coastal plain.

The sycamore bears fruit in abundance and usually every year, and seedlings are common along streams. Old trees are generally hollow at the butt. It sprouts very freely from the stump, and is easily propagated from cuttings. The growth is very rapid.

The large broad leaves are angularly lobed and toothed, downy when young, and smooth at maturity. The male and female flowers occur in separate small spherical heads with slender stems. The fruit is a globular head one inch in diameter, hanging on the tree through the winter. The short, broad, pyramidal buds are formed beneath the swollen base of the leafstalks. The sycamore has numerous long running roots.

The wood is heavy, hard, not strong, very close-grained, com-

pact, difficult to split and work; brown in color; the sapwood lighter. It decays rapidly in contact with the soil or on exposure, and warps and cracks badly in drying. It is used for ox yokes, butchers' blocks, for interior finish, and in the manufacture of furniture, and very largely for tobacco boxes.

Juglans cinerea, Linnæus.

(WHITE WALNUT. BUTTERNUT.)

A large tree, with dark granite-gray furrowed bark and light gray smoothish branches, reaching a height of 115 and a diameter of 3 feet.

It occurs in rich woodlands, from southern New Brunswick, the valley of the St. Lawrence river and Ontario, to Dakota and Nebraska, southward to Delaware, Missouri, and Arkansas, and along the Alleghany mountains to Georgia and Alabama; reaching its best development in the basin of the Ohio river.

In North Carolina it occurs through the mountains and sparingly through the upper part of the Piedmont plateau, but is nowhere common. In certain cool, rich mountain valleys it attains a height of 70 and a diameter of 3 feet. (Fig. 15, p. 83.)

The white walnut bears fruit abundantly only every 2 or 3 years, and young seedlings are uncommon. Young trees sprout freely from the stump; old ones less readily.

The leaflets are 11 to 17 in number on the sticky leafstem, rounded at the base, taper-pointed, sharply toothed, and downy on the lower surface. The sterile flowers are in large green catkins, the fertile flowers small and inconspicuous. The brown fruit is 2 to 3 inches long, very sticky, and contains an edible nut. The naked winter-buds are light brown, blunt, and covered with soft down; the terminal buds large and conspicuous, the lateral buds much smaller, two or three together above each leaf-scar. There are numerous strong superficial lateral roots, while the taproot in specimens over 10 inches in diameter is poorly developed.

The wood is light, soft, not strong, coarse-grained, compact, and easily worked; light brown in color; the sapwood, lighter. It

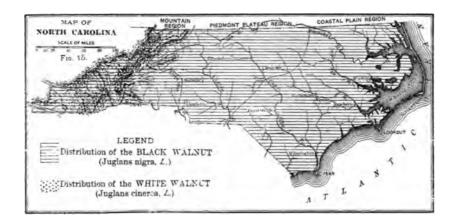
takes a beautiful polish, receives paint well, and is used for interior finish, cabinet work, panels of carriages, and occasionally for the lower framework of buildings. The inner bark yields a yellow dye, and is employed as a mild cathartic.

Juglans nigra, Linnæus.

(BLACK WALNUT.)

A large tree, of the first commercial value, with a small oval crown and rough very dark brown bark, reaching a height of 150 and a diameter of 10 feet or more.

It occurs from western Massachusetts to eastern Nebraska and Kansas, and south to northern Florida, Alabama, Mississippi, and the valley of the San Antonio river in Texas; reaching its best development in the rich bottom lands of southwestern Arkansas and Indian Territory, and on the western slopes of the southern Alleghany mountains.



In this State, where it grows to an average height of 40 to 50 feet, it is most abundant on the Piedmont plateau, but is found throughout. (Fig. 15.)

Forest trees bear seed abundantly only every 3 or 4 years, and young seedlings are not common except near mature trees in low fertile rather open lands or in fields and meadows which border streams. The growth is very rapid until a large size is reached,

especially when the soil is good and the light conditions favorable. Only small trees send up from the stump shoots, which attain a large size.

The leafstalk is slightly downy but not sticky; the leaflets 15 to 23 in number, smooth above and somewhat downy beneath. The fruit is round, greenish-yellow when ripe, about 2 inches in diameter, and contains a nut with an edible kernel. The large terminal buds are covered with a light brown tomentum and the lateral buds are above the leaf scars as in the preceding species. The black walnut has a well-developed taproot and numerous strong lateral roots.

The wood is heavy, hard, strong, rather coarse-grained, liable to check, easily worked, and durable in contact with the soil; rich dark brown in color; the thin sapwood much lighter. It takes a beautiful polish, and is used for cabinet making, interior finish, gunstocks, and in boat and shipbuilding. The husk of the fruit yields a dye.

The black walnut has been largely removed from the counties west of the Blue Ridge, where it reaches its largest size in this State. Considerable quantities are still standing, however, in the Piedmont region, and in the coastal plain region it has not yet been entirely removed.

Hicoria minima, Britton.*

(BITTERNUT HICKORY. RED-HEART HICKORY.)

A tall and slender tree, with a broadly pyramidal crown, rather smooth, firm, gray bark, and lighter smoother branches, reaching a height of 120 and a diameter of 4 feet.

It occurs from southern Maine to the valley of the St. Lawrence river, westward through Ontario, central Michigan and Minnesota, and the eastern parts of Nebraska, Kansas, and Indian Territory, and southward to western Florida and eastern Texas: reaching its best development in Pennsylvania and Ohio.

In North Carolina it grows to an average height of 80 and a diameter of 2 to 3 feet, and occurs in moist, cool situations, on

*Carya amara, Nuttall.

loamy or clay soils in all parts of the State, but is abundant only in the mountains, where it is the largest and most common hickory.

The fruit is borne plentifully at short intervals, and seedlings are frequent in the mountains, especially in moist open woods.

The leaves consist of 5 to 9 small, narrow, acute, smoothish leaflets. The dark green fruit is rounded or slightly egg-shaped, with a very thin husk, opening half way down when ripe. The shell of the white, smooth nut is so thin that it can be broken with the fingers. The kernel is intensely bitter. The yellow winterbuds are small, elongated, and slightly rounded or pointed.

The wood is heavy, very hard, strong, and tough, and checks badly in drying; dark brown in color; the sapwood lighter, or often nearly white. The wood is inferior to that of the other hickories, but is used for hoops, ox yokes and fuel.

Hicoria aquatica, Britton.

(WATER-BITTERNUT HICKORY. WATER HICKORY. SWAMP HICKORY.)

A tree, with rough, somewhat furrowed bark, reaching a height of 100 and a diameter of 3 feet, or generally much smaller.

It occurs from Virginia through the coast region to Florida, along the Gulf shore to Texas, and northward to southern Illinois; reaching its best development on the lower Mississippi and Yazoo rivers.

In this State, where it is confined to the coastal plain, it grows to an average height of 40 to 50 feet. (Fig. 16, p. 86.)

Young seedlings are uncommon in this State, and are found only on alluvium, and then usually in spots where trees have been cut.

There are 7 to 13 smooth, pointed, slightly toothed leaflets. The fruit is roundish, with a thin husk 4-parted to the base. The thin-shelled, 4-angled nut contains a very bitter kernel. The flattened winter-buds are covered with a rusty down. The water-bitternut hickory has a poorly developed taproot and numerous strong lateral roots.

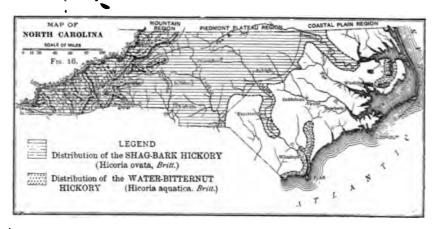
The wood is heavy, soft, strong, rather brittle, very close-grained, and compact; the heartwood, dark brown; the sapwood lighter, often nearly white. The timber is of an inferior quality, and is chiefly used for fencing and fuel. It is rare in North Carolina, and, from the difficulty in getting it out of the swamps, it is little used.

Hicoria ovata, Britton.

(SHAG-BARK HICKORY, SHELL-BARK HICKORY, SCALY-BARK HICKORY,)

A large tree of great commercial value, with pendulous branches, and grayish-brown bark separating from the trunk in long strips. It reaches a height of 150 and a diameter of 4 feet.

It occurs on rich hillsides and on sandy ridges from the valley of the St. Lawrence river to Michigan and southeastern Minnesota, southward to western Florida, central Alabama and Mississippi, and westward to eastern Kansas, Indian Territory, and eastern Texas; reaching its best development west of the Alleghany mountains. A common tree.



In this State, where it attains an average height of 60 to 80 feet and an average diameter of 15 to 20 inches, it occurs throughout but is nowhere common, and least so in the coastal plain region. (Fig. 16.)

^{*} Carya alba. Nuttall.

Seed is borne frequently and in large quantities, but seedlings are not common except in the Piedmont plateau, and young trees are infrequent in second-growth woods.

The leaves are large and composed of 5 to 7-pointed, rather coarsely toothed leaflets, the lower pair small and narrow, the upper pair and terminal leaflet very large, broad and inversely egg-shaped. The barren flowers are in slender, pendulous, green tassels, three on a common stalk. The minute fertile flowers are in groups of 2 to 4 together on the ends of the shoots. The thick husk of the nearly globular fruit separates into four distinct pieces, and the nut is white, sweet, edible, and 4-angled. The large, yellowish-brown, scaly buds are egg-shaped.

The shag-bark hickory has numerous lateral roots and a strong taproot which is developed in early youth.

The wood is heavy, very hard and strong, tough, close-grained, compact, and flexible; light brown in color; the thin and more valuable sapwood nearly white. It is largely used for agricultural implements, carriages, axe and tool handles, baskets and fuel.

Hicoria alba, Britton.*

· (WHITE HICKORY. BIG-BUD HICKORY. MOCKERNUT.)

A tree, with dark ashen-gray, deeply furrowed bark, reaching a height of 108 and a diameter of 4 feet.

It occurs from southern Ontario to the eastern parts of Nebraska, Kansas, and Indian Territory, southward to central Florida and the valley of the Brazos river, Texas. It grows on rich hillsides or in low river bottoms, and is very common in the Gulf states and throughout the South.

In North Carolina, where it grows to an average height of 60 feet and a diameter of 18 to 20 inches, it is common throughout the State. (Fig. 17, p. 88.)

The white hickory bears fruit frequently and in abundance. Seedlings are common near old trees and in second-growth woods, and often in dry or moist uplands a considerable part of the forest is composed of young trees of this species. Yuong

*Carya tomentosa, Nuttall.

trees, when cut down or killed by fire, send up numerous sprouts from the stump. Late spring frosts are very injurious to this species, frequently checking the growth of the new twigs and at times killing the tree.

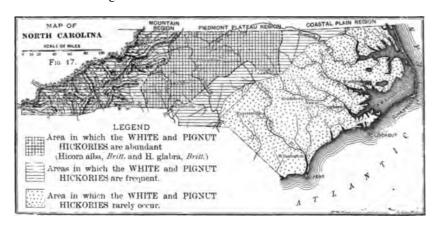
The leaves are very large and consist of 7 to 9 leaflets, the lower surface of which, as well as the recent shoots and leafstems, are downy when young. The fruit is oval, nearly round or slightly pear-shaped, and 1½ to 2 inches or more in length. The husk splits nearly to the base when ripe. The thick-shelled, somewhat 6-angled nut contains a small and unusually sweet kernel. The winter-buds are large, round, and covered with downy, hard, grayish-white scales.

The wood is heavy, very hard, strong, tough, very close-grained, and flexible, and checks in drying. The heartwood is rich dark brown: the thick sapwood nearly white. It is used for the same purposes as the wood of the shag-bark hickory. (Page 86.)

Hicoria glabra, Britton.

(PIGNUT.)

A large tree, with an oval head and firm, close, rough, gray bark on the trunk, and smoother, lighter bark on the branches. It reaches a height of 130 and a diameter of 5 feet.



It occurs on dry hills and uplands from southern Maine to southern Ontario, southern Michigan, Minnesota, the eastern parts





WHITE OAK

of Nebraska, and Indian Territory, and south to western Florida and southern Texas; reaching its best development in the lower Ohio basin.

In this State, where it reaches an average height of 70 to 80 feet, it is found throughout. It is not a common tree in the mountains, and is rare in the coastal plain region; but along with the white hickory it is fairly abundant in the Piedmont plateau region. (Fig. 17, p 88.)

The pignut bears fruit frequently and in large quantities, and young growth is common near the parent trees and through second-growth woods.

The leaves are long, with 5 to 7 smooth leaflets. The smooth, tapering twigs are smaller than in the two preceding species. The fruit is pear-shaped or rounded, with very thin husks splitting about halfway to the base. The rather thin-shelled nut, about ½ inch in diameter, contains a small sweetish or slightly bitter kernel. The polished brown winter buds are egg-shaped and pointed or rounded. It has numerous lateral roots and a taproot which is developed early in the life of the tree.

The wood is heavy, hard, very strong, and tough, flexible and close-grained, and checks in drying; dark or light brown in color; the thick sapwood lighter, often nearly white. Its uses are the same as those of the shag-bark hickory, to the wood of which species for some purposes it is preferred.

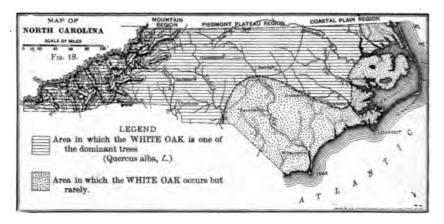
Quercus alba, Linnæus.

(WHITE OAK.)

A large tree, of great economic value, with large spreading branches and a bark which is either light gray, slightly roughened, and in the older trees, loosens in large thin scales, or is gray, firm, and deeply furrowed. It reaches a height of 150 and a diameter of 8 feet. (Plate VII.)

It occurs on all soils from northern Maine to the valley of the St. Lawrence, westward through lower Michigan to southeastern Minnesota, and southward to St. John's river and Tampa bay, Florida, and the valley of the Brazos river, Texas; reaching its

best development on the slopes of the Alleghany mountains, and in the valley of the Ohio river and its tributaries. It is a common tree in a considerable portion of the central and eastern states.



In North Carolina, where it attains an average height of 70 to 80 and an average diameter of 4 to 5 feet, it occurs throughout, and is common everywhere except in the northeastern part of the State and on the sandy soils of the southeastern section. It is most plentiful on the Piedmont plateau. (Fig. 18.)

Large quantities of seed are produced about once in three years. The acorns germinate in all kinds of soil and frequently Young seedlings are common in all situations, seed up old fields. and bear well either the deep shade of the old tree or full exposure to the sun. Young white oaks are apt to form a large part of the new growth after the removal of the yellow poplar, shortleaf pine or the white oak itself. In many parts of the original forest, on poor soil, white oak is the predominant tree, and it generally forms a large part of second growth of mixed hardwoods. Small trees sprout freely and vigorously from the stump. Individuals over 3 inches in diameter are not easily killed by fire. Large trees are rarely hollow. Though a large number of insects live on the white oak, it is not seriously injured by borers or insects which attack the leaves or twigs. A weavil frequently destroys the acorns.

The leaves are acute at the base, with 7 to 9 blunt, rounded, usually entire lobes. The male flowers are in long slender threads.

91

the female very minute. The acorns, usually in pairs, have rounded saucer-shaped, rough, warty cups, and brown, sweet, edible nuts. The small blunt winter-buds are smooth, as are the light brown or gray slender twigs. The white oak has a taproot and numerous deeply seated lateral roots.

The wood is strong, very heavy, hard, tough, close-grained. liable to check, and very durable in contact with the soil; brown in color; the sapwood lighter. It is used for shipbuilding, construction, cooperage, carriages, agricultural implements, railway ties, fencing, interior finish, cabinet-making, baskets, fuel, etc. It is altogether one of the most important timbers of the United States.

In North Carolina it is largely used for fuel, clapboards, fencing, ties, and staves. It has been manufactured into lumber for local uses only. Large quantities of merchantable timber still stand in the mountain counties and in many of the counties of the Piedmont plateau. The bark is used extensively for tanning, but is less highly valued than that of the chestnut oak.

Quercus minor, Sargent.

(POST OAK.)

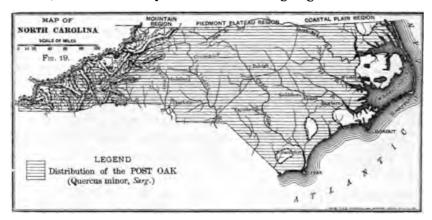
A tree, with rough hard gray bark, and numerous spreading branches, reaching a height of 100 and a diameter of 5 feet; or on the Florida coast reduced to a low shrub.

It occurs generally in poor soil from Massachusetts south to northern Florida, and west through southern Ontario and Michigan to eastern Nebraska, Kansas, and Indian Territory, and into central Texas, and is very common in the Gulf states west of the Mississippi.

In this State, where it grows to a height of 50 and a diameter of 4 feet, it occurs in greatest numbers and attains its largest size in the Piedmont counties. Here it forms with the white oak a large part of the second-growth in the forest and in old fields. It is not common in the transmontane counties. In the eastern section it frequently forms, on the margins of swamps, a lower story beneath the willow and water oaks. (Fig. 19, p. 92.)

The post oak bears fruit abundantly every 2 or 3 years, and

young plants are common in thinned and second-growth woods, bearing well both deep shade and strong light. It does not



sprout as freely as white oak. Although in favorable situations the growth is rapid, in general it grows more slowly than the white oak.

The leaves are stiff, leathery, rough above, whitish and downy below, and divided into 5 to 7 roundish divergent lobes, the upper lobe large and often double. The acorns, borne on short foot-stalks, are small and sweet, and seated in deep, grayish, smooth-scaled cups. The winter-buds are small, rounded, smooth, and dark brownish-red.

The wood is heavy, hard, close-grained, compact, checks badly in drying, and is very durable in contact with the soil; dark or light brown in color; the sapwood lighter. It is used for construction, cooperage, shipbuilding, fencing, railroad ties, fuel, and occasionally for carriage stock. Large quantities have been cut in the Piedmont section for staves, and it is extensively used throughout the middle and eastern counties for posts, ties, etc.

Quercus lyrata, Walter.

(OVERCUP OAK. SWAMP POST OAK.)

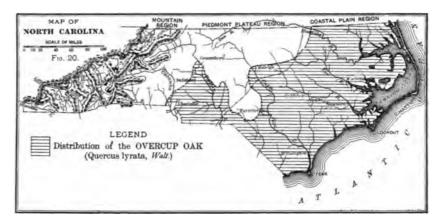
A large tree, with rough flaky gray bark, and smooth gray small often pendulous branches, reaching a height of 100 and a diameter of 3 feet.

It occurs in wet soil, from Maryland southward near the coast,

to western Florida, westward through Alabama, Mississippi, and Louisiana, to the valley of the Trinity river, Texas, and through Arkansas and southeastern Missouri to middle Tennessee, southern Indiana, and Illinois; reaching its best development in the valley of the Red river and adjacent portions of Arkansas and Texas. It is rare in the Atlantic states.

In North Carolina it occurs on the oak flats of the coastal plain, and in the alluvial swamps of the rivers as far inland as Anson, Orange, and Nash counties. (Fig. 20.)

The overcup oak bears acoms plentifully at intervals of 3 or 4 years, but young seedlings are infrequent. The fruit is devoured by swine, and the young plants are destroyed by browsing cattle.



The leaves are oblong, crowded at the ends of the branchlets, and 7 to 9-lobed, the divisions acute or blunt, entire or somewhat toothed. The large subglobose acorn is nearly covered by the scaly, thin, rugged, fringed cup. The light chestnut-brown winterbuds are small and egg-shaped. The overcup oak has a tap-root and many rather deeply seated lateral roots.

The wood is heavy, hard, strong, tough, close-grained, and inclined to check, and very durable in contact with the soil; rich dark brown in color; the sapwood lighter. It is used for the same purposes as that of the white oak. Very little of this timber has ever been cut.

Quercus prinus, Linnæus.

(ROCK CHESTNUT OAK. CHESTNUT OAK. BUCK OAK.)

A large tree, with deeply furrowed dark gray bark, and a

broadly oval crown, reaching a height of 100 and a diameter of 4 feet.

It occurs from southern Maine to the shores of Lake Champlain, Quinte bay, Ontario, and the valley of the Genesee river, New York, south to Delaware, and through the Appalachian mountain region to northern Alabama, extending westward to central Kentucky and Tennessee.

In North Carolina it is found on dry soil and on the tops of ridges westward from Franklin and Montgomery counties. It reaches its best development on the slopes of the lower mountains at an elevation of 2,000 to 4,000 feet, where with other oaks and the chestnut it constitutes a large part of the forest. Above 4,000 feet it grows on the driest and rockiest ridges, often forming extensive groves of pure forest. In the Piedmont plateau region a smaller form is found, which seldom reaches a diameter of one foot. (Fig. 21, p. 95.)

The rock chestnut oak bears acorns very plentifully nearly every year, or in the deep woods every second year. Young trees in all stages of growth are common in open woods on dry rocky mountains or in abandoned fields. In Lincoln and Union counties the chestnut oak forms a considerable part of the regrowth after the removal of mixed hardwoods and the short-leaf pine. Only the smaller trees sprout from the stump. Many of the large specimens growing upon dry soil are hollow at the butt as a result of frequent fires. Borers often penetrate the lower parts of the stems of small trees which occur on dry ground, but trees in damp situations are nearly always sound.

The leaves are upon short stems, usually broadest toward the extremity, and with 6 to 13 large rounded teeth on each side. The acorns are large and oval, with thick, warty cups. The large blunt winter-buds and the twigs are smooth. The numerous, branching roots penetrate deeply into the soil.

The wood is heavy, hard, strong, rather tough, close-grained, durable in contact with the soil, and inclined to check in drying; dark brown in color; the sapwood lighter. It is largely used for fencing, railroad ties, and fuel. The bark is rich in tannin.

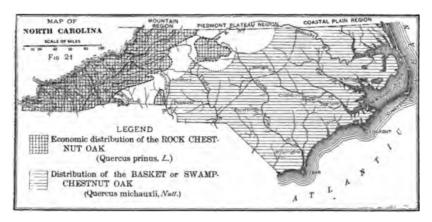
A large amount of bark is peeled in Buncombe, Burke, McDowell, and Wilkes counties to supply local tanneries, and much timber has been cut in Lincoln county for charcoal. Large quantities of chestnut oak still remain, however, in all the western counties.

Quercus michauxii, Nuttall.

(BASKET OAK. COW OAK. SWAMP WHITE OAK. SWAMP CHESTNUT OAK.)

A large tree, of great economic value, with gray rather scaly bark and stout branches, reaching a height of 120 and a diameter of 7 feet.

It occurs from Delaware, south through the lower and middle districts to northern Florida, thence through the Gulf states to the valley of the Trinity river, Texas, and through Arkansas to southeastern Missouri, to central Tennessee and Kentucky, and the valley of the lower Wabash river; reaching its best development on the rich bottom lands in southeastern Arkansas and Louisiana. It is common in the Gulf states.



In this State (fig. 21.) it is found in swamps of the coastal plain and Piedmont plateau regions, and on the bottom lands of the Cape Fear and Neuse rivers, attains a height of 100 and a diameter of 6 feet.

Abundant production of seed occurs at intervals of 2 to 3 years. Seedlings are common in wet open spots on damp hill sides in the

Piedmont plateau region. Spronts grow readily from the stump, but seldom reach a large size.

The leaves are rather rigid, downy beneath, and with large regular, rounded teeth. The large sweet edible acorns are set in shallow cups which are roughened with acute coarse scales. The brown winter-buds are large, smooth, and pointed. There are many deep lateral roots.

The wood is heavy, hard, very strong, tough, close-grained, compact, easily split, and very durable in contact with the soil; light brown in color; the sapwood darker. It is used for agricultural implements, cooperage, wheel stock, baskets, fencing, fuel, and construction. In the eastern counties a small quantity of the timber has been cut for local uses.

Quercus virginiana, Miller.*

(LIVE OAK.)

A large evergreen tree, with dark, deeply furrowed bark and gray branches, a short body and a flat or spreading top, reaching a height of 60 and a diameter of 7 feet; in the interior of Texas often reduced to a shrub. (Plate VIII.)

It is found near the coast from Virginia to southern Florida and along the Gulf coast to Mexico, extending through western Texas and the valley of the Red river, the Apache and the Gaudalupe mountains, and into Mexico, at elevations of six to eight thousand feet, and in the island of Costa Rica; reaching its best development in the south Atlantic states.

In North Carolina it occurs near the coast on deep sandy soil with the water and willow oaks, American olive, and southern lin. North of Cape Hatteras it is a rare tree but south of that point it becomes more abundant until, at the mouth of the Cape Fear river, it forms with the palmetto a considerable part of the maritime forest of Smith's island. (Fig. 22, p. 97.)

The growth, particularly in youth, is very vigorous. Young seedlings are common near old trees. Small trees sprout readily from the stump.

The evergreen leaves are thick, leathery, oblong and obtuse, *Quercus virens, Aiton.



CROWN IN OPEN FIELD LONG MOSS (TILLANDSIA) HANGING FROM THE LIMBS







RED OAK

RED OAK. 97

smooth above, and hairy beneath. The fruit, which is borne upon a long stem, is an oblong, dark brown, or black acorn set in a top-shaped, downy cup. The roots are spreading and rather deeply seated, and can bear sea water, at least if covered only during high tide.

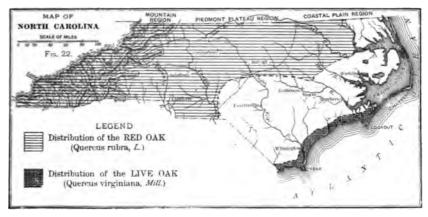
The wood is very heavy, hard, strong, tough, close grained, compact; it takes a beautiful polish, but is difficult to work: light brown or yellow in color; the sapwood nearly white. It is used for shipbuilding, and the bark is occasionally employed for tanning. It is not abundant enough in North Carolina to be of commercial importance.

Quercus rubra, Linnæus.

(RED OAK.)

A large tree, with dark brown furrowed bark, nearly black on large trunks, and rather smooth branches which form a large oval or round head, reaching a height of 150 and a diameter of 7 feet. (Plate IX.)

It occurs from Nova Scotia, southern New Brunswick, and eastern Minnesota, western Iowa, eastern Kansas and Indian Territory south to northern Florida, southern Alabama and Mississippi, and western Texas, reaching its best development north of the Ohio river. A common tree.



In the coastal plain region of North Carolina it is rare; somewhat more common in the Piedmont plateau on shady hillsides and

moist land; and most abundant in the mountains where it is frequently 130 feet high and 6 or 7 feet in diameter. (Fig. 22.) At high elevations it is often found with the chestnut oak on dry ridges, and there attains an average height of 60 to 70 feet. In the Piedmont plateau it is often confounded with the black oak.

It bears acorns plentifully about every second year, though two seed years in succession are not unusual. Young seedlings are common in the woods and endure heavy shade well, but need a light cover for rapid growth. Young trees are very sensitive to fire. Only small specimens sprout well from the stump. After lumbering the regrowth usually consists of the same species mixed with chestnut oak, scarlet oak, white oak, and chestnut.

The thin, glossy leaves are oblong, wedge-shaped at the base, and usually dilated toward the end, with 5 or 6 lobes on each side separated by rounded, rather shallow notches. The thick, oblong, broad-based acorn is dark brown and seated in a shallow small-scaled cup which is either short-stalked or sessile. The ovate pointed winter-buds are dark brown and smooth. The tap-root develops early in life, and after the plant is well started a system of large lateral roots is formed.

The wood is heavy, hard, strong, coarse-grained, and inclined to check: light brown or red in color; the sapwood somewhat darker. It is used for clapboards, cooperage, interior finish, and the manufacture of furniture. The bark is occasionally used for tanning. Large quantities have been cut in North Carolina for local use, but a great amount is still standing in the western counties.

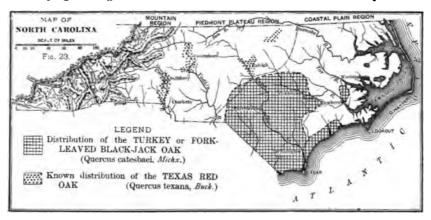
Quercus texana, Buckley.

(TEXAS RED OAK. SWAMP RED OAK.)

A large tree, with a narrow pyramidal crown, shallow-furrowed striped gray and black or mottled bark, and smooth gray branches, reaching a height of nearly 200 feet and a diameter of 4 to 8 feet.

It occurs from Iowa south to Texas and east to the eastern part of Virginia and central Georgia; reaching its greatest development on the alluvial lands of the lower Mississippi river. It grows to a greater height than any other American oak.

In North Carolina, where it attains an average height of 50 to 70 feet, it is locally found from Lincoln county eastward to Person county, growing on the rich, moist loams of river swamps or on



damp hillsides, associated with the yellow oak, swamp white oak, red and willow oaks, and elms. (Fig. 23.)

Throughout North Carolina it reproduces itself slowly, and young seedlings are rarely found in the forest, although it flowers regularly and matures fruit every two or three years.

The small thin light green leaves, deeply lobed on the sides, are smooth on both surfaces, except for large tufts of brownish hairs beneath in the axils of the primary veins. The leaf-stem is nearly as long as the leaf. The oblong or cylindrous acorn is borne in a shallow cup, which like the acorn, is generally smooth. The long acute sharply angled winter-buds are smooth, as are the steel-gray twigs. The strong lateral roots lie near the surface.

The wood, heavier and stronger than that of the northern red oak, is coarse-grained and porous, reddish-brown in color; the thick sapwood light brown. It is superior in working qualities to that of the northern red oak or any other of the American red and black oaks. In North Carolina, on account of the infrequent occurrence of the tree, the wood is put to no specific uses.

Quercus coccinea, Muenchhausen.

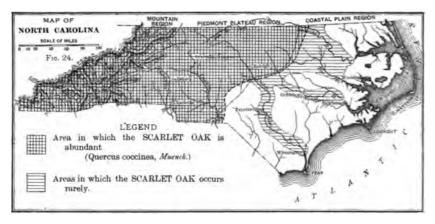
(SCARLET OAK. SPOTTED OAK. SPANISH OAK. RED OAK).

A slender tree, with a short trunk, smooth dark gray or black

finely ridged bark, and smooth gray branches which form an oval top, reaching a height of 175 and a diameter of 4 feet.

It occurs from Maine to Ontario, Minnesota, and Nebraska, and south to North Carolina; reaching its best development in the lower Ohio basin. It is usually confounded with the black oak.

In North Carolina, where it attains a height of 80 and a diameter of $3\frac{1}{2}$ feet, it occurs sparingly in the coastal plain on sandy loam, but is more common in the Piedmont plateau on gravelly loam growing with the post oak, white oak, and short-leaf pine. In the mountains, at an elevation of 2,500 to 3,500 feet, it is one of the commonest trees. (Fig. 24.)



The scarlet oak bears acorns plentifully every 2 or 3 years, and young plants are common through the woods in many of the western counties. Only young trees sprout readily from the stump. Trees over 3 feet in diameter are usually hollow or red-hearted, dry rot causing the defect.

The thin smooth leaves are on long slender stems and deeply cut into long lobes by broad round notches. They turn to a brilliant scarlet in the autumn. The small oval acorns are strongly pointed and half-imbedded in a deep coarsely-scaled cup. The slender, slightly angled winter-buds are pointed, and, like the slender twigs, smooth and reddish. The root system of older trees is distinctly lateral, many of the roots being superficial, or frequently exposed.

The wood is heavy, hard, strong, and close-grained; the heart-wood light brown or red; the sapwood rather darker. The lumber, if used at all, is confounded with that of the red oak. The bark is sometimes used in tanning, but is inferior to that of the black oak. It is rarely used in this State except for coarse staves and shakes, and for fuel.

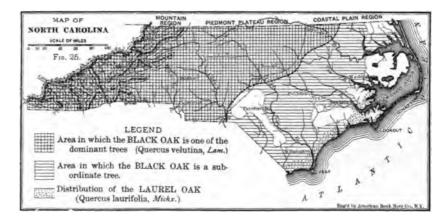
Quercus velutina, Lamarck.*

(BLACK OAK.)

A large tree, with rough or deeply furrowed nearly black bark, grayish branches, a long clear trunk, and an oval crown, reaching a height of 160 and a diameter of 6 feet.

It is very common on dry or gravelly uplands from Maine to Minnesota, eastern Nebraska, Kansas, and Indian Territory, and south to western Florida, and eastern Texas. It reaches its best development in the valley of the lower Ohio river.

In North Carolina (fig. 25), where it attains an average height of 80 to 90 and an average diameter of 4 to 5 feet, it is most abundant in the upper part, and occurs very sparingly, if at all, in the lower.



It bears fruit abundantly at intervals of 2 or 3 years, and seedlings are common under the light shade of the parent tree. Black oak forms a large part of the second growth mixed hard-

*Quercus tinctoria, Bartram.

wood forests in the middle and the lower part of the Piedmont plateau. Large trees are often hollow or red-hearted.

The forest tent caterpillar, Clisiocampa disstria, Huebner, is often destructive to the foliage, and much injury is also caused, especially to young trees, by the oak pruner, Elaphidion villosum, Fabricius.

The leaves are inversely egg-shaped, thicker and less deeply cut than those of the scarlet oak, and usually darker in color and less polished. The small acorn, nearly half enclosed in a thick scaly cup, contains a yellowish and very bitter kernel.

The buds are thick, pyramidal, and downy. There are many deeply penetrating lateral as well as superficial running roots.

The wood is heavy, hard, strong, not tough, coarse-grained, liable to check in drying; bright brown tinged with red in color; the sapwood much lighter. It is used for cooperage, construction, etc. The bark is largely used for tanning. Quercitron, a valuable yellow dye, is derived from the inner bark, which has astringent medicinal properties.

It has been cut extensively throughout the Piedmont plateau for building material and cooperage, and locally the bark has been employed to a considerable extent in tanning.

Quercus catesbæi, Michaux.

(FORK-LEAVED BLACK-JACK OAK. SAND BLACK-JACK OAK. SCRUB

A small tree, with oval crown, numerous irregular drooping branches, and deeply furrowed black bark, reaching a height of about 50 and a diameter of 2 feet.

It occurs upon barren sandy hills and ridges from Gates county, N. C., to central Florida, and along the coast to eastern Louisiana.

In this State (fig. 23, p. 99) it is common south of the Neuse river in the pine barrens, where it has a height of about 20 feet and a diameter of 8 inches.

Fork-leaved black-jack oak, generally bears fruit annually, and seedlings are very abundant on dry sandy soil. Its growth is rapid, but in North Carolina the tree seldom lives longer than 40

years. It grows frequently with the long-leaf pine, and often replaces it after lumbering.

The rather leathery, broadly oval leaves are deeply lobed. The large ovoid acorn is half enclosed in a short-stalked, thick, top-shaped cup. The winter buds are large, conical and covered with brownish down. The root system consists of deep lateral roots.

The wood is heavy, hard, strong, close-grained, compact, and light brown in color; the sapwood somewhat lighter. It is largely used for fuel. The ash is rich in alkali and the bark in tannin.

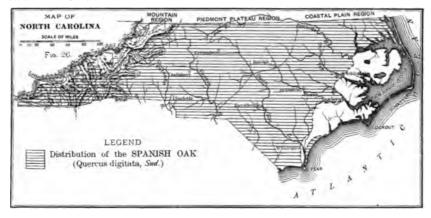
Quercus digitata, Sudworth.*

(SPANISH OAK. RED OAK.)

A tree, with a large spreading top, nearly black rough bark, and smooth dark gray branches, reaching a height of 100 and a diameter of 6 feet.

It occurs from southern New Jersey south to middle Florida, through the Gulf states to the Brazos river, Texas, and through Arkansas and southeastern Missouri to central Tennessee and Kentucky, southern Illinois and Indiana; reaching its best development in the South Atlantic and Gulf states.

In North Carolina where it attains an average height of 70 to 80 and a diameter of 3 to 4 feet, growing on dry heavy soils, it is very common throughout, (fig. 26,) although rather less so toward the mountains.



Acorns are borne in abundance every 3 or 4 years, and young

^{*} Quercus cuneata, Wangenhelm and Q. falcata Michaux.

seedlings are plentiful in rather dry open woods. On the dry, rocky uplands of the counties in the middle part of the State, a considerable part of the second growth is composed of this species. Trees over 3 feet in diameter are generally not sound at the heart. Coppice shoots are very abundant around the stumps of smaller trees. This tree is sensitive to late frosts.

The leaves are divided into 3 to 5 prolonged, mostly narrow, bristle-tipped lobes, and are downy on the lower surface. The short-stemmed fruit consists of a small globose acorn half enclosed in a somewhat top-shaped cup. The light brown winter-buds are covered with a light reddish down. The Spanish oak has, in addition to many deeply penetrating lateral roots, numerous long superficial running roots.

The wood is heavy, very hard, strong, not durable, coarse-grained, and checks badly in drying; light red in color; the sapwood lighter. It is used for cooperage, construction, and very largely for fuel. The bark is rich in tannin. A large amount of Spanish oak timber is still standing in the Piedmont plateau region, where it is one of the most common trees.

Quercus marilandica, Muenchhausen.*

(BLACK-JACK OAK.)

A small tree, with rough black bark, and drooping irregular branches, reaching a height of 60 and a diameter of 2 feet.

It occurs from Long Island, New York, to Wisconsin, southern Minnesota, eastern Nebraska, Kansas, and Indian Territory, and south to Florida and Texas: reaching its best development in southern Arkansas, and eastern Texas.

In North Carolina, where it has an average height of not more than 25 feet, it is found upon barren clay or loam soils, gravelly for the most part. It occurs in all sections, but is rare in the more elevated mountain counties.

It bears fruit plentifully about every other year; and seedlings are abundant near the parent trees and in second growth woods.

The large thick wedge-shaped leaves are smooth on the upper and covered with a rusty pubescence on the lower surface. The

*Quercus nigra, Linnæus.





WATER OAK

small globular acorn is half enclosed in a top-shaped, coarsescaled cup. The conical, bright brown winter-buds are covered, like the angular twigs, with a light gray down. The buds are frequently injured by late frosts. The black-jack oak has a lateral root system.

The wood is heavy, hard, and strong, and checks badly in drying; dark red-brown in color; the sapwood much lighter. It is little used except for fuel.

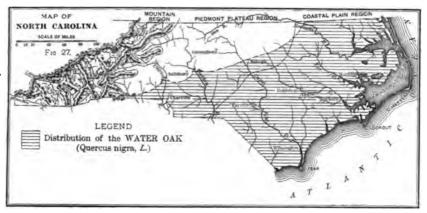
Quercus nigra. Linnæus.*

(WATER OAK.)

A small tree, with a large spreading top, dark rough bark at the base of the stem and smoother gray bark above, reaching a height of 80 and a diameter of 4 feet. (Plate X.)

It occurs from Delaware through the coast and middle districts to Florida and Texas, and westward to Missouri and Indian Territory; reaching its best development in the maritime pine belt of the eastern Gulf states. A common tree.

In this State, where it reaches an average height of 40 to 50 feet and an average diameter of 12 to 20 inches, it is abundant on moist soil, usually bordering swamps and streams, in the coastal plain region and some parts of the Piedmont plateau region. (Fig. 27.)



It is one of the commonest trees on the oak flats about the swamps of the coastal plain.

*Quercus aquatica, Walter.

The larger, crown-forming limbs are often broken, and the stem is very frequently hollow or red-hearted. The trunk is apt to be covered with adventitious shoots. Even large trees send up numerous sprouts from the stump. The growth is generally rapid.

The leaves are generally deciduous, although, on the coast, many remain green during the winter, especially on vigorous shoots. They are thick, smooth, narrowed at the base, and rounded, or 3-lobed and bristle-tipped at the extremity. The small globular-ovoid acorn is set in a very shallow cup. The winter-buds are small and conical, upon slender flexible polished brown twigs. The lateral superficial roots are large and well developed.

The wood is heavy, hard, strong, coarse-grained, and compact; rather light brown in color; the sapwood lighter. It is used only as fuel.

Quercus laurifolia, Michaux.

(LAUREL OAK. WATER OAK. WILLOW OAK. PIN OAK.
TURKEY OAK.)

A tree, with dark brown minutely roughened bark, and smoother and lighter branches which form an oval crown, reaching a height of 100 and a diameter of 4 feet.

It occurs from North Carolina southward near the coast to Mosquito Inlet and Cape Romano, Florida, and along the Gulf coast to Mobile bay; reaching its best development on the Florida coast. A very common tree.

In North Carolina, where it grows to a height of 60 to 70 and a diameter of 3 feet, it is found on sandy loam in the coastal plain region on oak flats bordering swamps, and in the Piedmont plateau usually on damp soils along streams. (Fig. 25, p. 101.)

It bears fruit plentifully once in 3 or 4 years, and in the coastal plain, in moist open woods, seedlings are abundant.

The leaves are thick, smooth, and rounded at each end. The small globose or slightly oval dark brown acorns are set in somewhat pointed very short stemmed cups. The twigs are smooth, slender, and dark brown, the buds pointed and lighter colored. The numerous lateral roots generally do not penetrate very deeply into the soil.

The wood is heavy, very strong, hard, coarse-grained, and inclined to check in drying; dark brown in color; the sapwood lighter. It is sometimes, although rarely, used for clapboards and coarse staves.

Quercus brevifolia. Sargent.*

(UPLAND WILLOW OAK. TURKEY OAK. BLUE JACK.)

A small tree, with large oval crown, rough dark gray bark, and slender drooping branches, reaching a height of 50 feet and a diameter of 18 to 20 inches.

It occurs on sandy barrens and dry ridges from North Carolina near the coast to Cape Malabar and Pease creek, Florida, and westward along the Gulf coast to eastern Texas.

In this State, where it has an average height of 30 feet and a diameter of 10 inches, it is found in the pine barrens of the coastal plain region. Immediately along the coast it sometimes reaches a larger size.

It bears fruit abundantly and at frequent intervals, and seedlings and young trees are common on the dry pine barrens.

The oblong entire leaves are bristle-tipped and covered with a white down on the lower surface. About one-third of the small globose hoary acorn is covered by a stemless shallow cup. The winter-buds are small and oval.

The wood is heavy, hard, strong, close-grained, and compact; light brown in color; the sapwood darker. It is used only for fuel. The bark yields a fine yellow dye.

Quercus imbricaria, Michaux.

(SHINGLE OAK.)

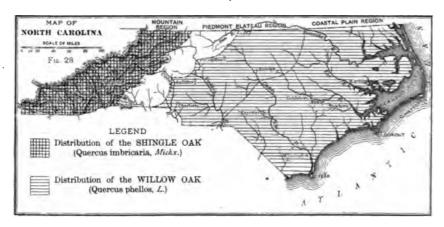
A slender tree, with dark gray, rough or rather smooth bark, and smooth, light gray branches which form a large spreading top, reaching a height of 100 and a diameter of 4 feet.

It occurs from Pennsylvania westward to western Missouri and northeastern Kansas, and south to northern Georgia and Alabama,

*Ouercus cinerea, Michaux.

middle Tennessee, and northern Arkansas; reaching its best development in the basin of the Ohio river.

In this State, where it attains an average height of 40 to 50 feet and an average diameter of 12 to 15 inches, it is confined to the mountains and western part of the Piedmont plateau, where it is usually found along streams on alluvial loams. (Fig. 28.)



Seed years are frequent and young seedlings are common, near the parent tree, on moist valley lands in the mountains.

The oblong lance-shaped leaves are entire, pale downy below, and tipped with an abrupt sharp point. The acorn is nearly globular and about one-third to one-half enclosed by a cup which is covered with broad whitish closely appressed scales. The brown winter-buds are acute and small-scaled.

The wood is heavy, hard, rather coarse-grained, and checks badly in drying; light brown in color; the sapwood much lighter. It is occasionally used for clapboards and shingles, and in construction.

Quercus phellos, Linnæus.

(WILLOW OAK.)

A tree, with large spreading crown, rough dark brown bark, and smooth branches, reaching a height of 80 and a diameter of 4 feet.

It occurs from Staten Island, New York, south near the coast to



CHESTNUT

CHESTNUT. 109

northeastern Florida, through the Gulf states to eastern Texas, and through Arkansas to southeastern Missouri, Tennessee, and southern Kentucky.

In this State, where it reaches an average height of 50 to 60 and an average diameter of 2 feet, it occurs in large numbers in the coastal plain region and, scatteringly, in the Piedmont plateau region, in moist situations. (Fig. 28, p. 108).

The willow oak forms a considerable portion of the second growth hardwood forests on the moist sandy loams of the coastal plain region and young trees are common along the streams of the Piedmont plateau. Young trees sprout vigorously from the stump.

The leaves are narrow, lance-shaped, pointed at each end, thick, entire or nearly so, and downy when young. The acorns are small, globose, and set in a shallow flattened cup. The buds are small, pointed, smooth, and light brown; the twigs slender. The willow oak has numerous spreading lateral roots.

The wood is heavy, strong, not hard, rather close-grained, compact; light brown in color tinged with red; the sapwood a lighter red. It it somewhat used for the felloes of wheels, clapboards, and in construction.

Castanea dentata, Borkhausen.

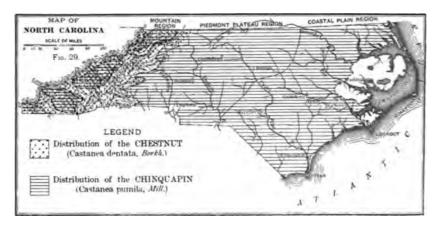
(CHESTNUT.)

A very common large and valuable tree, with deeply furrowed dark gray bark, and smooth light gray branches which form a large spreading crown, reaching a height of 120 and a diameter of 13 feet. (Plate XI.)

It occurs from southern Maine, southern Ontario, and southern Michigan, southward to Delaware and middle Tennessee, and along the Appalachian mountains to northern Alabama, reaching its best development on the western slopes of the southern Alleghanies.

In North Carolina, where it is confined to the mountain region (fig. 29), it reaches an average height of 50 to 70 and an average diameter of 5 feet, but in favorable locations it sometimes attains the largest dimensions given above.

Abundant production of seed occurs about every other year. Young plants are plentiful in moderately open woods and in old fields. The young trees are decidedly light-demanding and die



quickly in deep shade. Specimens over 5 feet in diameter are generally unsound. After lumbering a growth of the same species, together with oaks, (generally the white, scarlet and black oak) springs up. The chestnut enters largely into the composition of most second growth hardwood forests in the extreme western counties. It sprouts very freely from the stump and the shoots often grow to be large trees. The stumps retain their power of sprouting for many years. The trunk is sometimes attacked by the chestnut borer, Arliopalus fulminans, Fabricius, and the nuts by the chestnut weevil, Balaninus caryatrypes, Boheman.

The thin oblong leaves are straight-veined and serrate with coarse sharp teeth. The yellowish-green sterile flowers are in large spreading bunches of catkins, appearing in the middle of the summer; the fertile flowers are inconspicuous. The fruit consists of 2 or 3 flattened dark brown shining edible nuts enclosed in a light brown prickly bur. The winter-buds are small and ovate. A tap-root is early developed. Later, strong deeply seated lateral roots are formed.

The wood is light, soft, not strong, coarse-grained, easily split, very durable in contact with the soil, and liable to check and warp in drying; brown in color; the sapwood lighter. It is used for cabinet-making, interior finish, railway ties, fencing, and

BEECH. 111

posts, and is well adapted for charcoal. An extract from the leaves is used medicinally.

The chestnut is very common in the mountain counties of North Carolina at an elevation of 2,500 to 4,500 feet, and is sawed extensively for local uses.

Fagus ferruginea, Aiton.

(BEECH.)

A tree, with round or oval crown, smooth light gray bark, and delicate branchlets, reaching a height of 110 and a diameter of 4 feet.

It occurs from Nova Scotia and northern Wisconsin, south to western Florida and eastern Texas; reaching its best development on the bluff formations of the lower Mississippi basin.

In this State, where it attains an average height of 50 to 80 and an average diameter of 2 to 3 feet, it is found sparingly and of small size in the coastal plain region, more commonly and of larger growth in the Piedmont plateau, and most abundantly and of greatest size in the mountain region.

The beech bears seed plentifully every 4 or 5 years, or along streams or in sheltered hollows more frequently. Young seedlings are common in damp shady woods, especially above 3,000 feet elevation. Towards the summits of many high mountains it forms, with birch and sugar maple, nearly the entire growth. The young trees are capable of enduring deep shade.

The leaves are thin, smooth, and straight-veined, each vein ending in a large tooth. The sterile flowers occur in small heads upon drooping silky stems, and the fertile flowers are often in pairs on the summit of short stalks. The fruit consists of a prickly bur, enclosing two triangular sharp-ridged edible nuts. The brown winter-buds are long, slender, and pointed; the twigs small and smooth. The root system consists of long superficial roots which are frequently exposed.

The wood is very hard, strong, tough, very close-grained, not durable in contact with the soil, and inclined to check in drying;

dark or lighter red in color; the sapwood nearly white. It takes a beautiful polish, and is used for chairs, shoe-lasts, plane-stocks, handles, and for fuel. The bark is sometimes used for tanning, and a valuable oil is derived from the nuts. The wood is little used in North Carolina except for fuel.

Ostrya virginica, Willdenow.

(HOP HORNBEAM. IRONWOOD.)

A small tree, with smooth dark brown branches, brownish finely furrowed bark, and an oval head, reaching a height of 50 and a diameter of 2 feet.

It occurs from the Bay of Chaleur to northern Minnesota, south to eastern Texas, and along the Appalachian mountains and Piedmont region to western Florida; reaching its best development in southern Arkansas.

In North Carolina, where its average height is 20 to 30 feet, it occurs only in the Piedmont plateau and mountain regions. In rich spots near the summits of some of the high mountains, at an elevation of 4,500 to 5,200 feet, it forms small patches of almost pure forest or grows in mixture with the sugar maple and service tree.

The hop hornbeam bears seed at frequent intervals. Small trees sprout freely from the stump. Numerous adventitious branches grow from the trunks of older trees. It is a slow growing tree and can endure deep shade even in youth. Trees over 12 inches in diameter are very often hollow.

The thin leaves are oblong-ovate or elliptical, finely pointed, sharply toothed, smooth above and somewhat hairy beneath. The male flowers occur in drooping cylindrical catkins, the female in short and slender ones. The fruit is hop-like and is made up of from 12 to 20 seed vessels each containing one hard pointed nutlet. The prominent winter-buds are dark brown and cone-shaped. The hop hornbeam has a tap-root and deeply penetrating lateral roots.

The wood is heavy, very strong, hard, tough, very close-grained, compact, light brown in color, or often nearly white, like the

sapwood. It is used for posts, levers, mill cogs, wedges, mallets, and the handles of tools.

Carpinus caroliniana, Walter.

(HORNBEAM. IRON WOOD. BLUE BEECH. WATER BEECH.)

A small tree, with a short smooth dark bluish-gray or slate-colored trunk, marked by irregular longitudinal ridges, smooth gray branches, and a round or flat spreading crown, reaching a height of 50 and a diameter of 3 feet.

It occurs from Nova Scotia to northern Minnesota, southward to central Florida, and through Iowa, Kansas, and Indian Territory to eastern Texas; reaching its best development on the western slopes of the southern Appalachian mountains, and in southern Arkansas, and in eastern Texas.

In North Carolina, where it grows to a height of 25 feet and a diameter of 14 inches, it is found along water-courses throughout the State.

It bears seed, at least in the Piedmont plateau, very frequently, and young growth is common along streams where the trees stand thinly. The best growth takes place under moderate cover, though the tree adapts itself to a wide range of light and shade.

The leaves are oblong or elliptical, rounded at the base, sharply toothed, and slightly hairy on the veins beneath. The male flowers are in drooping cylindrical catkins. The fertile spikes are terminal, long-stemmed, and 6 to 12 flowered. The angular nuts are solitary and at the base of a 3-lobed leaf-like scale. The winter-buds are small and acute; the twigs slender. The roots are superficial.

The wood is heavy, very strong, close-grained, and inclined to check in drying; light brown in color; the thick sapwood nearly white. It is used for levers, the handles of tools, etc.

Betula lutea, F. A. Michaux.

(YELLOW BIRCH. BITTER BIRCH.)

A tree, with spreading branches, and silvery yellow bark which scales off in thin sheets, reaching a height of 95 and a diameter

It is common from Newfoundland to the western shores of Lake Superior and Rainy Lake, south through the northern states to Delaware, and southern Minnesota, and along the Appalachian mountains to the high peaks of North Carolina and Tennessee; reaching its best development in southern Canada and the northeastern United States.

In this State, where it attains a height of 80 to 90 and a diameter of 2 to 3 feet it is confined to the high mountains, where, in damp woods, it is not uncommon. (Fig. 30, p. 115.)

Seed is produced abundantly every 2 or 3 years, and young trees are common in damp shady woods at high elevations. It grows rapidly when the light conditions are favorable. Specimens over three feet in diameter are usually hollow.

The leaves are elliptical or ovate, coarsely toothed, and hairy on the midrib beneath. The male catkins are cylindrical and pendulous; the female short and nearly erect, which, when mature, form an egg-shaped cone, 1½ inches long, made up of stiff tough 3-lobed scales and containing winged seeds. The flowers appear in early spring before the leaves. The prominent winterbuds are smooth and conical. The undeveloped male catkins are formed in the fall and are conspicuous during the winter. The yellow birch has a tap-root, which usually forks and takes a lateral direction, and several strong lateral roots.

The wood is heavy, very strong, hard, very close-grained, compact; light brown in color; the heavier sapwood nearly white. It takes a beautiful polish, and is used for furniture, veneering, button and tassel-moulds, spools, pill and match boxes, the hubs of wheels, flooring, and fuel.

Betula nigra, Linnæus.

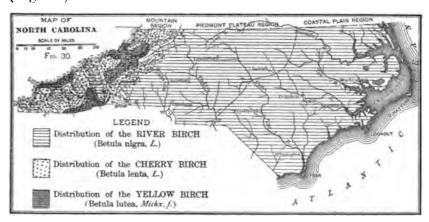
(RIVER BIRCH. RED BIRCH. BLACK BIRCH.)

A tree, with a short trunk, a large, spreading top, reddishbrown furrowed bark on the stem, and on the branches reddishwhite bark which separates in thin papery layers, reaching a height of 80 and a diameter of 3 feet.

It occurs in moist situations from Massachusetts southward through the coast and middle districts to western Florida, and

westward to western Iowa and eastern Texas; reaching its best development in the south Atlantic states and the basin of the lower Mississippi river.

In this State, where it reaches an average height of 40 to 60 and an average diameter of 1 to 2 feet, it is found along streams and on the borders of swamps from the coast to the mountains. (Fig. 30.)



It bears seed at frequent intervals, and young growth is common on alluvial soil near the edges of fields and along streams. Young trees when cut send up numerous sprouts.

The leaves are acute at each end, doubly-toothed, bright green above, and glaucous beneath when young. The fruit is an oblong spike (with woolly, 3-lobed bracts), containing the small rather broadly-winged seeds. The river birch matures its seed early in summer. The winter-buds are oval and dark brown; the twigs brown, and downy when young. The root system consists of deeply penetrating lateral and running roots.

The wood is light, rather hard, strong, close-grained and compact; brown in color; the sapwood much lighter. It is used for furniture, woodenware, wooden shoes, ox yokes, etc., and cask hoops of inferior quality are made from the branches.

Betula lenta, Linnæus.

(CHERRY BIRCH. BLACK BIRCH.)

A tree, with reddish-brown rough bark on old trees, smooth

dark bark which resembles that of the cherry on the branches and on young trees, and a large oval crown, reaching a height of 80 and a diameter of 5 feet. (Plate XII.)

It occurs from Newfoundland and the valley of the Saguenay river westward through Ontario to the islands of Lake Huron, southward to northern Delaware and southern Indiana, and along the Alleghany mountains to western Florida, and westward to middle Kentucky, and Tennessee.

In North Carolina, where it reaches an average height of 60 to 80 and an average diameter of 2 to $2\frac{1}{2}$ feet, it is confined to the mountains. (Fig. 30, p. 115.)

It produces seed once in 3 or 4 years. Young seedlings, which are common in damp cool woods, are short lived if very heavily shaded. Old specimens, over 2 feet in diameter, are often unsound. Young trees sprout from the stump.

The ovate or oblong-ovate leaves are finely pointed, heart-shaped at the base, and sharply and irregularly toothed. The fruit is cylindrical or elliptical, with rounded ends, 1 to 1½ inches long, and made up of small closely set scales. The buds are conical and pointed. The cherry birch has a superficial root system, although in young growth there is a prominent tap-root.

The wood is heavy, very strong and hard, close-grained, compact; dark brown in color; the sapwood light brown or yellow. It takes a beautiful polish, and is used for furniture and fuel, and in Nova Scotia and New Brunswick for shipbuilding. Birch beer is made from the sap of this species. In some parts of North Carolina considerable quantities of cherry birch have been cut for lumber.

Salix nigra, Marshall.

(WILLOW. BLACK WILLOW. RIVER WILLOW.)

A small tree, with a large oval crown, dark rough bark on the trunk, and smooth light brown bark on the spreading branches, reaching a height of 50 and a diameter of 2 feet, or towards its southeastern limit a mere shrub.

It occurs along streams from New Brunswick and Lake Superior south to Florida and Texas, and in the valleys of the Sacramento river, California, and the Colorado river, Arizona.



CHERRY BIRCH

| | · . | |
|--|-----|--|
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

In North Carolina it is found from the coast to the mountains, growing on loamy soils along streams, and reaches a height of 30 feet and a diameter of 15 inches. It is tare in the high mountains, but in the Piedmont plateau is much more abundant.

Seed is borne abundantly and at frequent intervals, and seedlings are common on bottom lands. Trees of all sizes sprout from the stump. It is easily propagated from cuttings. The smaller branches and twigs are often injured by a saw fly, Cimbex americana.

The leaves are narrow, lance-shaped, toothed and tapering at the ends. The flowers appear in early spring in drooping catkins, the male and female on separate trees. The fruit is a pendulous catkin, made up of small capsules containing minute seeds which are clothed with long silky hairs. The roots are very fibrous and tough. The light, coarse grained wood is soft, not strong, and brown in color; the sapwood much lighter. The bark is sometimes used medicinally.

Populus grandidenta, Michaux.

(POPLAR. ASPEN. LARGE-TOOTHED ASPEN.)

A tree, with a short body, pyramidal crown, and rather smooth gray bark, reaching a height of 80 and a diameter of $2\frac{1}{2}$ feet.

It occurs in moist situations from Nova Scotia and New Brunswick westward through Ontario to northern Minnesota, south through the northern states, and along the Appalachian mountains to North Carolina, extending westward to middle Kentucky, and Tennessee.

In this State, where it reaches an average height of 40 feet and an average diameter of 12 inches, it is found in the upper part of the Piedmont plateau, but is not very common.

Although it bears seed frequently, young seedlings are uncommon. The rate of growth is uniformly rapid. The trunk is attacked by several borers and the leaves are often stripped off by caterpillars.

The leaves, which are borne on slender flattened stems are roundish, with 5 to 9 large blunt teeth on each side. The flowers

appear before the leaves in spring in drooping cylindrical catkins, the sterile and fertile on separate individuals. The fruit is a catkin consisting of small dry capsules with minute seeds, coated with cottony down. The buds are conical and slightly downy.

The wood is light, soft, not strong, close-grained, and compact; light brown in color; the sapwood nearly white. It is used for wood pulp, and occasionally for turnery and woodenware.

Populus heterophylla, Linnæus.

(cottonwood.)

A rare and local tree, with oval-oblong crown, dark gray bark, and lighter colored branches, reaching a height of 90 and a diameter of 3 feet.

It occurs on the borders of river swamps from Connecticut, generally near the coast, to Georgia and western Louisiana, and in Arkansas, Tennessee, Kentucky, Illinois, and Indiana, reaching its best development in the basin of the lower Ohio river.

In this State, where it attains an average height of 70 to 80 feet, it is found in the rich swamp lands of the lower Cape Fear river, and probably elsewhere.

The leaves are ovate, serrate with blunt incurved teeth, and downy on the veins beneath.

The wood is light, soft, not strong, close-grained, compact; dull brown in color; the thick sapwood lighter.

Populus monilifera, Aiton.

(CAROLINA POPLAR. CAROLINA COTTONWOOD.)

A large tree, with dark brown rough bark and oval crown, reaching a height of 170 and a diameter of 8 feet.

It occurs from Vermont to Florida, and westward to Montana, Colorado, and New Mexico, growing in low moist soil. It is common in the West.

In this State, where it reaches an average height of 60 to 70 feet, it is rare, and is found in the Piedmont plateau.

It bears seed frequently in North Carolina but never abund-

antly. Young trees are common on bottom lands along streams. Stumps over 18 inches in diameter sprout freely in the open.

The leaves are broadly ovate, and serrate with large incurved teeth. The winter buds are conical, shining brown, and of moderate size. The Carolina poplar has numerous strong lateral roots.

The wood is very light, soft, not strong, close-grained, compact, liable to warp, and hard to season; dark brown in color; the thick sapwood nearly white. It is used for paper pulp, packing cases, fence boards, and fuel.

Thuja occidentalis, Linnaus.

(ARBOR VIT.E.)

An evergreen tree, of pyramidal habit, with a rapidly tapering trunk furnished with numerous small branches at irregular intervals, reaching a height of 60 and a diameter of 5 feet, or at its southern limits reduced to a very small tree or shrub.

It occurs from New Brunswick to Lake Winnipeg, south to New York, Pennsylvania, Illinois, and Minnesota, and along the Appalachian mountains to North Carolina, growing on wet soil. It is very common in the North.

In this State, where it is but a shrub or small tree, it is confined to the mountains.

The small blunt-pointed or awl-shaped leaves are thickly pressed along the branchlets in 4 rows. The flowers are very minute. The light brown cones are $\frac{3}{2}$ inch long, and each of the 6 to 12 oblong rounded scales protects 2 seeds.

The wood is very light, soft, not strong, brittle, and very durable in contact with the soil; light brown in color; the thin sapwood nearly white. It is used for fencing, telegraph poles, railroad ties, and shingles, and sometimes for cabinet work and building. An oil distilled from the leaves has been used in pulmonary complaints.

Cupressus thyoides, Linnaus.*

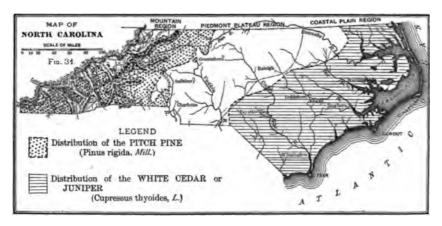
(WHITE CEDAR. JUNIPER.)

A slender evergreen tree, with numerous short spreading *Chama-cyparis spheroidea, Spach

branches which cover the greater part of the trunk and form a conical head, and reddish-brown deeply furrowed or loose bark reaching a height of 90 and a diameter of 5 feet.

It occurs in deep cold swamps from Maine along the coast to northern Florida and Mississippi, and is rare west of Mobile bay.

In this State, where it reaches an average height of 40 and an average diameter of 2 feet, it grows in wet sandy, often peaty, soils in the coastal plain region, extending westward to Wake and Anson



counties. (Fig. 31) It frequently occurs in pure forest, or with the white bay, or scattered in small clumps, in cypress and gum swamps.

The juniper bears seed very plentifully nearly every year. Seedlings are common near the parent trees, but usually die under deep shade. Fire is very destructive to trees of all ages, and extensive areas of valuable timber have been burned, particularly in the Dismal Swamp. In many swamps large quantities of fallen trees, sound and fit for lumber, lie buried at various depths.

The leaves are very small, ovate-pointed, awl-shaped, and closely appressed in 4 rows. The male and female flowers are separate but on the same plant; the male catkins cylindrical, the female globose. The cones are very small and globular, with thick scales bearing 2 or more seeds at the base. The juniper, at least in peaty swamps, has a poorly developed tap-root or none at all, and long strong superficial lateral roots.

The wood is very light and soft, not strong, close-grained, com-

| | • | |
|--|---|--|
| | · | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |



RED CEDAR

pact, easily worked, and very durable in contact with the soil; light brown in color; the sapwood lighter. It is used for boatbuilding, woodenware, cooperage, shingles, interior finish, telegraph posts, fence posts, railway ties, and in the manufacture of lampblack. Charcoal for gunpower is made from the smaller trunks.

The original growth, in most accessible juniper swamps of this State, is being rapidly removed. There still remain, however, large quantities in Dare, Tyrrell, and Gates counties and in the Dismal Swamp, which are yet inaccessible.

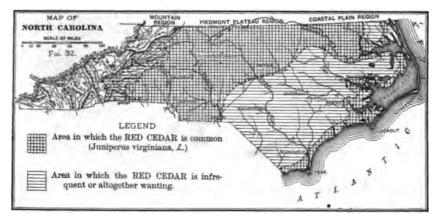
Juniperus virginiana, Linnæus.

(RED CEDAR.)

An evergreen tree, with pyramidal head, numerous crowded drooping branches, and dark brown shaggy bark, reaching a height of 100 and a diameter of 6 feet, or at its northern and western limits often reduced to a low shrub. (Plate XIII.)

It is one of the most widely distributed North American trees, and occurs in all parts of the United States except western Texas, California, and Oregon; reaching its best development in the valley of the Red river, Texas.

In North Carolina, where it grows to an average height of 30 to 40 feet, and an average diameter of 10 to 13 inches, it is found



throughout, but is rare and of small size in the high mountain counties. (Fig. 32.)

The red cedar bears seed abundantly nearly every year. Young trees frequently form a large part of the growth on dry rocky fields and hillsides, particularly in the Piedmont plateau region. Young growth is often overtopped and crowded out by faster growing pines and oaks, although it can live in deep shade for a long time. Small specimens are very sensitive to fire. It is very free from the attacks of insects and from all fungal diseases.

The leaves are small, entire, scale-like, and sharp-pointed or obtuse. The flowers are small and inconspicuous, and the fruit is a small ovate smooth berry, dark purple, and covered with a glaucous bloom. On deep loamy soil the red cedar has a well developed tap-root and numerous deeply seated lateral roots.

The wood is light, soft, not strong, brittle, very close and straight-grained, compact, easily worked, and durable in contact with the soil; dull red in color; the thin sapwood nearly white. It is used for posts, sills, railroad ties, interior finish, cabinet making, woodenware, and for lead pencils to the exclusion of all other woods. The wood is cdorous, and an infusion of the berries is used medicinally.

Taxodium distichum, Richard.

(CYPRESS. BALD CYPRESS.)

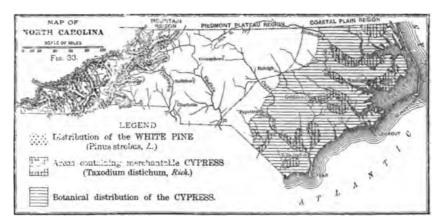
A large tree, of great commercial value, with decidnous leaves, a small flat spreading or pyramidal top, and deeply furrowed or loose reddish-brown bark, reaching a height of 150 and a diameter of 13 feet.

It occurs in wet situations from Delaware to Florida and Texas, and in Arkansas, Kentucky, Missouri, Illinois, and Indiana; reaching its best development in the south Atlantic and Gulf states. It is common and forms extensive forests.

In North Carolina, where it reaches an average height of 60 to 100 and an average diameter of 5 to 7 feet it occurs in the coastal plain region (fig. 33), where it is one of the most common trees along streams and swamps. It is found on a variety of soils between a heavy mud-alluvium and a light sand or rarely on peaty soil.

Although seed years are frequent, young plants are not common.

A growth of gums usually follows the cypress after lumbering. Large specimens have swollen butts which are often hollow. The



timber has frequently small hollows and rotten spots scattered through apparently sound logs.

The leaves are deciduous, flat, linear, and in two rows on the slender branchlets. The male and female flowers are borne on the same tree; the male in drooping flexible catkins, the female in ovoid catkins, singly or in small clusters. The fruit is a small dark brown globular cone with thick scales. There are many deeply penetrating lateral roots, and long superficial roots from which the "cypress knees" grow to a height of one to four feet.

The wood is light, soft, close and straight-grained, not strong, compact, easily worked, and very durable in contact with the soil; light or dark brown in color; the sapwood nearly white. The lumber is known commercially in two varieties, the black and white cypress, of which the former is heavier, harder, and more durable. It is used for construction, cooperage, railroad ties, fencing, shingles, water pipes, and interior finish.

Much of the cypress has been removed along the larger streams and from the more accessible swamps in the northeastern counties for the manufacture of lumber and shingles. Large quantities, however, are still standing in the State.

Pinus strobus, Linnæus.

(WHITE PINE.)

A large tree, of the first commercial importance, with horizontal

branches, and rough furrowed dark grayish-brown bark, reaching a height of 170 and a diameter of 11 feet. (Plate XIV.)

It occurs from Newfoundland to the Winnipeg river, south through the northern states to Pennsylvania, Michigan, Illinois, Iowa, and along the Appalachian mountains to Georgia; reaching its best development in the region of the Great Lakes.

In this State, where it attains an average height of 60 to 70 and an average diameter of $2\frac{1}{2}$ feet, it is confined to the mountains. It grows for the most part at an elevation of 1,500 to 3,500 feet, and is found along the Blue Ridge, and scatteringly in the counties west of it. (Fig. 33, p. 123.)

The white pine bears seed at intervals of from 2 to 4 years. Seedlings are common in open woods, and in old fields on dry poor soil. It prefers a sandy loam, but is found on clay and on sandy soil. It grows usually on rich land or on high dry stony ridges, and often forms large patches of nearly pure forest. The growth is slow for the first 4 to 7 years, then very rapid for 40 to 60 years, after which it again grows slowly. It is a long-lived tree, sound specimens having been found 350 or 400 years old. Specimens under 10 inches in diameter are sensitive to fire.

In the northern states the grub of the pine borer or sawyer, Monohamnus confusor, Kirby, attacks the sound timber, though less frequently than that of decaying trees. The white pine weevil, Pissodes strobi, Peck, causes a great deal of injury by entering and destroying the leaders. This species is also subject to the attack of the grubs of various bark beetles.

The leaves are soft, slender, in fives. The male catkins are oval, the female long-stalked and cylindrical; the cones long, narrow, slightly curved, and tapering to a point. The seeds are small, smooth, and ovate, with thin wings about 1 inch long. The roots, which are remarkable for their durability, usually do not penetrate deeply into the soil.

The wood is light, soft, not strong, very close and straight-grained, compact, easily worked; light brown in color; the sapwood nearly white. It is used for lumber, shingles, laths, building material, cabinetmaking, interior finish, matches, woodenware, and domestic purposes, and is altogether one of the most



'A GROUP OF WHITE PINES

| | , | | | |
|--|---|--|--|--|
| | | | | |





A GROUP OF LOBLOLLY PINES

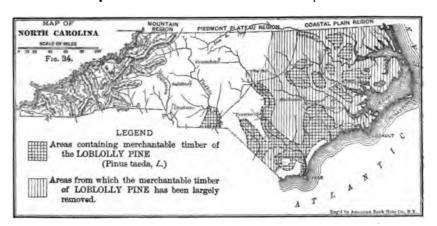
useful timbers of the United States. Its threatened exhaustion is therefore a serious matter.

Pinus tæda. Linnæus.

(LOBLOLLY PINE. OLD FIELD PINE. SHORT-LEAF PINE. SWAMP PINE. SLASH PINE. ROSEMARY PINE. NORTH CAROLINA PINE.)

A large and valuable tree, with a long clear stem, a large ovoid crown, and reddish-brown bark divided into flat rectangular plates, reaching a height of 150 and a diameter of 5 feet. (Plate XV.)

It occurs from Delaware to Florida and Texas, generally near the coast, and north to the valley of the Arkansas river; reaching its best development in eastern North Carolina.



In this State (fig. 34), where it attains an average height of 50 to 70, and an average diameter of 2 to 3 feet, it is found on a great variety of soils and situations from the sea level to an elevation of 1,000 feet. The original growth is on moist deep soil, but the second growth has sprung up largely in old fields, often replacing the long-leaf pine on the moister loamy lands.

It bears seed generally every year, and abundantly once in 2 or 3 years, but much of the seed is imperfect. Seedlings are very common on rather moist soil in abandoned fields. The rate of growth, under sufficient light, is very rapid.

The slender light green leaves are usually in threes, with

rather long close sheaths. The cones are ovate-oblong and 3 to 4 inches long; the scales terminate in short rigid spines. This species has a tap-root and many strong deeply penetrating lateral roots.

The wood is light, not strong, brittle, very coarse-grained and not durable; light brown in color, the very thick sapwood orange or often nearly white. It is used for lumber and fuel. Turpentine is sometimes obtained from this tree.

Pinus rigida. Miller.

(PITCH PINE. BLACK PINE.)

A tree, with an oblong crown, spreading branches, a cylindrical, and often crooked stem, and rather flaky dark reddish-brown bark, reaching a height of 80 and a diameter of 3 feet.

It occurs from New Brunswick to the northern shores of Lake Ontario, south through the Atlantic states to northern Georgia, and westward to West Virginia and Kentucky. A very common tree.

In this State, where it reaches an average height of 50 to 70 feet and an average diameter of 18 to 24 inches, it is found in the western part of the Piedmont plateau region and in the mountain counties south of the French Broad river. (Fig. 31, p. 120.) It grows on dry, often sandy or gravelly ridges, mixed with the short-leaf and scrub pines.

It produces seed often and in abundance, and the seedlings, which require a good deal of light, are common in dry open situations, and in old fields. Young trees sprout from the stump to some extent, but the sprouts are short-lived. The resistance of the pitch pine to fire is exceptionally great.

The rigid flattened leaves are usually in threes, from short sheaths, and 3 to 5 inches long. The cones are ovate and from 2 to nearly 4 inches long, the scales armed with a short recurved spine.

The wood is light, soft, not strong, brittle, and coarse-grained; light brown or red in color; the thick sapwood yellow or often



POND OR SAVANNAH PINE

nearly white. It is used for fuel, charcoal, and coarse lumber. It has been sparingly cut for lumber in North Carolina.

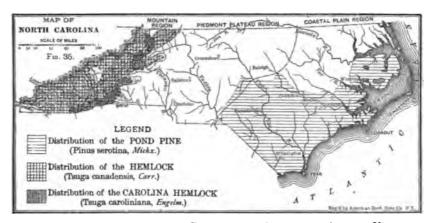
Pinus serotina. Michaux.

(POND PINE. SAVANNA PINE. SWAMP PINE. POCOSIN PINE.)

A small tree, with a short cylindrical trunk, numerous short branches, and smooth dark brown bark broken into rectangular plates, reaching a height of 80 and a diameter of 3 feet. (Plate XVI.)

It occurs on low peaty or wet sandy soils of the worst quality, from North Carolina to Florida, near the coast.

In this State, where it reaches an average height of 40 to 50 feet, it is common in the small swamps of the coastal plain, and



is occasionally found in the Piedmont plateau region. (Fig. 35.)

It bears seed frequently, and young growth is common on wet soil near old trees and mixed with the second growth of loblolly pine. A great deal of the seed will not germinate. It is more sensitive to fire than the loblolly pine. Old specimens are often hollow or red-hearted.

The leaves are in threes, 5 to 8 inches long, somewhat shorter and from shorter sheaths than those of the loblolly pine. The cones frequently remain on the tree several years before dropping their seed. They are round ovate, 2 to 3 inches long, with scales rounded at the apex and have a small weak prickle.

The wood is heavy, soft, not strong, brittle, coarse-grained; dark orange in color; the thick sapwood pale yellow.

In some sections of the State the pond pine is manufactured into lumber with the loblolly, from which it is not distinguished commercially.

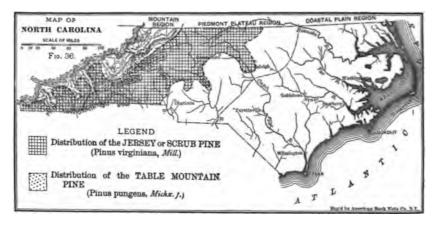
Pinus virginiana, Miller.*

(JERSEY PINE. CEDAR PINE. SPRUCE PINE. SCRUB PINE.)

A slender tree, with a short stem, very numerous limbs which form an open oval or conical crown, and red-brown frequently scaly bark, reaching a height of 120 and a diameter of 3 feet.

It occurs from New York, generally near the coast, to Georgia, and westward to Kentucky, and Indiana; reaching its best development west of the Appalachian mountains.

In this State, where it grows to a height of 20 to 40 feet and a diameter of 12 to 15 inches, it occurs sparingly in the Piedmont plateau on gravelly ridges with the short-leaf pine, and along the foot and on the spurs of the Blue Ridge much more abundantly, mixed with the white and pitch pines, or sometimes forming small patches of pure forest. It is also found west of the Blue Ridge. (Fig. 36.)



Seed is produced plentifully once in 2 or 3 years, and seedlings are very common, particularly in old fields, together with those

*Pinus inops, Aiton.

of the short-leaf pine. The rate of growth is very rapid, but the tree is short-lived.

The leaves are short, 2½ to 3 inches long, rigid, in short sheaths, and usually in twos. The cones are light brown, solitary, curved, and oblong-conical, the scales armed with a rigid prickle. The root system is inclined to be somewhat heart-shaped, with a well developed tap-root.

The wood is light, soft, not strong, brittle, close-grained and durable; light orange in color; the thick sapwood nearly white. It is used for fuel, water pipes, and pump logs. In North Carolina it is used in the manufacture of charcoal, and to some extent for fencing.

Pinus pungens, Michaux.

(TABLE MOUNTAIN PINE.)

A tree, with rough reddish-brown bark and a large spreading crown, reaching a height of 60 and a diameter of 3½ feet.

It occurs along the Alleghany mountains from Pennsylvania to Tennessee, where it reaches its best development. A common tree, sometimes forming pure forest.

In North Carolina it attains an average height of 30 to 50 feet, and an average diameter of 12 to 20 inches, and is found only along the Blue Ridge and the ranges immediately eastward on the driest, most barren ridges, usually associated with the pitch pine, and the chestnut and scarlet oaks. It is most abundant in the southeastern parts of Macon and Jackson counties. (Fig. 36, p. 128.)

It bears seed abundantly; seedlings are common in open woods near the old trees, and in abandoned fields.

The leaves are 2 to 2½ inches long, stout, and generally in twos. The light yellow very compact cone, 3 inches long and 2 inches broad at the base, has very broad strong sharp spines, 1-6 inch long, bent toward the top of the cone.

The wood is light, soft, not strong, brittle, coarse-grained; light brown in color; the thick sapwood nearly white. It is used for charceal and to some extent in construction.

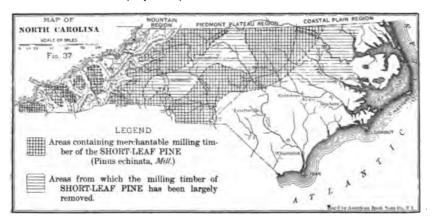
Pinus echinata, Miller.*

(SHORT-LEAF PINE. YELLOW PINE. SPRUCE PINE. ROSEMARY PINE. HEART PINE.)

A tree of commercial importance, with a long clear stem, a broad oval crown, and brownish-red bark broken into rectangular plates, reaching a height of 100 and a diameter of 4½ feet.

It occurs from New York to Florida and Texas, through Arkansas to Indian Territory, Kansas, and Missouri, and in Illinois; reaching its best development in Louisiana, Arkansas and Texas.

In North Carolina, where it grows to a height of 70 to 90 feet and a diameter of 2 to 3½ feet, it is found throughout, and enters into the composition of most upland forests. It appears less commonly in the coastal plain region, being especially rare south of the Neuse river. (Fig. 37.)



The short-leaf pine produces some seed annually, and bears abundantly about once in three years. Seedlings are common on well-drained soil, occupying abandoned fields and often growing in mixture with the loblolly pine. The rate of growth in youth is very rapid. On high exposed situations it is sometimes thrown by the wind.

The dark green slender leaves are usually in twos, from a long sheath, and 3 to 5 inches long. The cone, smaller than that of the other North Carolina pines, and armed with slender short

*Pinus mitis, Michaux.





A GROUP OF LONG-LEAF PINES

spines, is rarely 2 inches long. It has a strong tap-root and several lateral roots.

The wood varies greatly in quality and in the amount of sapwood. It is heavy, hard, strong, and generally coarse-grained; orange in color; the sapwood nearly white. It is much used for lumber, for which purpose it is only inferior to that of the longleaf pine.

In the middle sections near the railroad it has been largely removed. Large quantities still remain, however, in Stanly, Cabarrus, Randolph, Caswell, Davidson, Surry, Wilkes, Alexander, Iredell, Yadkin, Cleveland, Rutherford, and Caldwell counties. The amount sawed in this State in 1894 probably was between 50,000,000 and 60,000,000 feet, board measure, the larger part of which was for local use.

On account of its tendency to spring up in old fields and open woods, and the excellent quality of its timber, the short-leaf pine is probably destined to assume very extensive economic importance in the future.

Pinus palustris, Miller.

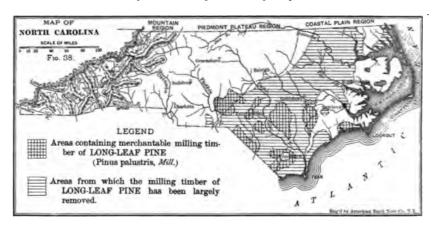
(LONG-LEAF PINE.)

A tree of the first commercial value, with a long slender trunk free from branches, a small round head, and thin bright redbrown thin-scaled bark, reaching a height of 95 and a diameter of 4 feet. (Plate XVII.)

It occurs from Virginia to Florida and Texas, rarely beyond 150 miles from the coast, and reaches its best development in northeastern Texas on the gravelly uplands of the valleys of the Sabine and Trinity rivers.

In North Carolina, where it reaches an average height of 70 feet and an average diameter of 15 to 20 inches, it is found (fig. 38) in pure forest from the Neuse river southward, occupying all the highest and driest sandy lands from the coast to within a few miles of Troy, in Montgomery county, and Rockingham, in Richmond county. Only along its western limits does it occur associated to any extent with other trees. The long-leaf pine formerly extended in an almost unbroken forest to Virginia, but it has been either

entirely cut out or so much thinned that it is of little commercial value north of the Neuse river. The loblolly pine has for the most part taken its place, except on very dry and sterile soils.



The long-leaf pine bears seed very abundantly only at long and irregular intervals. A fair production of seed occurs about once in 5 years, while in the intermediate years the yield is small and localized. After a seed year the young plants are very abundant throughout the woods, but are killed in large numbers either by forest fires, by the dense shade, or by swine rooting them up to devour the sweet tender roots. Young trees are very sensitive to fire. After the first four or five years trees in the open grow very rapidly until about 15 years old, particularly in height, after which time the growth is slow. When the long-leaf pine is cut or burned, and prevented from reproducing itself on account of fires and swine, the loblolly pine often follows on damp soils, and scrub oak or fork-leaved black-jack oak on high dry sandy lands.

The timber loss by fire on long-leaf pine lands in 1893 amounted to not less than \$100,000. At rare intervals extensive tracts are destroyed by bark beetles. Scattered trees are injured in localities where the dead tops have been left in the woods after lumbering. Beetles attack trees which have been injured by turpentine operations, which often so weaken them that many are thrown by the wind. In 1893 the losses, principally through this cause, amounted to between ten and fifteen million feet, board measure.

The leaves are 10 to 15 inches long, in threes from long sheaths,

| • | | |
|---|--|---|
| | | |
| | | • |
| | | |



HEMLOCK

and clustered on the ends of the thick scaly branchlets. They remain on healthy trees about 3 years, but on boxed trees only about two. The sterile flowers are rose colored, appearing about the first of April, and the large silky winter-buds are white. The cones are light brown, cylindrical or conical-oblong, 6 to 10 inches long, and have thick scales armed with a stout blunt spine. A tap-root is developed in early life and is often forked. The root system of old trees tends to be heart-shaped with the lateral roots penetrating deeply.

The wood is heavy, hard, strong, tough, coarse-grained, and durable; light red or orange in color; the thin sapwood nearly white. It is widely used for construction of all kinds, interior finish, fencing, railroad ties, etc. Turpentine, tar, pitch, rosin, and spirits of turpentine are obtained almost exclusively from this species.

The largest bodies of standing long-leaf pine are in Moore, Montgomery, Cumberland, Robeson, and Bladen counties, and probably not more than 50,000 acres still remain unboxed. Wilmington has for a long time been an important centre for the manufacture of lumber from this species, and much has also been cut in the Aberdeen district in Moore and Cumberland counties.

Picea nigra, Link.

(BLACK SPRUCE. HE BALSAM. LASH HORN. TAMARAC.)

A tree, with spreading branches which form a conical crown, a long cylindrical trunk, and dark brown scaly bark, reaching a height of 90 and a diameter of 4 feet. (Plate XVIII.)

It occurs from Newfoundland to Hudson bay, the mouth of the Mackenzie river, and the eastern slopes of the Rocky mountains, and south through the northern states to Pennsylvania, Michigan, Wisconsin and Minnesota, and along the Appalachian mountains to North Carolina.

In this State, where it is confined to the upper slopes of the highest peaks, above an elevation of 5,000 feet, from Elk Knob in Ashe to Clingman's Dome in Swain county, it forms pure forest or toward the summits is mixed with Carolina fir and

beech, and reaches an average height of 40 to 50 feet and an average diameter of 15 to 20 inches. In favorable localities at its lower limits, it attains a height of nearly 100 and a diameter of 4 feet.

It bears seed in abundance, in this State, only at long and irregular intervals. Young growth, however, is common in the thick woods.

Great quantities of spruce have been destroyed by bark beetles, notably in Maine and in the Adirondack mountains of New York. A bud worm, Tortrix fumiferana, Clemens, which attacks the shoots and foliage, is one of its most deadly enemies.

The dark green needle-shaped rigid leaves are scattered on all sides of the slightly downy branchlets. The cones are ovate or ovate-oblong and 1 to 1½ inches long, with thin roundish scales.

The wood is light, soft, not strong, close and straight-grained; light red, or often nearly white in color; the sapwood lighter. It is used for construction, shipbuilding, piles, posts, railroad ties, etc. Spruce beer is made from this species.

The largest bodies of spruce, in North Carolina, are on the Black mountains in Yancey county, Grandfather mountain in Watauga, the Balsam mountains in Haywood, and the Great Smoky mountains in Swain county.

Tsuga canadensis, Carrière.

(HEMLOCK. SPRUCE PINE.)

A large tree, with a large conical crown, numerous spreading branches, and dark red-brown deeply furrowed bark, reaching a height of 110 and a diameter of 6 feet. (Plate XIX.)

It occurs generally on northern slopes from Nova Scotia to northern Wisconsin, and south to Delaware, Michigan, central Wisconsin, and along the Appalachian mountains to Alabama; reaching its best development in the high mountains of North Carolina and Tennessee.

In North Carolina, where it attains an average height of 70 to 80 and an average diameter of 2 to 3 feet, it is common in the mountains in cool ravines along streams on loamy or rich vegeta-



HEMLOCK



ble soil, associated with cherry birch, yellow birch, and the Rhododendron. (Fig. 35, p. 123.)

It bears seed frequently, and young seedlings are common in the shade of the old trees. The hemlock is very free from the attack of injurious insects. Tall trees in exposed situations are often thrown by the wind.

The dark green leaves are linear, flat, obtuse, two-ranked, and whitish beneath. The cones are small, oval or oblong, with the scales smooth and entire. The hemlock has numerous spreading lateral and superficial roots.

The wood is light, soft, not strong, brittle, coarse and crooked-grained, difficult to work, liable to windshake and splinter, and not durable; light brown or often nearly white in color; the sapwood somewhat darker. Commercially two varieties, the red and the white, are recognized. The coarse lumber is used for construction, outside finish, and railroad ties. The bark is extensively employed for tanning, and yields a powerful astringent. Canada or hemlock-pitch is made from this species.

A good deal of hemlock has been cut near Cranberry for the bark, and large quantities of logs have been floated down the branches of the Tennessee river from Graham and Swain counties to Knoxville, Tenn.

Tsuga caroliniana, Engelmanu.

(CAROLINA HEMLOCK. HEMLOCK. SPRUCE PINE.)

A tree, with conical crown, numerous branches upon two-thirds of the stem, and rough thick red-brown bark, reaching a height of 50 to 70 and a diameter of 2 to 3 feet.

It is found locally along the eastern Appalachian mountains from the Saluda mountains, South Carolina, to Ashe county in North Carolina, where it occurs on cliffs along the South Fork of the New river, near Elk Cross-roads, and on spurs of the Blue Ridge; also in the gorge of the Doe river in Carter county, Tenn. (Fig. 35, p. 123.) It grows on dry and rocky ridges, rarely forming pure forest.

The Carolina hemlock bears seed frequently, but usually not in abundance. Seedlings are common in dense woods.

The leaves are longer and more scattered than those of the common hemlock, to which the tree bears a general resemblance. The cones are larger, drooping, and with spreading scales.

The coarse-grained brittle wood is light and soft; light brown tinged with red; the sapwood nearly white.

Abies fraseri, Lindley.

(BALSAM.)

A tree, with conical crown, numerous spreading branches, and light gray rather smooth bark, reaching a height of 80 and a diameter of 2 feet.

It occurs on moist slopes at an elevation of 5,000 to 6,500 feet, upon the mountains of North Carolina and Tennessee, often forming considerable forests.

In this State, where it reaches an average height of less than 40 feet and an average diameter of 12 to 15 inches, it is common on the highest summits of the mountain region, but it does not occur below 4,000 feet. It usually forms pure forest, but is found mixed with the black spruce, and to a less extent with beech and the birches.

It bears seed at rather long intervals, but seedlings are common under the shade of the old trees. The growth in youth is rapid.

The leaves are somewhat two ranked, linear, flattened and obtuse, and remain on the trees for several years. The cones are 1 to 2 inches long.

The wood is very light, soft, not strong, coarse-grained; light brown in color; the sapwood nearly white. It is little used. A thin, clear liquid called turpentine or balsam, derived from blisters on the bark, is used for cuts and sores.

Sabal palmetto, Loddiges.

(PALMETTO.)

An endogenous tree, destitute of branches, with a small oval or





A GROUP OF PALMETTOS. SMITH'S ISLAND.

137

globose head formed of the large round leaves, and rough furrowed dark brown bark, reaching a height of 40 and a diameter of 3 feet. (Plate XX.)

It occurs from Smith Island off Cape Fear river, North Carolina, to Key Largo, Florida, and along the Gulf coast to the Appalachicola river; reaching its best development on the west coast of Florida, south of Cedar Keys.

In North Carolina, it is found on deep sandy or loamy soil with the live oak, American olive, and water oak, and attains a height of 30 feet and a diameter rarely exceeding 18 inches. Its rarity renders it of little commercial importance.

The leaves are large, fan shaped, palmated, and borne on stems 18 to 24 inches long. The flowers are small, greenish, and in small clusters, and the fruit is a small rounded drupe.

The wood is light and soft; light brown in color; the fibrovascular bundles hard, dark, and difficult to work. It is impervious to the attacks of the teredo, very durable in water, and is largely used for piles and wharves. The inner portion of the young plant is edible, and is often pickled.

| | | , | | |
|---|---|---|--|--|
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| • | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | · | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |

FORESTS OF NORTH CAROLINA.

BY

WILLIAM WILLARD ASHE.

| | , | | |
|--|---|---|--|
| | | • | |
| | • | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | • | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

THE FORESTS OF NORTH CAROLINA.

BY W. W. ASHE.

FOREST DIVISIONS.

North Carolina can be divided topographically into three wellirked divisions:

1. THE COASTAL PLAIN REGION, or coastal division lying to the stward and extending inland from the coast for a distance of one ndred to one hundred and fifty miles, has an aggregate area proximating 24,000 square miles. Its surface is that of a gently dulating plain of slight elevation (ten to fifty feet above sea vel) and more nearly level surface eastward, and becoming more evated (three hundred to five hundred feet) and rolling along its stern border. The upland soils are sandy loams and loams, ely stiff, moderately fine and even-grained. To the north the Neuse river loams and loose loams are the more frequent land soils; to the south of this river they are more sandy. In e more eastern portion of this region, in the vicinity of the coast, e numerous and extensive swamps, due either to insufficient rface drainage, or the presence beneath the surface soil of permeable strata. Their soils are silty and clayey, and comct; or sandy and loamy, and loose; over limited areas they e peaty; where they border the larger streams, that have their ad-waters beyond the coastal plain region, they are silty with a iall admixture of vegetable matter.

In this region the normal annual temperature is about 61°F.; d the normal annual rainfall about fifty five inches.

2. The Piedmont plateau region, extending westward from the astal plain, lies parallel to the Atlantic shore, and to the Blue idge, the eastern base of which marks the region's western bort. It is an extended peneplain, one hundred and fifty to two indred miles in width, and has an area of about 22,000 square

miles. In the east its surface is rolling, but adjacent to the larger streams, and toward the western limit, it becomes more hilly and rugged, and in places even mountainous, being penetrated by spurs from the Blue Ridge. It has an average altitude above sealevel of 850 to 900 feet, but rises at the highest peaks to a little over 3,000 feet; along its extreme eastern border it is not over 400 to 500 feet. On the uplands the soils may be described in general terms as loams, sandy in some places and clayey in others, formed by the decay of slates, gneisses, granites, and other crystalline rocks. Along the numerous streams the soil is usually a fluvial deposit: a rich dark-colored loam, containing a varying proportion of vegetable matter.

The Piedmont plateau region has an average temperature of about 58.5° or 59° F., and an annual rainfall of about fifty inches.

3. The mountain region embraces an irregular and mountainous table-land, which lies between the escarpment of the Blue Ridge on the east and the Great Smoky mountains on the west. Numerous cross-chains, separated by narrow valleys or broader river basins, connect these two mountain ranges. The region has an average altitude above sea level of about 3,500 feet, but rises (at Mt. Mitchell) to 6,711 feet. It has an area of nearly 6,000 square miles. Although the mountain slopes are often steep, the soil is usually fertile, being a loam of varying physical character but generally rich in humus, open or porous and easily cultivated.

The average temperature for the region probably approximates 50° F., varying from 57.8° F., at Hot Springs, to an estimated temperature for the summit of Mt. Mitchell of less than 38° F.;* the normal annual precipitation is about 57 inches.

The rainfall throughout the State is about evenly distributed through the seasons; more falls, however, in July and August, and less in October and November, than at other seasons.

There are few late spring frosts; and only occasionally are there early autumn frosts before the wood has ripened at the end of the growing season.

^{*}Climatology of North Carolina, N. C. Agr. Exp. Sta. Rept., Raleigh, 1892; p. 166.

Coinciding in general with the three topographic divisions described above are three well-marked forest divisions. That lying to the eastward will be called the coastal plain forest region. It includes the northern part of the great southern maritime pine belt which, more or less interrupted, but retaining its characteristic arborescent growth, extends from eastern Virginia to eastern Texas. It corresponds to the Louisianian zone of the biologists.

The second forest division will be considered as the *Piedmont forest region*. The forests of this region are typical of the hill-country of the South Atlantic and Gulf states, and corresponds to the Carolinian zone of the biologists.

The most western division will be considered as the mountain forest region. It forms almost the southern portion of the Appalachian forests which extend from northern Alabama to Pennsylvania and New York, and is the Appalachian life zone of the biologists. On the higher mountains, but on no peaks under 5,000 feet elevation, occur isolated groups of forests, which are referred by the biologist to a more northern zone, the Canadian; but these forests are not important enough, or sufficiently extensive in this State, to require more than a slight description.

FORESTS OF THE COASTAL PLAIN REGION.

The forests of the coastal plain region are characterized by a dominant growth of pines* on the uplands, except over limited areas where broad-leaf evergreen trees are dominant; and conifers of several species, associated with broad-leaf trees, many of them evergreen, on the lowlands.

The variations in the character of the forests of the coastal plain region are the result of the influences of three factors:

(1) The maritime conditions, due to the proximity to the ocean and sounds, which perceptibly affect the composition of the forest only in the immediate vicinity of the coast; (2) elevation above the sea level, which is so slight as to cause evident effects only along the western limits of the region; (3) differences in the soils, to which is largely due the distribution within the region of the

^{*}Pines occurring over the larger portion of this region all have 3 leaves to the sheath.

economic forests. The influence of the two first factors is through the temperature and relative humidity of the locality affecting the length of the growing season, the average annual temperature, and the amount of heat, or the extremes of heat or cold.

The conjoined effects of these factors separate the forests of the coastal plain region into three parallel zones or belts: (1) The maritime forests, lying to the eastward along the coast, and under the influence of the sea; (2) the forests of the pine belt; (3) the transitional forests lying along the western border of the region.

MARITIME FORESTS.

The maritime forests, extending northeast and southwest along the entire coast-line, rise from high-water mark, cover the narrow islands, the so-called banks skirting the coast, and on the mainland extend inland for a short distance, fringing the margins of the numerous streams, bays, and inlets about as far as tidal effects occur. This area is only a few hundred square miles in extent, having a length of about two hundred and fifty miles and a breadth in this State rarely exceeding four or five.

THE SOILS OF THE MARITIME DIVISION.

The upland soils of the maritime forest belt are of sand or exceedingly loose sandy loams, in a few places calcareous or limy; being sea beaches, or the remnants of former beaches lying within the existing one, and bordering the sounds and the narrow inlets. There is scarcely a differentiation into soil and subsoil, except occasionally in the larger proportion of organic matter contained in the superficial layers. Both upper and lower layers are identical in consistency, formed of large-sized and even-grained sand, with a small proportion of lime, in the form of calcium carbonate, from the weathering and disintegration of marine shells. The land surface rises usually only a few feet above high tide, though in a few places there are altitudes of 40 feet or more. Where the soils are fine-grained they are continually moist from water suspended by capillarity; where coarser and porous, they are soon dry, superficially, even soon after rains. The surface is

rolling, and in a few places there are hills with broad rounded crowns, where the force of wind and surf has lifted the loose sand high above the general level.

CONDITION OF THE FORESTS.

The forests of this maritime area are composed chiefly of broad-leaf evergreen trees: water oak, laurel oak, live oak, devilwood, mock-orange, smooth sweet bay, palmetto, yaupon and myrtle, with a single resinous species, the red cedar; while broadleaf deciduous trees are represented chiefly by the southern lin, prickly ash,* buckthorns, planer-tree and water hickory, but these are not abundant, and are nearly confined to the alluvial soils or those richest in organic matter. The laurel oak and live oak are the most characteristic trees, being common throughout, and not being found in this State farther inland; although to the southward, following the isothermal, they occur far from the coast. Other trees which in this State are limited in their distribution to the maritime forests, are the devilwood, mock-orange, smooth sweetbay, palmetto, planer-tree and magnolia. The water hickory, found on the banks of the larger streams, extends a few miles farther inland than most of these trees, and the same may possibly be true of the planer-tree; while the water oak, red cedar and one species of buckthorn extend to within the Piedmont plateau region.

The growth of the original forest where it is yet preserved is from 40 to 60 feet in height, the trees short-boled, the crowns large and spreading, interlaced into a dense canopy. Water oak, laurel oak, live oak, red cedar, smooth sweet bay, holly, and mockorange, in relative abundance about in the order named, constitute from one-half to over three-fourths of the growth. Where culling has been carried on occasional loblolly pines have gained a foothold, or abundant-seeding species like yaupon, red cedar and the laurel oak have greatly multiplied.

Beginning at the Virginia line and passing to the south, there is a constant increase in the number of species present, so that while only a few species are represented beyond the Albemarle sound the number reaches a maximum in this State at and around

the mouth of the Cape Fear river, where at least two species find their northern limits. This enables the maritime forests to be roughly separated into two divisions: one lying to the north of Cape Hatteras, which point may be considered to mark the division between the two; and the other to the south of this cape. In the northern division, water oak and live oak, and red cedar form nearly the entire arborescent growth; while in the southern, with these occur the laurel oak, mock-orange, and, but irregularly distributed, the palmetto, devilwood, and magnolia. The palmetto is confined to Cape Hatteras and Smith's Island, the magnolia to the coast region of Brunswick county.

Where the soils are more moist, the growth is largely of water oak and laurel oak, holly, smooth sweet bay, and mock-orange, with occasional lins, or other kinds of oaks in addition to those named above, which form a dense upper story; beneath them are small shade-bearing trees or shrubs. The forest floor is good and the humus deep. Where the soils are drier, either from greater coarseness of the sand or from being more elevated above sea level, red cedar, live oak and prickly ash, enter more largely into the composition of the forest, the trees being smaller in size and with shorter boles. On the driest soils, the growth is restricted to scattered groves of red cedar, half shrubby forms of the live oak, thickets of plum and yaupon, and other shrubs which rapidly propagate by means of root-shoots and suckers.

Probably not over one-half of the area is wooded; the remaining portion is naked, only a small part of it being under cultivation. In places along the coastal islands, and this is particularly true to the north of Cape Hatteras, there are great stretches destitute of all tree growth, the soil being a coarse beach-sand, the surface of which rises into parallel ridges which reach a height, in places, of 70 or more feet above sea level; and this sand, being fixed by no network of plant root-fibers, and containing no binding ingredient, is constantly shifting under the impact of the winds. Some such areas were originally forest-covered, but once cleared, and the humus, which was slightly cohesive, destroyed, the constant movement of the sand before the winds, which have piled it into shifting dunes, has prevented a general growth of any kind from secur-

ing a foothold. Fishermen's houses have been destroyed by these moving dunes and their sites obliterated, and others are menaced by them. Considerable areas of forest have been destroyed by the roots of trees being deeply covered with sand or the entire forest buried, thus increasing the extent of the shifting dunes. Occasional clumps of prickly ash and devilwood, which put forth adventitious roots from the young twigs as they are partly covered by the sand, or thickets of shrubby live oak, plum, and shrubs which sucker freely, maintain themselves in some places for many years. All oaks, except the youngest, are killed by such moving dunes. Red cedar, holly, palmetto, mock-orange and myrtle, not rooting from the young wood, are quickly destroyed by the covering of sand.

A maritime dune, over two miles in length and twenty feet in height, is now moving across Smith's Island, which lies at the mouth of the Cape Fear river. Starting in the southwest part of the island, and moving to the northward, it has already destroyed the forest along the southern edge of the island.

Commercially these forests are unimportant except where they produce, on some of the islands, a limited number of red cedar posts. Their protection is worthy of consideration, however, as they act as a safeguard in preventing the formation of inlets which would impair existing water-ways.

THE FORESTS OF THE PINE BELT.

These forests extend from within a few miles of the sea coast inland to near the western limits of the coastal plain region, and embrace the greater portion of the economic forests of the region as well as cover the greater part of its area.

FOREST TREES.

The pines growing in this pine belt are the long-leaf, the loblolly, the pond and in some places the short-leaf. They are for the most part confined to the uplands, and form the dominant growth with broad-leaf trees beneath them, or occur as a pure growth. Other coniferous or resinous trees found are the cypress, white cedar, and red cedar, all of which in the original forests are confined to the lowlands. The broad-leaf trees are chiefly water oak, willow oak, Spanish oak, swamp chestnut oak, overcup and post oaks, and such smaller species of oak as upland willow oak and the black-jack oak, which, though very abundant, are at present economically of little value; sweet gum, water gum and tupelo, elms, red maple, hackberry, hickories (chiefly the white, shagbark, and bitternut), and dogwood.

The larger broad-leaf trees, with the cypress and cedars, are confined to the lowlands and better class of soils, pines superseding them on the drier or impoverished soil of the uplands.

DISTINCTIVE GROWTH.

The difference between these forests and those of the maritime division are marked: The latter are composed mostly of broadleaf evergreen species; the former are composed largely of pines and broad-leaf deciduous trees. A few trees are common to both forests. Thus the water oak is a conspicuous tree in both; but the red cedar is infrequent or altogether wanting over the larger part of the area of the pine belt. The smooth sweet bay of the maritime belt is represented in the pine belt by the closely related sweet bay. (See p. 26.)

PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE PINE BELT.

The surface of this part of the coastal plain region is gently rolling, there being, particularly to the eastward, areas of large extent almost level, but along the western border, especially in Harnett, Moore and Richmond counties, it is hilly and broken. The area is nearly as great as that of the coastal plain forest region, and the altitude above the sea level is about the same as was given for that, being from 10 or 15 feet along the eastern border to 150, and even 300 feet, in Moore county, along the western border.

To the eastward, in the neighborhood of the coast, where the drainage is insufficient to remove the rainfall, there are extensive areas of lowlands or swamp, mostly forest-covered; while westward, where the fall permits more thorough drainage, the swamps are restricted to narrow borders contiguous to the streams. The

entire swamp-area of the region aggregates nearly 4,600 square miles.

THE CHANGES IN THE KIND OF FOREST GROWTH.

The changes in the condition of the forest growth are due almost entirely to variations in the character of the soils: porosity, fertility, the amount of moisture contained in them, and to the distribution of the soil-moisture during the growing season. extremes of moisture encountered are from wet, or even inundated soils throughout the growing-season, to dry soils for the greater part of the year, except immediately after a rain. In fertility the range is between compact and fine-grained "mud" alluvium, containing in abundance all the elements of plant-food, to almost pure sand; in porosity, from coarse-grained sand of great depth, to compact shallow top-soils with impermeable substrata. soils are almost destitute of humus, while others are constituted largely of decaying or decayed vegetable matter. Such extremes of soils are often in juxtaposition, there being no easy gradation from one to the other, so that the contrast and line of demarcation between the two, and the respective arborescent growth which they support, is sharply and distinctly defined.

The forests of the pine belt are separable into two groups: those of the uplands, on which the long-leaf and loblolly pines are the dominant trees; and those of the lowlands on which white cedar, cypress, or broad-leaf trees are the most abundant.

THE FORESTS OF THE PINE BELT UPLANDS.

Forests of pine covered, at least in their original distribution, all of the uplands, there being only a few local areas on which broadleaf trees were not subordinate to them. To the north of the Tar river, except on the porous and highly silicious soils where pure and uninterrupted forests of long-leaf pine occurred, the original forests were composed of alternating belts of short-leaf and loblolly pines; the short-leaf pine, with a subordinate growth of broad-leaf trees, largely oaks, dominating along the crests and on the drier and more gravelly soils, as occasional trees of this species still standing now testify; while on the lower, moister, loamy

soils grew the loblolly pine, forming a ruling pure growth or coordinate with broad-leaf trees. To the north of the Roanoke river the long-leaf pine probably formed only two extensive forests: one on the sandy area extending north and south through Gates county, the other on "long ridge," an elevated body of sand lying to the south of the Dismal Swamp. To the south of the Roanoke river, the areas of sandy soils with the accompanying growth of long-leaf pine were more frequent, extensive bodies occurring in Halifax, Bertie, and Edgecombe counties; while in Wayne and Nash counties, to the north of the Neuse river, began the forests of this tree, which extended with their continuity scarcely bloken except by the water courses, west to the oak uplands of the Piedmont plateau and southwestward to the Gulf of Mexico. Within this area, only adjacent to the swamps were there at the first settlement of this country more than scattered trees of the loblolly pine.

The influence of man in changing and modifying the distribution of these trees in the two hundred years that have followed has been enormous.

To the north of the Neuse river the long-leaf pine has nearly disappeared. Occasional solitary trees are still to be found among other kinds of pines, or broad leaf trees, and on the sand hills of Wayne county, and in the flats of the great Dover swamp, groups of a few trees yet occur; but their commercial value as forest trees in this section has passed away. The short-leaf pine has as thoroughly disappeared from the counties lying to the north of the Tar river as has the long-leaf; the loblolly pine with an accompanying growth of small broad-leaf trees has succeeded both.

At the present time the forest of the uplands are separable into two divisions with distinct arborescent growth:

- (1.) That in which the long-leaf pine is the dominant economic tree: the long-leaf pine woodland.
- (2.) That in which the loblolly pine is the dominant economic tree: the level pine woodland.

In the present aspect of the forest there is no sharp line of demarcation between the two, but a differentiation is made for simplifying their consideration, as there are large areas, particularily to the south of the Neuse river, on which the two trees occur side by side forming about equal proportions of the woods, but in such places the loblolly pine is in process of supplanting the long leaf pine, and such woodland will be considered from a sylvicultural point of view, as being more suitable for the growth and development of the loblolly than the long-leaf pine. The commercial timbers of each kind now on these lands will, however, be considered.

LONG-LEAF PINE WOODLAND.

The area on which the long-leaf pine is the dominant tree, or where it yet exists side by side with the loblolly pine, extends from near Bogue sound in Carteret county, southward along the great sand bank lying between the sounds and the swamps; from the borders of the Dover swamp northward to Enfield in Halifax county, and Nashville (within the transitional division) westward to Cary (in Wake county), Sanford (in Moore county), and the eastern edge of Montgomery county, and the southeastern corner of Anson county. To the northeastward of this area, wherever the soil was suitable, the long-leaf pine has been replaced by the loblolly; but on limited areas of sandy soils, occasional specimens of the former species yet stand, unsurrounded by other large forest trees, but showing that its fellows once tenanted the entire soil. Such areas will be fully described in considering the pine barrens.

Along the great sand hills just within the sounds, the long-leaf pine occurs in open forests of small trees, now largely removed; further inland, on the praries and hillocks in the swamps and the wet-soiled downs of the coast of Brunswick county, clumps of larger trees grow at intervals; on the loams in the basins of the Black and Northeast Cape Fear rivers, and on similiar soils in Columbus, Bladen, and Robeson counties, the long-leaf and lob-lolly pines are found together; while northward to northern Wayne, and westward to Wake and Anson counties, it forms, where unlumbered or not destroyed, a nearly pure growth of medium-sized trees.

Leaving out of consideration the few trees disseminated through

the swamps on hillocks, the long-leaf pine occurs on two classes of soils:

- (1.) The sands of the pine barrens, which include the drier forest lands between the sounds and the great swamps, and the greater areas of dry sandy soils lying in the western parts of the coastal plain.
- (2.) The loams of level pine woodland which are at present in most places the debatable ground between the long-leaf and lob-lolly pines, and are, in certain sections, largely occupied by the latter species. Such areas on which the loblolly pine is now dominant will be described in considering that tree.

In the forests on both kinds of soil dissimilar changes in their composition are in progress, the result of nearly the same factors

THE PINE BARRENS.

The largest detached areas of pine barrens are the long ridge, lying to the south of the Dismal Swamp, the areas in Gates and Green counties, the one to the north of the Neuseriver in Craven county, narrow strips lying north and south in Pender and Duplin counties, a great part of New Hanover county, considerable areas in the southern part of Bladen, the middle and southern parts of Wayne and Columbus, and a narrow belt lying between the vast coastal swamps and the coast in the counties of Brunswick, Onslow, and Carteret; while a single large body extends from the northern part of Sampson, the southern and central parts of Harnett, northern and eastern portions of Bladen, and northern Robeson counties throughout Cumberland to the western sections of Moore and Richmond counties.

SOILS OF THE PINE BARRENS.

The soils are of almost pure sand, containing very little clayey ingredients; loose, coarse-grained, dry on the surface, even soon after a rain, fresh below, but becoming dry to a considerable depth, and usually with no differentiable subsoil. But in the smaller areas there is a top-soil of sand, often shallow, especially around the edges where stiffer loams form a more fertile subsoil. Geologically they are of recent date.

The distinctive arborescent growth of these lands is the long-leaf pine and several small scrub oaks; the fork-leaf black-jack oak, barren willow oak, and forms of the post oak.

CONDITION OF THE FORESTS OF THE PINE BARRENS.

Generally the pine forests of the barrens resemble a two-storied high forest, there being an upper story of this pine, about 70 or 80 feet in height, with a rather thin cover, even where uninjured by fires or unlumbered; beneath the pine an open growth of the scrub oaks from 10 to 15 feet in height, or in places nearly clear. As the cover of the pines becomes thinner, the scrub oaks beneath them become more numerous. The floor is poor, and there is but little humus; it is grassy with coarse tufts of the wire grass or broom grasses or covered with shrubs. There is no young growth of the long-leaf pine or any valuable tree.

Practically all of the pine has been tapped for its resin, crude turpentine, the amount of round-timber standing, which has not had the trunk excorticated in the process of turpentining, being less than 50,000 acres. Not only has the greater portion of the timber been so boxed for turpentine, but, after the original faces have been scarified as high as possible, and the trees allowed to rest a few years, additional boxes have been cut between the former ones. Many trees, thus weakened by the deeply cut boxes at the collar of the trunk, windfall, and the loss of timber from this cause has been enormous. The resin-covered surfaces where tapped for turpentine are highly inflamable, and fires passing over the dry herbage spread to the trees and frequently destroy them.

This description represents the forests where they are in the best condition, but it is now realized in only a few places in North Carolina.

The greater portion of the forests have been culled for many years, so that there are extensive areas thinly stocked, a few pines to each acre standing in thickets of scrub oaks; or there are large areas of abandoned turpentine orchard, aggregating probably 700,000 acres, but yet containing a small amount of timber suitable for saw logs. There are extensive areas lying within these forests from which the timber has been so thoroughly removed by

fires, lumbering, and a reckless system of turpentining that the lands may be classed as waste, there being on them neither merchantable trees nor young growth of any species which will, in the course of time, yield timber. Nearly all of the waste land in the eastern counties lies in the pine barrens, the larger areas being in Wayne. Sampson, Bladen, Brunswick, Harnett, Cumberland, Moore, and Richmond counties. The entire area of waste land is about 400,000 acres.

The waste lands are due to the failure of the long-leaf pine to reproduce itself to any considerable extent in these vast areas. Their present condition has been gradually matured, and the causes which have produced it may now be seen in operation in nearly any unprotected wood of long-leaf pine, where there is no young growth of this tree. The scanty reproduction is due largely to the fires which in many places pass over the land every year consuming the dead herbage, the wire grass and the leaves of the scrub oaks, and destroying the slow growing young pincs, which by the end of the fifth year have only reached a height of 3 to 5 inches above the ground; the infrequent seeding of the old trees; the enormous destruction of the seed by hogs and fowls when there is a seed-year; the further depredations made by hogs digging up the plant to get the root. It is doubtful if the partial shade of the scrub oaks is sufficient to interfere seriously with the development of the young plant, as great as are its requirements for sunlight and warmth.

The failure of the forests of long-leaf pine to reproduce themselves naturally, except to a limited extent, on any part of the pine barrons, has already been treated of in a previous report of the Geological Survey. It is a matter of importance, as the land in its present state represents a great amount of capital lying idle which might be made productive to the owner, and give employment to labor engaged in handling or manufacturing forest products. It is absolutely essential that the demands necessary for its growth be accorded it—immunity from destruction by fires, protection against the depredations of stock, particularly hogs, both to the seed and the young plant, and protection against the

encroachment of more rapid-growing pines or broad-leaf trees, on soils where such will grow.

POSSIBILITIES OF THE PINE BARRENS.

The pine barrens, on account of their impoverished soils, are incapable of sustaining a wood of a large-sized broad-leaf The loblolly pine seems incapable of naturally securing a foothold in these sands, as nowhere in the forest does it follow: the long-leaf pine as that tree is removed; and on the limited areas of old fields where it has appeared spontaneously, it seems unable to attain a large size or perfect development, the boles being short and crowded with limbs, the crowns large and spreading, the wood in the standing tree, even the sapwood, often evincing at an early age signs of decay. These are, in fact par excellence the long-leaf pine lands. No other tree for timber use is capable of attaining even a moderate development on this soil. The least exacting of the larger forest trees of the State, both in regard to soil-moisture and fertility, it is able to secure by means of its deep-seated taproot, which often penetrates the layers of sand to a depth of ten or twelve feet, the mineral elements necessary for its development, and reach on the most barren soils a height of 50 to 70 feet and a diameter of 14 to 16 inches. On the pauperized soils of the barrens lying near the sounds, the pine is unable to become more than a middle-sized tree 50 to 60 feet in height with a diameter of about 16 inches; on the deep and poor sands of Wayne, the northern part of Bladen, and portions of Sampson counties the conditions of development are similar to or only a little better than those prevailing near the coast, and continue so to the westward through Cumberland, Harnett and Richmond counties, until in Moore and Montgomery counties the loose sands become confluent with the late drifts derived from the sandstones containing clavey particles and a loamy subsoil, where a better growth can be secured. But on many of the smaller areas of sandy soils, where the taproot of the tree is able to penetrate the sand and reach a stiffer subsoil, the tree reaches

a larger size, a height of 70 to 90 feet and a diameter of 16 to 20 inches.

LEVEL PINE WOODLAND.

The surface of these lands, (also see page 161), is very nearly level, slightly rolling, or sloping toward the streams; the soils loose, or moderately compact loams, or sandy loams with somewhat firmer yellow or gray, loamy or stiff loamy subsoils; mostly fine-grained, moist or fresh but well-drained. As they become more moist and more loamy the loblolly pine occupies them, especially over the large areas to the north of the Tar river.

The larger areas on which the long-leaf pine is yet standing are in Edgecombe, Johnson and Wilson counties; the basin of the Northeast Cape Fear river from the southern part of Wayne county southward; large areas in the southern parts of Bladen and Robeson counties and smaller areas in Brunswick and Columbus Counties.

As has been stated, the long-leaf pine formerly occupied the greater portion of these lands to the exclusion of almost every other tree, but as the mature trees of this species were removed or died they have been rapidly replaced by the loblolly pine and, in most places to the north of the Neuse river, and in many places to the south, this substitution has been entirely effected.

The other trees which grow on these loams with the pines are the post oak, the Spanish oak and the black oak, and small hickories and dogwood.

CONDITION OF THE FORESTS OF THE LEVEL PINE WOODLAND

Where pasturage has not suppressed the broad-leaf element, the forests of long-leaf pine on the moist loams also resemble a two-storied high forest. The upper story is a compact growth of pine, 100 to 125 feet in height; the the lower is of broad-leaf trees: post oak, Spanish oak, and black oak, small hickories and dogwood, reaching an average height of not more than 40 feet. In few localities is this condition now realized. The cover of pine has been broken by frequent windfalls and culling; in many places browsing cattle have suppressed the broad-leaf trees, or

they have been killed by fires. The loblolly pine, resisting successfully the fires and uninjured by cattle, has colonized either by solitary specimens or more frequently by groups of a few trees which have already reached maturity, or by thickets of younger ones, wherever openings in the cover above enabled it to secure a foothold. In sections long-settled, where the long-leaf pine has been culled, and in long-abandoned turpentine orchards the loblolly has replaced a great part of the long-leaf pine. The mature loblolly pines nearly equal in height the long-leaf pine and form a part of the cover, beneath which groups of young trees of the former species can be seen in all stages of development wherever, there is sufficient light to permit their growth. Nowhere except in the limited districts protected from fire and cattle, is there any young growth of the long-leaf pine. This tree, once dominant over such an extensive area, is surely failing to reproduce itself. and it is fortunate that a tree as valuable as the loblolly pine is supplanting it on these soils. The greater part of the compact loblolly growth to the south of the Tar river has in this manner gradually extended by occupying the lands from which the progeny of its closest competitor has been thus excluded by the influence of human agencies.

To the causes which have checked the growth of the long-leaf pine on the pine barrens, fires, hogs and infrequent seeding, there must be added another agency which has aided in suppressing it on the level loamy soils—the struggle with contesting species. As the cover in the long-leaf pine growth has been broken, either by trees being removed in lumbering or windfalls, seed from the lob-lolly pines in the swamps and along the streams have been blown in, this pine seeding more regularly than the long-leaf, and its seedlings have taken possession, the young plant not being destroyed by hogs, and by their rapid growth soon getting too large to be easily damaged by fires. Long-leaf pines, which after a time might have succeeded in getting a start, have thus been crowded out by being overshaded by the more rapid-growing loblolly pine. Under existing conditions it is impossible for the long-leaf pine to ever again succeed naturally in forming a growth

on the lands which the loblolly pine has thus possessed. The shade of the loblolly pine with that formed by the accompanying undergrowth of broad-leaf trees is too deep for the growth of the long-leaf pine seedling beneath them, even where there are long-leaf pines standing near that might produce the necessary seed.

SUPPLY AND UTILIZATION OF LONG-LEAF PINE.

The larger bodies of merchantable long-leaf pine lie in Bladen, Robeson, Cumberland, Moore, and Montgomery counties, the last being within the transitional region. There are smaller bodies in Sampson, Brunswick, Columbus, and Harnett counties. Nearly all of this has been tapped for turpentine. The total amount standing is estimated to be less than 3,000,000,000 feet, board measure, distributed so as to yield on pine lands an average cut of less than 3,000 feet, board measure, to the acre.

The greater part of the long-leaf pine timber is converted into lumber. Wilmington, the chief seat of the manufacture of long-leaf pine lumber in North Carolina, is now supplied by rafts floated down the Northeast and Cape Fear rivers. The manufactured products go to coastwise ports and the West India Islands. The total shipments of long-leaf pine lumber from this port for 1896, amounted to about 20,000,000 feet, board measure.

The most active lumber operations in the interior are at Aberdeen, Troy Junction, and near Carthage. These mills not being on large water-courses obtain their timber by means of small railways which penetrate the unlumbered forest, and on which logs are brought in and delivered at the mills.

Logs of great length are easily handled, and a large part of the timber gotten out is of large dimensions for trestleing, framing, and other exceptional uses.

All railways passing through the long-leaf pine region use ties of this pine exclusively; and besides, such ties are used to a considerable extent on other parts of these lines not lying within the distribution of the long-leaf pine.

An explanation of the method of extracting resin from the long-

leaf pine, and the manufacture of resinous products is to be found in Bul. 5 of the N. C. Geological Survey publications, 1894.

TREATMENT REQUIRED BY THE LONG-LEAF PINE FORESTS.

On such loamy soils as are suitable for the growth of the loblolly pine, and which it now occupies in a great part, it would probably be more advantageous to secure in regeneration a pure growth of that species; or, where the loblolly has only lately begun to colonize, to offer it by protecting from fires, full facilities for securing a thick stand as the remaining long-leaf pine is removed.

The area of unlumbered long-leaf pine lands in this State is now of small extent and is the seat of active lumbering operations. The growth of pine is so open (the density in only a few places being over three-fourths of the possibility), that if protected from fire and hogs until after lumbered, there would be sufficient light for a young crop to have secured a start beneath the old pines. In localities in the transitional counties, where there is a heavy underwood of small broad-leaf trees, chiefly post oak, Spanish oak, and white oak, openings would have to be made in their cover in order to afford the young pines sufficient light for development. In many places where the pine has been regularly lumbered or culled for a great many years there is a like thick growth of small broad-leaf trees beneath the remaining pines, and here too the cover would have to be thinned in order to give the young pines the necessary light. In most places there are still sufficient mature pines standing, if left uninjured, to seed the ground after two or more seed-years, if the seedlings are protected. Where there are now no seed-bearing pines a crop would have to be artificially introduced by either sowing the seed or setting out young plants. As seed in a seed-year could be cheaply secured, and the young plants if set out would also require protection, it would undoubtedly be more economical to introduce by seeding. The first and absolute prerequisite before any attempt can be made to improve the condition of the long leaf pine forests is entire exclusion of cattle and hogs, and complete protection from fire. Laws enforcing the confinement of live stock will in a great measure secure

immunity from the first evil and will materially tend to mitigate the second, as the majority of the fires which sweep across the barrens with such destruction are purposely set to remove dried grass and herbage in the spring, and afford cattle the tender, fresh shoots of the year for pasturage.

Especially might much benefit accrue to these districts by the reenactment of special fire-laws for the pine barren districts, affixing more severe penalties for their violation; establishing for their execution an administrative corps of wardens and subordinate officers, with power to summon citizens in case of fires to assist in suppressing them, to inquire into their origin, and to bring suits in the courts against offenders and violators of the laws. The present fire-law is unsatisfactory in offering no adequate means for investigation into the origin of fires, so that it is seldom or never that offenders come within its bounds.

The long-leaf pine can be reproduced only from seed, and is adapted only for pure growth in a high forest with a rotation of from 80 to 120 or more years. As the tree reaches a smaller size and attains a less age on the highly silicious soils of the pine barrens it would be more profitable to use the longer periods of rotation, for the production of larger sized timber, only on the better class of soils. It is more impatient of the shade than any other of the forest trees, the young seedling, even, requiring direct sunlight and enduring only a moderate shade, and the trees when once stunted by over-shading, or too much compression, never recover their normal vigor.

The group system of natural regeneration certainly seems to assure the successful starting of a new crop with a greater probability of success than any other. By this system groups of trees of considerable extent are removed at intervals through the forest, the areas from which they are removed being cut clean, and regeneration taking place by seeding from the adjoining trees. The young seedlings cannot be overshaded by the enlargement of the crowns of still-standing trees as is apt to be the case in selection cutting, and a thick stand, if the group is not of too great extent, more than two hundred to three hundred yards wide, insures sufficient lateral shade during the height-growth stage to

cause the formation of clear boles. Dwarfed and defective trees passed over in lumbering may be left until after a stand is secured, as seed from them will materially aid in obtaining an even distribution of the young crop; but they should be removed as soon as regeneration is assured.

Seed for planting should be gathered in autumn, between the middle of October and the early part of November, care being taken to keep them dry until sown. If the weather is at all moist and warm, planting should take place at once. This will enable the seed to germinate and root before winter. Otherwise they should be kept dry until early spring and planted not later than the first of April.

Only slight preparation of the soil is needed for planting. All broad-leaf trees should be removed, and a plowing to destroy the turf lessens the danger of the young pines being choked by the grass. From sowings carried on at Bladenboro as experiments, it would seem to take about five pounds of seed to the acre, there being about 10,000 seed to the pound.

LOBLOLLY PINE WOODLAND.

The area in which the loblolly pine is the dominant economic tree includes the greater part of the uplands north of the Tar river; most of the area lying between the Tar and Neuse rivers, except the uplands of Edgecombe, Wilson and Nash counties which are occupied conjointly by the long-leaf and loblolly pines; the basin of the Northeast river in Duplin and Pender counties; the uplands of Jones and Lenoir counties and a great portion of the uplands of Carteret, Onslow and Brunswick counties; much of Columbus and Robeson; the southeastern corner of Richmond; the eastern part of Anson and smaller areas in Sampson and Bladen counties.

The forests of this pine are chiefly confined to the level pine woodland with loamy or stiff loamy soils as were described in the growth of the long-leaf pine in the level pine woodland (p. 156).

To the north of the Neuse river, the loblolly pine forms a pure forest over the larger portion of the area, as it also does in a large portion of the coastal counties of Carteret, Onslow and Pender, on the extensive flats of the Lumber river and its tributaries in Robeson county, and on the loose moist sands of the southeastern part of Anson county. Over the rest of the area the forests are more broken, consisting of small groves in old fields, or contain both the long-leaf and the loblolly pines.

CONDITION OF THE FORESTS.

Where unlumbered, the forests of loblolly pine are compact, with a continuous cover, the forest floor being good and with a moderately deep humus. On the best soils the trees attain a height of 90 to 100 feet, with trunks of 40 to 50 feet free from limbs. On poorer soils, especially where they have appeared spontaneously in abandoned fields, which are often on the lighter lands from the greater case with which tilled, the trees are much smaller, not averaging over 70 or 80 feet in height. They have, however, proportionally larger diameters than taller trees and usually shorter boles, the growth, when young, having been so open that the trunks have not cleared themselves from limbs.

This is due to a greater number of the trees being suppressed, more light being necessary for growth on the poorer soils. The loblolly pine generally forms an upper story of pure growth, beneath which when the pine cover is dense there is a lower story of dogwood, post oak, and other small shade-enduring trees: or when the pine cover is open, as is frequently the case, there is a slightly subordinate growth of Spanish oak, black oak, and post oak, small hickory, and sometimes black gum and other trees. There is often a considerable amount of young growth of broad-leaf shade-bearing species, post oak, dogwood, black gum, and sometimes black oak and Spanish oak, which survive for a longer or shorter time beneath the shade of the other trees, the dogwood and post oak on the best soils even reaching maturity. Young pines, however, are wanting; and on the poorer soils broad-leaf tree seedlings only stand the shade, if at all, for a short time.

Where the forests of loblolly pine have been lumbered the pine shows for a few years no signs of succeeding itself, as there are no young pine seedlings beneath the shade of the mature pines. Self-sown seed, however, from neighboring trees or from under-

sized ones left in lumbering, even small trees seeding with remarkable fecundity and regularity, soon produce a vigorous stand of young pines in all open places and also beneath the light shade of the broad-leaf trees which often grow beneath the mature This young stand rapidly pushes upward through the thin canopy to secure the light. As the oak flats are approached, with their more compact and taller-growing broadleaf trees, it becomes more difficult after lumbering for the loblolly pine to replace itself. The rivalry between it and the competing broad-leaf trees is closer and more in favor of the shadebearing broad-leaf element as the cover is less broken, until, on the ever-moist margins of the loamy-soiled swamps, and particularly where alluvial, the pine forms only a small proportion of the entire growth. · It attains, however, in such situations its perfection of individual development. On the other hand, as the drier soils are approached there is less struggle between the loblolly pine and the broad-leaf trees; but as soon as the porous, loose, sandy soils of the pine barrens are reached, the loblolly pine with its delicate, rather superficial root-system is unable during the seedling stage to supply by its roots the water passed off through its leaves by transpiration and it succumbs during the first season.

MERCHANTABLE LOBLOLLY PINE TIMBER.

The merchantable timber had been more largely removed in the eastern counties where the numerous waterways greatly expedited exploitation as well as facilitated shipment of the manufactured products. In the counties lying north of the Roanoke river most of the loblolly pine suitable for saw logs has been cut; only small bodies attached to farms, or situated at a distance from transportation facilities yet remain. Great quantities of timber have been cut during the past twenty years for the local mills, the largest of which are located at Elizabeth City; and even larger quantities have been exported by railways and towed in rafts to mills in the vicinity of Norfolk, Va. Timber for the mills at Elizabeth City is now obtained from the forests contiguous to the Chowan and Roanoke rivers and from the counties lying on the southern side of Albemarle sound. There are still large amounts of pine tim-

ber standing in Dare and Hyde counties. The forests of Beaufort, Washington and Martin counties have, however, been nearly exhausted. In Pitt, Edgecombe, and Green counties exploitation is well advanced in the loblolly pine forests near the railways and water courses, while the greater part of the timber has been removed from Pamlico and Carteret counties. The unlumbered pine lands of Beaufort county lie in the northeastern part of the county; those of Craven in the southwestern part. the swamps in Duplin, Onslow and Pender counties are large unlumbered areas of loblolly pine growth, chiefly where this pine has superseded the long-leaf pine; and in Brunswick, Columbus, Robeson and Bladen counties, along Brown and Green marshes and the flats of Lumber river and its tributaries, are still large quantities of merchantable timber. There are smaller bodies of timber, though scarcely more than is sufficient for local use, in Wilson, Nash, Johnson, and the eastern parts of Wake and Anson counties.

FOREST INDUSTRIES.

The loblolly pine is tapped for turpentine only to an inconsiderable extent, but the lumber industries of all of the towns to the north of the Neuse river and of most of the sea-board towns to the south of it, are entirely dependent on this pine for their logs. The chief seats of the manufacture of loblolly pine lumber are Newbern, Washington, Elizabeth City, Edenton, Plymouth and Wilmington. The annual cut of logs amounts to about 560,000,000 feet, boad measure, less than two-thirds of which is manufactured in this State.

The loblolly pine is not used for railyway ties, or sleepers of any sort placed next to the earth. Railway ties for local use are made from the post oak growing beneath the pine. The dogwood is converted into shuttle blocks. No use is made of the small red oaks and other small trees which constitute the remainder of the forest.

FOREST PROTECTION.

The loblolly pine requires little protection compared with the long-leaf pine. The seed is small and is not seriously destroyed

by animals or in other ways. It falls during the late autumn and winter and sprouts during the following spring and by the end of the first season the seedlings have reached an average height of about seven inches. After that they grow at a rate of about eighteen inches a year for seven years, so that specimens four or five years old are too high to have any but the lower branches scorched by a fire consuming only the leaves and herbage. The thick bark, too, is a great protection to even small trees. Since they grow on moister soils and form a deeper shade than the long-leaf pine which prevents the growing of grass there is less danger from fires. Not being boxed or worked for turpentine the mature trees are less apt to be destroyed by fires.

Where growing on drier soils the growth of the loblolly pine is not so rapid later in life as in the early years and the scars left in the natural shedding of the limbs do not so quickly heal over, many of the trees being affected by fungus diseases which gain access through such openings.

REPRODUCTION OF LOBLOLLY PINE FORESTS.

In old fields and clearings within the area of the distribution of the loblolly pine a spontaneous growth of loblolly pine quickly appears, the light, winged seed being dispersed by the wind for a considerable distance, sometimes hundreds of yards, from the seedbearing trees. The production of seed begins at an early age with isolated specimens, sometimes, when they are under ten years old, but later with those whose crowns do not receive full sunlight, and continues uninterrupted for a great many years. There is seldom a year when some trees in a locality do not mature cones, since the trees grow under such diverse conditions of soils and moisture. The cones, which require two seasons to develop, open and the seed are distributed during the autumn and winter after they have ripened, some remaining unopened until the succeeding spring. The seed retain their germinative power for several years, but usually germinate the first spring after falling to the ground or after being planted.

SYLVICULTURAL TREATMENT OF THE LOBLOLLY PINE.

The selection system of cutting, culling, was formerly much

practiced in the loblolly pine woods when the demand was almost entirely for pieces of timber of exceptionally large dimensions for special uses. By this method of cutting the largest specimens only were removed and the smaller allowed to continue their growth uninterruped. This was before kiln dried loblolly pine lumber became a feature on the lumber market and stocks of all sizes of this pine came into general demand for lumber purposes. Now clear cutting is the rule in lumbering, though much to the detriment of the forest.

In spite of the naturally abundant reproductive powers of the loblolly pine, much can be done during and subsequent to lumbering to facilitate regeneration and secure a thick stand of young pines. With clear cuttings, frequent seed-bearing trees should be left to insure a thorough and uniform seeding of the area at as early a time as posssible. It is absolutely necessary to protect recently lumbered lands from fires, as in the event of one while the ground is encumbered with the tops of the felled trees, all of the young pines will be destroyed. Cattle do but little damage to young loblolly pines.

Existing woods of compact young loblolly pines, in which the trees have reached a height of 35 to 40 feet, could probably be thinned by having the suppressed and subordinate trees removed. to the great benefit of those remaining, affording more light to the crowns and stimulating rapid enlargement of the trunks. Where dense growth is left to natural thinnings, the subordinate groups. the crowns enduring a considerable compression, will interfere for some years with the larger and more vigorous specimens which are ultimately to survive. By securing thick stands, however, during the early stages of development and thinning at the right times, chiefly when the period of most rapid height-growth has passed, the accretion secured within a given time can be considerably increased above what it would be if the wood were left to natural suppression and a prolonged struggle between trees, only a small proportion of which are ultimately to survive. At certain stages of development, however, the thick stands and the struggle between the trees to secure the light is necessary to cause the rapid pushing upward of the crowns and the formation of clean shafts.

In many places where small but vigorous-growing broad-leaf species have succeeded after lumbering in securing possession of loblolly pine lands, it will be found necessary to break their cover in order to permit the pine, unable to endure a heavy shade, to obtain a foothold. On some areas not a sufficient number of seed-bearing pines were left to thickly seed the area even in several years, during which time the broad-leaf trees thicken up to such an extent as to exclude the pine altogether. Where the pines do come up in such situation they make rapid height-growth and soon overtop the broad-leaf trees.

Such conditions as this are only encountered on the better class of soils. In such places either enough pines must be left to insure thick and immediate seeding, or the broad-leaf trees must be removed or thinned simultaneously with, or just after, the cutting of the pines. A portion of the underwood, the post oak and dogwood can be removed without any extra cost, the former being in demand for railway ties and the latter for shuttle blocks, etc. In many places where the underwood is not salable, its thinning or removal in part will be a matter of necessity in order to secure successful reproduction of the pine.

An inspection of loblolly pine lands which were closely lumbered 6 to 12 years ago fully shows that regeneration is imperfect and decidedly irregular, many places of considerable extent being entirely without a young growth of pine.

As is the case with the other pines, the loblolly can be reproduced only by means of seed. It is adapted for pure growth in a high forest with a rotation of 50 to 120 years, according to the dimensions of the timber desired, and the quality of the soils; or it can be grown on the best grades of moist or damp loams, in mixed woods with the large broad-leaf species, under a more lengthy rotation for the production of large-sized timbers.

The trees, especially when young, endure some shade, and during the early stages of development the crowns are capable of withstanding considerable compression, but if overshaded for a long time are unable, when light is afforded them, to regain their vigor. Its easy reproduction by means of the light seed renders it especially adapted to clear cuttings, when regeneration can be secured from adjoining woods. That is, it is adapted to the group

system of natural regeneration with large-sized groups, or the strip system, with groups or strips not over three hundred to four hundred yards wide. This is the method of regeneration now roughly relied on over a large portion of the eastern counties, though the seed from under-sized and defective trees, left on the lumbered area, materially assist. To make certain of regeneration the strips cleared at one time should not have a greater width than four hundred yards.

For planting very little preparation of the soil is required. Thin woods of broad-leaf trees can have loblolly pine planted with them if their cover is sufficiently open to admit of the growth of the pine, wherever the humus is not too deep, without any more preparation of the soil than turning over the humus. Waste places that are not naturally seeded could advantageously be plowed and artificially planted. Seeding can be done in early spring, the seed being covered by harrowing with brush, but should not be covered deeper than ½ inch. The greater part, if not all, of the seed will germinate the same year in which planted, usually in about four weeks. About four pounds of seed are required to sow an acre. There are about 25,000 seed to the pound. The young plants must be carefully protected from fires.

TRANSITIONAL FORESTS.

The transitional forests, lying along the western border of the coastal plain region, are formed by the overlapping of the coniferous forest of the pine belt and the broad leaf forests of the Piedmont plateau region, so that oaks and hickories with the long-leaf pine form the greater part of the growth. These forests are best developed in the middle and southern parts of Nash county, the eastern part of Wake, and the western part of Montgomery. To the north of Nash county, in Northampton and Halifax counties, it is only occasionally along crests covered with sandy drift that the forests are typically developed; elsewhere, on the more loamy soils, the broad-leaf element exists without the long-leaf pine, and is associated with the short-leaf and loblolly pines. In southeastern Chatham and southeastern Randolph counties the long-leaf pine also occasionally occurs along sandy or gravelly crests, but

the area occupied by it is comparatively small. The transitional forest is best developed in the western part of Montgomery county, where it forms a belt three to six miles in width. The trees most abundantly associated with the long-leaf pine are the black-jack oak, post oak, Spanish oak, and white oak, and white hickory; these form a low growth, 30 to 50 feet in height, and are overtopped by the long-leaf pine, which is 60 to 90 feet in height. In some localities the pine forms as much as one-fourth of the entire growth; usually, however, much less.

The lobfolly pine which is associated with the broad-leaf trees in these transitional counties, is very largely second growth.

The long-leaf pine has been extensively culled in Wake and Nash counties, and but little merchantable timber of that species remains; in Montgomery county, however, the forests are still intact.

The long-leaf pine is failing to reproduce itself in these forests for the same reasons that were given for its scanty reproduction in its competition with the loblolly pine; here, the competition is with broad-leaf species.

All the transitional forests lie within the Piedmont plateau region, the forest soils being derived for the most part from crystalline rocks, and are more fertile or at least better suited for tree growth than most of the soils in the coastal plain on which the long-leaf pine is found growing.

FORESTS OF THE LOWLANDS OF THE COASTAL PLAIN.

These forests occur on lands which are swampy or inundated during at least a part of the growing season, and are naturally separable into four divisions which differ in the character of the dominant economic growth:

- (1.) In which numerous broad-leaf trees, chiefly oaks, constitute the greater portion of the growth—the oak flats.
- (2.) In which gums and cypress constitute the chief growth—the gum and cypress swamps.
 - (3.) In which the white cedar occurs—the white cedar swamps.

(4.) In which the pond pine forms the greater portion of the growth or is the largest tree—pond pine pocosins.

OAK FLATS.

The oak flats border most of the gum and cypress swamps, lying between the gum and cypress swamps and the level pine lands. They constitute about one fourth of the swamp area, or 1,000 square miles. The soils are damp or moist usually deep loams, or more often sandy loams, generally inundated during spring, with a good humus and a fair intermixture of vegetable matter in the top-soil.

Their growth is entirely of broad leaf trees, in places with occasional loblolly pines disseminated among them, but the white and water oaks are characteristic. Water and willow oaks skirt the flats. Swamp chestnut oak and overcup oak, Spanish oak, and occasional white oaks form a great part of the growth of the interior; with them, elms, red maple, cottonwood, and more or less sweet gum and water gum. These form an upper story 80 to 100 feet in height, and of considerable density; beneath them are many small trees, post oak, hornbeam, and haws.

Where not suppressed by browsing cattle, or the shade is not too dense, young seedlings of most of the trees are represented. All of the trees endure a light shade in youth; the willow and water oaks least, the white and overcup oaks the deepest and for the longest period. In most localities pasturage is regularly practiced, this woodland being esteemed the best grazing ground for cattle during the spring and summer, and the young growth of tender broad-leaf species is systematically suppressed. Pine and the more vigorously sprouting and rapidly growing species and those seeding most abundantly—cottonwood, water oak and willow oak—largely replace windfalls and culled specimens. The seed of the swamp chestnut oak, overcup and white oaks are largely destroyed by hogs; the seed of the other oaks to a less extent.

There is so little undergrowth, and these woods are so damp, that fires rarely pass through the flats or do any serious damage. Much of the best white oak, the several species, and Spanish oak.

has been culled for making staves or for large-sized timber—tun timber—for shipbuilding, water and willow oaks or pine having replaced them. The soils, being fertile, extensive areas have been drained and put under cultivation. Where such areas are abandoned the loblolly pine with sweet gum, and if seed-bearing trees be very near, water and willow and Spanish oaks establish themselves; the pines first and most abundantly, the others later and in less numbers. If not thoroughly drained, the oaks will in time supersede the pine or a portion of it.

Where the soil of the oak flats becomes at all peaty yellow poplar occurs, but only occasional trees among the others. It is most frequent in the series of counties facing the sounds.

In a few places in the vicinity of the coast, or near large bodies of water where the air is especially humid, there is a considerable intermixture of beech with the oaks.

In connection with the oak flats may be considered the greater part of the alluvial bottom lands bordering the larger streams that have their headwaters beyond the coastal plain region. These fluvial soils are silty, a mixture of the finest clayey and silicious particles, with a varying proportion of decomposing vegetable matter intermixed. The silt becomes finer and the soils more compact as the coast is neared. On the more elevated parts of these bottoms where the periodic overflow is neither too frequent, or the rise of the water too deep, there is a mixed growth of broad-leaf trees. Variations in the kind of trees occur according to the depth and frequency of the overflow.

Where the soils are drier the water and willow oaks, white oak and the Spanish oak with shagbark hickory form most of the woods: where wetter, ash, cottonwood, and hackberry are largely intermixed, these being replaced on the wettest soils by sweet gum, water gum and tupelo with cypress and some cottonwood and swamp ash.

The white oak and ash have been extensively culled from these swamps, and merchantable cypress has been largely removed.

These woods, when oaks predominate in them, are practically under the same conditions and require about the same system of management as will be indicated for the oak flats. The white

and Spanish oak are to be favored at the expense of the oilg less valuable kinds of trees, which if left alone are apt to take their place. On the alluvial lands the species usually succeeding the oaks are the light-seeded sweet gum, cottonwood, sycamors and, to a less extent, hackberry and loblolly pine.

MERCHANTABLE TIMBER ON THE OAK FLATS.

The largest areas from which the white oak has not been severely culled lie in Bladen, Onslow, Jones and Pamlico counties. They will cut to the acre from 40 to 60 cords of mixed hardwoods. Where culling of white oak has long been practiced water oaks have gradually replaced them, in a great measure at least.

These forests yield excellent white oak timber and some "red" oak (Spanish oak) of large dimensions, and suitable for milling purposes; yellow poplar and cottonwood for paper-stock; a limited amount of red maple, and large quantities of white oak railway ties.

SYLVICULTURAL TREATMENT.

The seed of such species as it is desirable to reproduce should be protected from hogs, and cattle should be excluded from all young growth, until it is too large for them to injure.

The most valuable trees occurring on the oak flats are the several species of white oak and the Spanish oak, and forest management should have for its object the increasing of the proportion of these, and preventing the water oaks and other less valuable species from supplanting them.

On large areas where indiscriminate culling has to a great extent removed the species of white oak, less valuable trees have already followed, and but little can be done in the way of natural regeneration to raise the standard. Artificial re-introduction of the white oaks is necessary. This can be accomplished by thinning the existing wood of the least desirable species or by removing decrepit specimens, and underplanting with acorns, preferably with those of the swamp chestnut oak, since in the latitude of this State that is the most vigorous-growing species and reaches the largest size on such soils. Or, the swamp chestnut oak er

| | | · | |
|--|--|---|--|
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

other desired species, can be introduced gradually beneath such breaks in the cover as are occasioned from time to time by windfalls or by culling.

If the underplanting is done by seeding, and where acorns are abundant or can be cheaply obtained this is the preferable way, being less expensive than raising young plants in nursery rows and then transplanting, the acorns should be gathered in the autumn, as soon as they have fallen; if they are to be kept for spring planting they should be deeply packed in fresh sand on the north side of a barn or some other cool situation. If the acorns of the chestnut oak are allowed to lie on the ground too long after falling, particularly if the weather is moist and warm, a great part of them will have begun to sprout and then cannot well be kept over winter. The acorns of this oak are more difficult to keep over winter than those of any other, and they retain their germinative power for the shortest time. For these reasons it may be advisable to sow in the autumn, though some of the acorns may be carried off by squirrels and mice, and there is a possibility that such as do not sprout and take root in the autumn, as most of them, however. will, may be carried off by high-water.

The oak flats and the narrow alluvial bottoms are the only lands in the coastal plain region which are capable of producing a growth of large-sized broad-leaf trees, and for this reason they assume a greater importance than their limited area would otherwise seem to justify. Whatever in the way of yellow poplar or oak timber suitable for saw-logs, or of hickory for mechanical purposes, is to be grown in the coastal plain region must come either from the oak flats or the alluvial bottoms.

THE GUM AND CYPRESS SWAMPS.

The gum and cypress occupy the deepest parts of nearly all the swamps which have a sufficiently porous soil to permit the penetration of the deeply seated cypress roots and which are not subject to drying out in the late summer; and even though the surface may be very dry in dry seasons, if the subsoil be well watered and porous, these trees may still flourish. (Plate XXI.)

They seem to be rather indifferent to the quality of the soil, attaining a large size and comparative thick growth on even the sandy soils, provided they are well watered. The presence of a deep humus which has been uninjured by fire has undoubtedly much influence.

On the sedimentary alluvial soils the growth is from 110 to 125 feet in height, and it is somewhat less on sandy soil.

The body of the wood is formed of sweet gum, water gum and tupelo, with these more or less cypress, which however seldom constitutes as much as one-fourth of the entire growth. Beneath these are small water ash, and young trees of species represented in the dominant growth, in all stages of development. The trees are all shade-enduring in their youth and, probably with the exception of the water gum, all shade-demanding in the earliest seedling stages.

It is not often that fires do damage to these swamps, as through the winter and spring they are too wet to burn; but sometimes in dry autumns the underwood is destroyed with great loss.

The injury inflicted by browsing cattle is slight.

MERCHANTABLE TIMBER OF GUM AND CYPRESS SWAMPS.

The supply of cypress suitable for making either board or shingles is nearly exhausted. In the Pamlico peninsula several large bodies are yet intact; scattered trees still stand along most of the larger streams: Roanoke, Tar, Neuse, Northeast and Cape Fear rivers; smaller bodies are yet to be found in many of the other swamps, such as those surrounding Lake Waccamaw, Big Swamp in Bladen county, and others.

Except in the few places where the forests have been unlumbered the cover is broken and irregular from the removal of the mature cypress. The thickets of water and sweet gums growing beneath them have rapidly pushed upward to take the place of the cypress on its removal.

While the timber of the cypress is of the most excellent quality, its natural powers of reproduction are so limited and the accretion of the trees after the height-growth is made is so slow that the outlook for extensive reproduction is far from encouraging.

Although the cypress does not discriminate in regard to mineral fertility of soil, it is so exacting in regard to moisture that the area which is really adapted for its best growth for timber is exceedingly limited. The trees growing on the margins of the swamps, and in swamps where the moisture is very unequally distributed through the growing season have a far larger proportion of sap than those in the deep swamps and are often seriously affected with hollows.

Although young cypress trees in all stages of development are to be seen scattered through the forests, their number, in comparison with the competing sweet and water gums is insignificant. Their height-growth, however, is rapid until the trunk begins the formation of the characteristic short, flattened, spreading crown. After the attainment of the height-growth, the diameter growth, the stage of most rapid accretion, is sufficiently rapid. The trees at this stage have a diameter of from 14 to 18 inches, and are from 80 to 100 years old, and are still largely sapwood. The diameter-growth after this becomes gradually less, until in some of the oldest and largest trees there are as many as thirty rings of annual growth to an inch of diameter. The length of time required to reproduce the forests which are now being utilized will not be less than 200 or 250 years, and many of the large trees in the existing forests are over 300 years old. For most of the purposes, too, for which the timber is used, that of the more rapid-growing white cedar is equally as well adapted. The area of such swamp land suitable for the growth of cypress is not far from 300,000 acres, while the area of gum swamp is over 1,200 square miles.

WHITE CEDAR OR JUNIPER SWAMPS.

The woodland in which the white cedar is the dominant tree occupies small shallow swamps, "bays"; or not infrequently there occur groups of a few trees disseminated through gum and cypress swamps, or more rarely in beech and yellow poplar flats where the soil and moisture-conditions become favorable for the development of the white cedar and less favorable for that of the larger broad-leaf trees.

The most extensive bodies of such swamp lie in the vicinity of the coast in the great Dismal Swamp; in the counties of Dare and Hyde; and the Pamlico peninsula, where the cedar occurs in small groups in a morass, the growth in which varies a great deal as the amount of moisture in the soil becomes greater or less. There are other large bays in Pamlico county, and on the flats surrounding and contiguous to Lake Waccamaw. Smaller bodies are scattered along the sandy bottoms of the Chowan river, and occupy small bays in Jones and Bladen counties, and the shallow flats bordering the clear-water streams, in Bladen, Cumberland, Richmond, Harnett and Moore counties. On the State's northern border white cedar occurs at an altitude of 100 feet above sea level; in Moore and Richmond counties, at twice that elevation. Its further distribution to the westward is checked by unfavorable soil-conditions. The total area of white cedar swamp does not exceed 200,000 acres.

The white cedar is confined to sandy or peaty soils. In the maritime counties it occurs chiefly on peaty soils, often underlaid by marls; in the more inland and southern counties it is found along the sandy beds of small streams or the contiguous sandy flats subject to frequent overflow; or it occupies small depressions in the sandy soils of the long-leaf pine forests forming the juniper bays. It shuns the heavy alluvial soils.

CONDITION OF UNLUMBERED WHITE CEDAR SWAMPS.

On the peaty soils of the best character, especially where lying above beds of loam or marl, white cedar is associated with yellow poplar, the gums and bays, wherever the amount of moisture and the undecomposed organic constituents become too great for the growth of the oaks. On somewhat better soils it forms dense clumps of nearly pure growth where openings occur in the cover of the dominant story of yellow poplars and gums. In the depressions in the pine barren sections in the white cedar or juniper bays it constitutes, with the white bay and the red bay, the greater portion of the growth, forming a dense wood 60 to 70 feet in height, the crowns of the trees closely interlocking above, their trunks thick, straight and slender; beneath them, and in their

deep shade, are almost impenetrable thickets of young trees and shrubs. The forest floor is a thick humus or is deeply bedded in sphagnum. On the sandy flats bordering the streams, trees of white cedar occur scattered in a rather open growth of small gums and bays, and reach a height of 30 to 50 feet and a diameter of 15 to 20 inches; the humus is thin and the undergrowth thickets of small bushes.

In most localities the cedar swamps have been exploited, or the removal of the cedar is now in progress. Except where yellow poplar forms a portion of the wood, the white cedar is the only valuable tree, and it alone has been removed, all specimens usually being removed that have a greater diameter than 8 inches at the stump. Where the greater part of trees are cedar, the cutting is nearly clean, and the few small trees that are left, having very slender stems, are snapped off by the first severe storm; where there are more broad-leaf trees present, these afford protection to the young growing-stock too small to cut. The bays and gums that are left make rapid growth after lumbering, and for some time retain undisputed possession; the extremely small white cedar seedlings beneath them, although at first making slow growth in the shade, finally re-assert themselves, make rapid height-growth and break through the cover above them, and struggle with the broad-leaf species for the light. If the swamps are burned, as is frequently the case after lumbering, and the burning is not so deeply in the soil as to injure the roots of the broad-leaf trees, they will sprout vigorously from stool and root; the fire-tender white cedar, however, will be entirely destroyed, and only after a great many years will it again be introduced by wind-sown seed. If the soil is peaty, and is very deeply burned, its ability for supporting a growth of white cedar may be entirely ruined.

Only a small proportion of the area of the cedar swamps has been deforested for agricultural uses, such areas being the best drained of the peaty soils with yellow poplar as a part of the growth, and such cleared lands lie chiefly in Dare and Pamlico counties and those counties which penetrate the Dismal Swamp. Agriculturally these lands are among the most productive in the State. A few other areas may in time be drained and reduced to

tillage, but most of the soil, both where peaty and sandy, is unsuited for agricultural purposes, and the permanency of the growth of white cedar on it should be accepted as an assured fact and protection and management bestowed on it accordingly.

Fires, in dry seasons, when the peaty soil or deep humus becomes thoroughly dry, sometimes spread from the pine lands, or from farms, to the white cedar swamps and inflict severe damage, destroying not only the young growth, but much of the old, and burning up the soil as well.

Extensive areas of unlumbered forests still exist in Dare and Tyrrell counties, and smaller in Gates, Jones, and Brunswick. Smaller bodies occur in Bladen, Cumberland, and Harnett counties, from which the largest specimens have been culled for telegraph and light posts.

TREATMENT OF WHITE CEDAR SWAMPS

The white cedar is one of the most valuable trees growing in the coastal plain region. The demand for its timber, on account of its lightness and resistance to decay on exposure to moisture, is far in excess of the supply. Though exacting in regard to soil, its preferences are for such lands as are unsuited for agricultural Its sylvicultural treatment is beset with no difficulties, and its rapid growth offers inducements of early returns to whoever produces it. Where culling can be practiced, and only the largest stocks removed, the largest yields of timber are secured, since the young trees which are too small for use can continue their growth uninterrupted, sheltered by specimens with firm trunks which can protect them from the wind. In only a few places, however, will economic considerations permit this, as the cost of cutting roadways, laying trams and making sound road-beds, which has to be undertaken to remove this timber, is so great that the cutting to the smallest size that can be utilized is often justifiable.

Where the soil is sufficiently wet, not so much shade is demanded by the very young plant to protect it from the sun: where drier, more shade is necessary.

As seed-bearing years are frequent, and the light, slightly winged seed are borne in abundance, modified forms of clean cutting can

be carried on which will allow regeneration beneath the shade of the parent trees. After the laying out of the system of roads, a preparatory cutting can be made in which most of the larger specimens can be removed, being selected as uniformly as possible so as to distribute the light below evenly. Then two, three or four years later all of the remaining trees which can possibly be utilized can be removed, waiting though until after there has been a sufficiently large yield of seed to produce a thick stand of seedlings in the light shade caused by the breaking of the cover of old trees. The young seedlings the second year after they have sprouted will be able to endure full sunlight.

There is no doubt but that the area of white cedar growth can be much extended by introducing it artificially in localities which have a suitable soil, but have a growth of bays and large gums, which by their somewhat superior growth have naturally been able to exclude the white cedar. The proportion of it can also be increased in situations where it already grows by removing competing species,—bays and gums, and permitting the cedar by natural seedings to take their place.

Artificial propagation must be by seed, and as has been suggested, must be carried on in the shade of some other tree to protect the young seedling from too rapid evaporation during the first summer and autumn while the root-system is as yet comparatively undeveloped, shallow, and insufficient to supply water as rapidly as it passed off by transpiration. The seed, which are borne in small berry-like cones, are very small and slightly winged. The cones should be gathered in the early autumn, before they have opened or fallen, and while the seed are yet in them, kept through the winter in a place where they will not dry out, and planted the next spring by sowing broadcast beneath the trees that are to serve as protection to the young plants.

THE POND PINE POCOSINS.

These, as the name implies, have the pond pine as the distinctive growth. With it are the white bay, red bay, and loblolly bay, and less frequently small black gums and loblolly pines.

During certain seasons of the year these pocosins are swamps

or semi-swamps. When they occupy the summits of the divides between watersheds, as is the case with some of the largest, they are poorly drained and often wet. They include two classes: (1) Those having a primarily pauperized soil of coarse sand, or of finer sand, silty, and more compact. (2) Those having an impervious stratum of clay, silt or hard pan underlying the topsoil and preventing percolation of the water to underground streams or its exit by subsoil drainage. The latter may have soil rich in nutritive elements though eminently unproductive. During winter and spring such soils are saturated; during summer and autumn, from inability of subsoil moisture to rise to the surface through the impervious layer, they are exceedingly dry.

The largest areas of such swamp lie in Bladen, Craven, Jones. Pamlico, Tyrrell and Washington counties; while a considerable portion of the Dismal Swamp, in the northeastern corner of the State, has a soil and growth of this character.

The forest, even in the best condition, is exceedingly open and thin, there being an irregular growth of pine 40 to 60 feet in height, the mature trees averaging about 14 inches in diameter, and a denser underwood of small white bay, red bay and loblolly bay, almost impenetrable on account of the thicket of the gallberry, huckleberry, and species of Andromeda and similar shrubs beneath them. Where the soil is of better quality, either more fertile, or because the impenetrable substratum is deeper beneath the surface, there is more pine, often a considerable part of it being loblolly, and the underwood is less dense. Where the soil is least fertile there is least pine and a denser thicket of shrubs.

Next to the long-leaf pine the pond pine is less exacting in regard to fertility of soil than the other pines, growing, in many places, on the soils which if dry the long-leaf pine would occupy. The young plants of the pond pine will endure a considerable shade for many years. When young specimens are accidentally broken, eaten off by cattle, or top-killed by fire, they sprout freely. During dry seasons conflagrations sometimes consume the shrubby underwood, destroying much of the timber. When the pines are thus burned out, the white bay puts forth abundant suckers, forming dense thickets, and the red bay numerous shoots;

the pine, however, in time returns. Although seed-years are frequent, the crop is usually small. The cones remain attached to the limbs for a long period, often retaining the seed for several seasons. The seed retains its germinative powers for many years and may sprout the spring of the first or second season after falling to the ground. As the trees do not grow in thick stands, they fail to clear their stocks until of a large size. Through the dead branches and knot-holes many rot-causing fungi find entrance. Many large trees are unsound from this cause.

This pine produces very little merchantable timber, though if fires are kept from destroying them the yield would not only be larger but of a better quality. In a few limited districts a considerable part of the saw-logs are from this species. It is chiefly of importance on account of the large areas in the State on which it occurs as the only timber tree.

FORESTS OF THE PIEDMONT PLATEAU REGION.

The differences in the character of the forests of the Piedmont plateau region are the results of the influence of variations in the quality of the soils, and in the altitude of the surface above the sea level. The precipitation is nearly the same in all sections of the region, and there is very little difference in the relative humidity between even extreme localities within its limits; so these factors exert only unimportant influ-The variations in elevation, too, are so gradual throughout the greater part of the region as to affect only slightly the composition of the forest, except when those of extreme distances are compared; but on the southeastern border, on the abrupt rise marking the transition to this region from the coastal plain, these forests contain certain species which are representative of the latter region, the distribution of some trees extending even much further to the westward; while other species characteristic of the sylva of the higher mountains penetrate from the northwest far to the eastward, but usually occur only around the spurs of the Blue Ridge or the isolated peaks situated beyond them in the Piedmont plateau. The forests of the eastern lowlands of the Piedmont plateau contain the greater number of species that are representative of the sylva of the coastal plain.

The distribution of the economic forests, however, is determined largely by the character of the soils.

The forests of the lowlands are of relatively small extent and importance; while those of the uplands are extensive and yield nearly all the timber suitable for construction.

THE FORESTS OF THE PIEDMONT LOWLANDS.

The lowlands of the Piedmont plateau region instead of embracing broad swamps are confined to narrow borders of sedimentary origin along the streams. Their forest growth is composed entirely of broad-leaf species except in the eastern border counties, where occasional loblolly pines are found mixed with the hardwoods.

The lowland forests may be divided into (1) those in the hollows and bordering the smaller streams, where the soils are sandy loams containing a large proportion of organic constituents; and (2) those contiguous to the larger and more slowly flowing streams which are bordered by flats having silty soils, containing more clayey ingredients and less vegetable matter than those of the bottoms of the smaller streams. These two classes of forests and soils, sharply defined where a small stream flows into a large one, gradually pass the one into the other in ascending the rivers.

The changes in the character of the growth along the larger streams take place gradually as the changes in the composition of the soils, there being usually, no abrupt transition in the kind of growth of different portions of the some swamp, as occurs in the swamps of the coastal plain region. Many species, abundant along the lower edge of the region, the southeastern, become less frequent as the streams are ascended; others, less common to the eastward, increase in number as the soils become more loamy and the Blue Ridge is approached.

The loamy alluvial lands contiguous to the smaller streams have in all parts of the region very nearly the same kind of growth: beech, red oak, and white oak, maples and yellow poplar, while with these are associated many smaller trees: the hop-horn beam,

umbrella-tree and dogwood, which sometimes are sufficiently numerous beneath the deep shade of the more lofty trees to form a thin underwood. As these soils, however, become at all silty the sweet gum and black gum, overcup and swamp chestnut oaks, and other trees which are more representative of the forests along the larger streams gradually become conspicuous; supplanting first the beech and red oak, then the white oak and yellow poplar, and finally entirely taking their place.

The body of the forest on the silty or mud alluvium of the larger streams is generally formed of sweet gum and black gum, bitternut, overcup oak and swamp chestnut oak, sycamore and hackberry. Of these trees the black gum, bitternut and sycamore are uniformly distributed throughout, although nowhere abundant or forming a conspicuously large portion of the growth; they extend beyond the confines of the Piedmont plateau and enter into the composition of the forests of the mountain region. The elms, hackberry, and sweet gum, on the other hand, become smaller in size and less frequent to the westward, until on the table-land west of the Blue Ridge they become rare trees, occurring only in the basin of the French Broad river and along the larger streams to its southward. The overcup oak is found westward but little beyond the limits of the loblolly pine in Granville county, but in Anson county it makes a broad sweep to the west, and extends up the valley of the Yadkin river, as far as the eastern parts of Davie and the southern portions of Yadkin counties; while the swamp chestnut oak extends west to the Broad river in Cleveland county and north to Granville and Davie. To the eastward it is the red maple which is the characteristic maple, while the sugar maple occurs with it in cooler places as the altitude increases, extending down to about 500 feet above the sea With these trees in the eastern border counties occurs the loblolly pine; and very often as far to the west as Lincoln county the water and willow oaks are found; less frequently the Texas red oak, and in a few places the big shagbark hickory. On the extensive flats of the Neuse and its tributaries, and on other streams in this portion of the State, though to a less extent, the shagbark hickory becomes one of the most conspicuous and

abundant trees, while with it in a few localities is found the small shagbark.

Beneath the taller trees, no matter what kind, especially where the cover is somewhat open, are the hornbeam with the thorns and haws, and often papaw.

To the eastward a few broad flats occur, the soils of which remain moist or even wet, but are rarely inundated, and these are covered with a growth of water oak, overcup oak and willow oak, and fringed with white and black oaks. The broad flats of Little river in Union. Stanly and Anson counties, and those along some other streams in the same section of the State, are of this description.

All open banks where there is full sunlight are lined with river birch and black willow; and some flats which are subject to frequent and periodic overflow are covered with compact groves of willow or birch; or if the inundation is more prolonged, and this is particularly apt to be the case eastward, with thickets of small ash and elm.

Besides these lowlands may be added the mud or clay deposits in depressions on the crests of ridges, usually found in sections where the soils are shallow, often where slates are the country rock. They are very wet during rainy weather, and for some time afterwards, as there is little subsoil drainage; but during the summer and autumn become exceedingly dry. The growth on such deposits is usually entirely of willow oak, black-jack oak and more or less post oak.

Many of these bottoms with a loamy soil, particularly where the growth was the white oak and poplar, representing some of the most fertile land, have been cleared. Some, however, after being cleared, have been found untenable on account of the overflowing, and have been finally abandoned. Such lands are usually covered quickly by heavy thickets of birch, sycamore and elm, while maples and gums, whose seedlings grow well in a shade, soon appear beneath them.

Where lumbering has been going on along these bottoms or staves gotten out, the débris, which is carried off by the streams, often collects at shallow points so as to block the channel of the stream, and back the water for some distance above, killing most of the mature trees which may be on the adjoining bottom, as well as a greater part of the young growth, by flooding their roots. Dense and fast growing thickets of elm and ash, and rarely black gum, appear in such places, and continue unmixed until the bed of the swamp is sufficiently raised to allow other trees to grow.

The oaks on all of these bottoms show very little young growth, if the water oak to the eastward and the swamp chestnut oak in some localities be excepted. Where oaks and other trees have been culled, chiefly maples and sweet gums have taken their places, so that the promise of the bottom lands for the future is not bountiful, nor do they now contain any large supply of merchantable timber.

IMPROVEMENT OF THE FORESTS OF THE LOWLANDS.

The forests of the bottom lands have in nearly every instance been excessively damaged by constant pasturage. The white oaks have in consequence not reproduced as abundantly as other species whose foliage and seed are not so largely interfered with by stock. To the eastward and along the stiffer-soiled bottoms the overcup oak and swamp chestnut oak are the most worthy of extensive reproduction; to the westward and along the smaller streams where the soils are more loamy the white oak is more desirable. Protection must be accorded these in same way as was indicated in the case of the oak flats of the coastal plain region, and regeneration should be secured in the same way.

Abandoned fields and closely culled spaces on the wetter soils of the bottom lands are quickly sown in a mixed growth of light-seeded trees, chiefly birches, willows and sycamore, and among them soon appear ash and elms and other species demanding a light shade.

Sometimes, especially along fence rows, black walnuts appear, and these are worthy of protection. In open or thin places in the woods, on the drier bottoms, this tree could well be extensively introduced artificially. In the western and northern part of the Piedmont plateau it will reach a large size, but as with

other broad leaf trees, it must be kept in a thick stand until the height-growth has been nearly completed to secure clean stems.

FORESTS OF THE PIEDMONT UPLANDS.

The upland forests of the Piedmont plateau region are of broadleaf species and pine, or of belts of broad-leaf trees with pine alternating with belts of broad-leaf trees without pine, there being no areas in the original forest, if some shallow granitic soils be possible exceptions, which produce a pure growth of either a broad-leaf or coniferous tree.

The sequence of belts, with and without pine, continues unchanged in this State to the northwestward as far as the eastern boundary of the mountain region in Surry, Wilkes, Caldwell, and Burke counties; and to the southwest, crossing the Blue Ridge, and with the difference between the pine and no-pine belts more accentuated from the effect of elevation, occurs to northern Georgia and eastern Tennessee.

This succession of forest belts, or the presence or absence of pine in the woods, depends on the variations in the character of the soil, as to texture, as well as in mineral constituents, and drainage. The belts of soil, following or coinciding with the geological terraines, lie. in general, northeast and southwest courses, though the interposition of dykes, particularly granite dykes, to the eastward, has produced more limited belts lying at various angles to these; and not infrequently this occurs when the order of the rock strata has been interrupted by the mere change in the direction of the outcrop. While in the original forest the areas of dissimilar growth are coextensive with certain classes of soils, and the same is more or less true of the aftergrowth in culled and coppiced woodland, in the great body of second growth seedling woods the effects of these differences in soil are largely obscured or altogether lost.

The most radical change which is taking place in the great body of the woodland is the change of growth from pine and mixed hardwoods to pure pine, by abandoned fields being seeded in pine, the place of these fields being supplied for agricultural purposes by farther encroachment on the hardwood areas. But where the relative proportion of the pure pine growth is already large, it is more desirable to reclear these old fields, on account of the ease with which these pine lands are made tillable, from the great absence of lateral roots in the pine growth and the quickness with which the stumps and roots decay in the sap trees, if cut in the spring when the beetles attack them, and the presence of the sap invites fungus diseases.

The body of the upland forest is composed of oaks with more or less hickory, and in places with short-leaf pine scattered among them. Other trees of industrial importance enter but slightly into their composition. This is the composition of the original forests as they now stand. The second growth, on the other hand, which in local cases is an exceedingly important element in the woodland, has pine for the forest body generally, and hardwoods as subordinate.

SOILS OF THE PIEDMONT UPLANDS.

The soils of these counties, unlike those of the coastal plain region, are very largely primary; or at least are not secondary in the sense of the transported drifts of the sands and loams of the uplands and the alluvial deposits of the lowlands of the east, but are derived from the decay of rock or rock forming material in situ. This material generally forms the subsoil, which is covered superficially, to a depth of three to eighteen inches, by a top-soil, differentiated by natural elutriation of the finer, more adhesive or clayey parts, so as to be coarser in texture and not so stiff or brightly colored as the subsoil. This top-soil, unless its depth is ten inches or over, has very little influence on the kind of tree growth.

GENERAL CONDITION OF THE FOREST.

The woodland presents a general view of wide stretches of forest of broad-leaf trees, usually with irregular and broken cover, in places much culled, and with no undergrowth where pastured, and young pines or cedar appearing at intervals through them. This broad-leaf woodland alternates with small groves of pine, usually rather open or thinly stocked, the pine being the short-

leaf and scrub pine; or sometimes red cedar replaces it, or there are mixtures of these trees. The groves of pine or cedar are a young growth which has spontaneously appeared in abandoned fields. In the neighborhood of the towns the groves of pine are of greater extent, and the younger groves which are appearing are more compact, the older trees furnishing abundant seed; the broad-leaf wood is more restricted in extent and often largely formed of coppice shoots, among which many seedling pines appear when old pines are within seeding distance.

The original forest lands may be separated into three parallel belts, neglecting for the present the numerous local variations: (1) a more eastern with soils from slates, sandstone and gneiss and forests with a large proportion of pine, the eastern pine belt of the Piedmont plateau; (2) a middle belt with deep loamy soils mostly from granitic rocks and supporting hardwood forests of the first quality, with only small percentage of pine or none, the broad-leaf forest belt of the Piedmont plateau: and (3) the extensive areas of gneissic soils to the westward with smaller-sized hardwoods and more pine, the western pine belt of the Piedmont plateau.

THE EASTERN PINE BELT OF THE PIEDMONT PLATEAU.

The forest belt lying to the eastward with the woods composed of broad-leaf trees and pine can be separated into three divisions which differ essentially in the proportion of pine in their composition and the ability of the soil to sustain a hardwood growth of broad-leaf trees. There is:

- (1) A more easterly division in extent nearly coinciding with the geological terraine of gneisses and granites, the forests of which are formed of both the loblolly and short-leaf pines with medium-sized broad-leaf trees. This is described under the name of the forests of the eastern granite areas.
- (2) A division abutting the above on the west, and nearly including the Jura triassic red sandstone formation of the geologists, the original forests of which contain a large proportion of short-leaf pine, with small-sized broad-leaf trees, and a large extent

of young pine, both the short-leaf and loblolly, in pure growth, forests of the eastern red sandstone.

(3) A southeastern division with soils from slates, for the most part rather shallow, supporting forests of short-leaf pine and small broad-leaf trees, with only a small area of young pine in pure growth. This will be called the *forests of the slates*. This does not include the entire eastern slate area, but chiefly that in the more southeastern counties* of that belt, the general limits of which will be given in describing this head.

Such differentiation, it must be understood, is merely for the simplicification of description; further division might well be made, but these show fairly well, being natural divisions, the most evident differences existing in the forests and the intimate relation existing between them and the soils.

THE FORESTS OF THE EASTERN GRANITE AREAS.

The northeastern counties of the Piedmont plateau region, Franklin, Warren, Vance, and the northern and central parts of Wake, with rolling surface, have generally grayish and loose topsoils, frequently gravelly, especially along ridges, from the detritus from numerous quartz veins, and red or reddish subsoils, deep, fresh or moist along hillsides, but often coarse-grained and porous.

The body of the forests is formed of post oak, black oak, white oak and Spanish oak, with a considerable intermixture of white, small-nut and pignut hickories, and, in most places, short-leaf pine. The larger forest pines have, however, been largely removed. Along the hollows and cooler slopes, mixed with the white and black oaks, are the northern red oak and yellow poplar, yielding a low grade of lumber, red maple and some ash; along the drier crests there is more post oak and often an increasing proportion of black-jack oak.

The woods around many of the towns, periodically cut over or heavily culled for fuel, are rapidly deteriorating into mere post oak and black-jack oak coppice, with, if fires are excluded and there are seed-bearing pines near by, an ever-increasing proportion of the short-leaf pine.

^{*} Largely the Monroe slates. See Bull. 3, N. C. Geological Survey, 1896, p. 36.

While the greater portion of the original growth of short-leaf pine has been removed, there are now large areas of wood, either in a pure stand of short-leaf pine, or that species mixed with the loblolly pine, especially on the lower or moister lands; and these areas contain a considerable amount of merchantable timber, though usually of a small size and yielding only sap lumber. The re-growth pine is usually at its best when growing on hillsides in culled woods with white and black oaks, where rapid development is secured, and tall and straight stocks formed. That which has colonized old fields and there formed a pure growth is straight-stemmed if the stand is sufficiently thick; but the fields, first taken in thick sod of tall grasses, are usually burnt many times while the trees are vet small, and the growth, being thus kept thin, continues as it matures open and scrubby, while the trees have short boles. Below the pine, post oak and small hickories (especially white hickory) appear, and where the soil is at all moist or stiff the dogwood spreads.

The loblolly pine when in this re-growth, here and as far west-ward as its distribution extends, does not do well after passing into the pole-stage, if it is growing on dry, sandy or gravelly uplands; either it spreads out, and becomes short-stocked and limby, if an abundance of light is afforded, or, if that be denied, soon dies out.

Although the woods of these eastern granite areas have long been culled, they are still yielding much merchantable building material, besides fencing-timber, railway ties (chiefly from the post oak and white oak) and large amounts of fuel, both of pine and hardwoods.

A considerable quantity of yellow poplar and some ash is exported from these areas for the manufacture of pulp, while one local paper mill employs ash for this use.

There are several small mills sawing the second growth short-leaf pine, and a few sawing the original growth.

TREATMENT REQUIRED BY THE FORESTS OF THE EASTERN GRANITE AREAS.

These forests are in most places capable of producing oak timber of considerable size, except along the summits of the hills,

where the dry and coarse gravelly soils are more suited for pine than the larger and more exacting broad-leaf trees. Cattle have for a number of years been excluded from the greatest portion of the woodland in a considerable part of this area, and the beneficial effects of this is evident in the thicker undergrowth. The black oaks, particularly the black-jack and the Spanish, are generally increasing more rapidly than the white oak, and do not seem to be dying out so rapidly as in counties farther west.

The very large areas of loblolly pine growth in old fields should be favored when it is on moist soils or loose loams: but on all stiffer or drier soils that of the short-leaf pine should be favored. Thinnings might advantageously be carried out for each of these species, as will be described further on.

Along all gravelly ridges mature seed-bearing pines should be preserved as seed-trees, and the proportion of pine in the small oak growth on the crests increased; on the more fertile soils of the slopes and along the borders of the hollows the pines reach their largest size, but the competition there with the broad-leaf trees is such that it is only occasionally that a pine can succeed in reaching maturity if it spring up among the broad-leaf trees.

FORESTS OF THE EASTERN RED SANDSTONE BELT.

Contiguous on the southwest to the granite areas in Granville and Wake counties just described, and extending southward through Durham, the eastern parts of Chatham, Montgomery and Anson counties, are the sandy loams yielded by the Jura-trias red and brown sandstones. This belt or terrain varies from 8 to 16 miles in width, and though its surface is generally undulating it is broken and rugged only in the few places where sandstone ridges occur, as in portions of Chatham, Moore, and the southern part Anson counties.

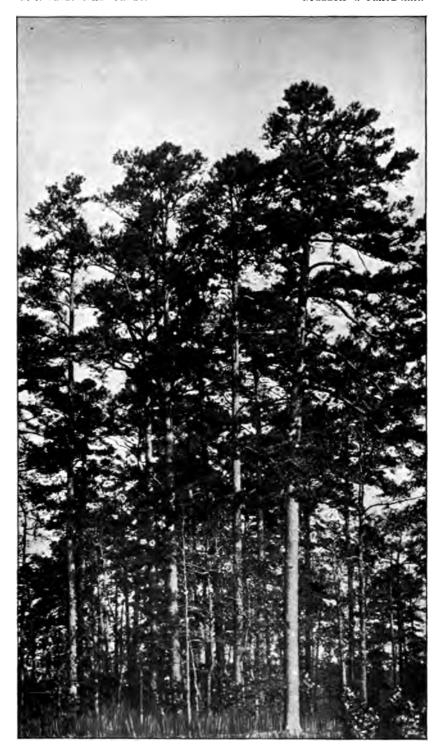
The soils vary from loose coarse-grained sandy loams to stiff fine-textured loams, the latter being generally confined to river bottoms. They are usually brown or gray in color, with characteristic brown, purplish, or terra-cotta-colored, stiffer subsoils; usually deep, but in spite of their depth ill-suited for tree growth.

Under denudation they wash badly, and all the finer and more silty soils bake in drying.

On the flatter lands the forests are formed of small-sized trees. In the original growth there is usually an upper dominant story of short-leaf pine from 50 to 70 feet in height, with an underwood of post oak, Spanish oak, black-jack oak, white oak, and white hickory. This often merges into post oak and black jack oak flats; or where the soil is stiffer and the country more rugged better oaks are to be found along the slopes and in the hollows. The original growth has been largely removed. (Plate XXII.)

In the southern portion of Granville, the southwestern part of Wake, and Durham, and the eastern part of Chatham counties are large areas of abandoned agricultural lands under cover of the short leaf and loblolly pines. The pine may be seen in all stages of development, though in one grove all trees are about the same The loblolly is for the most part confined to the lower or flatter lands, the short-leaf to the better-drained soils and those situated at a distance from large streams where there are the seedbearing trees of the loblolly pine. In many places the two pines occur mixed; but the loblolly generally displaces the short-leaf, growing more rapidly and enduring greater lateral compression and shade than the latter. On the driest soils, however, the short-leaf finally outgrows the loblolly and prevails. Much of this pine is of good stand and has tall and straight bodies free from limbs, and this is more true of the loblolly pine groves than of those of the short-leaf; but much more of it has been thinned by repeated fires, and is capable of yielding but little wood except for fuel. The floor is generally covered with a thick sod of broom-grass. Only a few broad-leaf trees appear spontaneously beneath these pines; those which do occur are chiefly post oak, white hickory and dogwood.

In Anson county there remains but little of the original forest. North of Wadesboro the soil is a gray, sandy loam, rolling and moist, covered with a generally compact growth of the loblolly pine, which is of fairly uniform size; high poles or small-sized mill-timber, where large tracts of cotton lands were simultaneously abandoned in the period between 1861 and 1868, and have not



MIXED PINE AND HARDWOOD FOREST OF THE PIEDMONT PLATEAU REGION

| · | |
|---|--|
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |

since been re-cleared. Beneath this loblolly pine there is very little hardwood growth. South of Wadesboro the topography is . more rugged, and the soils are stiffer, and along the crests and upper slopes often shallow. Everywhere it has been badly eroded. The short-leaf pine holds possession of the large extent of old fields, with, in some places, a small proportion of loblolly pine intermixed. The growth is open and stunted and in many localities dying out. There is little underwood and a consequently poor To the eastward along the Pee Dee river, lie the light loams of the long-leaf pine belt, on which at the present time in Anson county, there are not over 3,000 acres of good standing The remainder of the long-leaf pine lands in this county, as has been said, are covered, where the soils are dry, with small broad-leaf trees, chiefly post oak and black-jack oak; or where the soils are moist with an open, spreading growth of the loblolly pine.

The greater part of the woodland of these counties, possibly as much as two-thirds of it, is in young groves of pure pine. The so-called "forest" pine has been nearly removed; some is yet held in a few places. There are considerable areas of small-sized short-leaf and loblolly pine timber suitable for milling purposes, making sap lumber. Only a little of it has been cut, that chiefly for making tobacco tierces. From the broad-leaf trees (the white and post oaks mainly) hoops and staves and railway ties are made. Some dogwood is gotten out for shuttle-blocks. There are few wood-working industries, and these are chiefly saw mills, supplying in part the local demand.

IMPROVEMENT OF THE FORESTS OF THE SANDSTONE BELT.

The moister soils are capable of producing loblolly pine suitable for saw-logs, and medium-sized white and Spanish oaks. The drier soils can grow rather small-sized trees of the short-leaf pine, post oak and small-sized white oak.

Protection from fires is needed; browsing cattle do only slight damage, except where there is a very large proportion of broadleaf trees. All young short-leaf pine appearing in lumbered woods should be protected.

The thick groves, particularly those of the loblolly pine, might well be thinned. Very lightly at first, if the stand is very thick, and the thinning repeated after several years. If the stand is not so thick a correspondingly light cutting will be required. Seeding pines should be left around every cultivated field which in time may be abandoned, so that when cultivation ceases it may quickly be seeded in self-sown pine seed, and the young pines serve as a protection to prevent the washing away of the soil as so much of it is now destroyed.

The loblolly pine can be grown in a pure forest on all the moister soils of this division. The short-leaf pine does well in a pure growth on the better soils. On the poorer soils all the groves of untended trees now have too open a stand. This may be due entirely to external influences; in many places it is evidently traceable to fires. If this be due in certain cases to the natural thinning out of the pine on such soils as the trees become of large size, in all such cases underplanting will have to be resorted to.

FORESTS OF THE SLATE SOILS.

The geological formation of crystalline schists and slates, which extends from Person county southwestward to Union, yields two extreme types of soils, each supporting characteristic growth. The first of these to be here described is the less suited for the growth of trees, and has woods of pine and small broad-leaf trees; the second produces woods of broad-leaf trees of a larger class and no pine, and will be described further on in considering the belt of red and gray loams which lies next to the west.

The first soil referred to as being a characteristic one over a large part of these counties is a usually shallow, close and stiff, yellow loam, sometimes superficially sandy, derived from gray or yellow slates, and is nearly confined to the southern counties: Randolph, Stanly, Montgomery, and Union. The topography of the districts where such soil is found is simple, the surface nearly flat or gently rolling. Throughout it is ill-drained, and the variation in the growth is incidental to the thoroughness of the drainage. Where better drained the forest resembles a two-storied high forest. The upper story consists of a rather open growth of short-

leaf pine rising to a height of 50 to 70 feet; the lower story of small post and black-jack oaks, with more or less Spanish and white oak and white hickory, has an average height of 40 feet, individual trees acquiring a diameter of 14 to 18 inches. The trees are often shrubby, and there is very little young growth. As the soil becomes poorly drained the pine decreases, until on the "willow oak flats" the growth becomes restricted to black-jack and post oaks as a lower story, slightly overtopped by willow oaks, a growth capable of yielding only a limited number of ties, and felloe and hub-material.

In Davidson, Stanly and Union counties mines have been worked for many years, requiring large amounts of fuel and posts which have been gotten from the neighborhood. Such deforested districts are now generally covered with a coppice of good stand, often with many young pines and some seedling oaks intermixed. Along many of the river hills through here thickets of the scrub pine may be seen. It appears to be spreading eastward from the granite knobs above along the rivers, occasional trees yet being seen in culled or coppiced woodland as far to the eastward as Orange county.

There is a comparatively large part of the area of these counties in forest and only a small amount of second growth woods; and as the woods have been but little culled a correspondingly large amount of merchantable timber, pine in places and oak suitable for ties and wagon-material. These forests have in many places been badly injured by frequent and destructive fires, but during late years the woods have been better protected and the adoption of laws requiring the confinement of live stock in several of the counties has tended to diminish the evil and at the same time improve the general condition of the woodland.

The soils of the first division are on the whole too shallow to make large-sized broad-leaf trees. The most valuable tree is the short-leaf pine; next the post and white oaks and white hickory and dogwood. The pine will make medium-sized mill-logs; the oak scarcely more than railway ties and smaller material.

Fires should be rigidly excluded, as their damage to young pine is great. In most places cattle should be excluded. Improve-

ment cuttings could be advantageously conducted throughout nearly this entire section, defective pines being removed and old black oaks and Spanish oaks that are interfering in any way with young growth of more valuable species. The proportion of pine can be largely increased in such soils as are sufficiently deep to permit its growth, the amount of post oak increased on the crests of ridges, and of white oak on the slopes and better soils.

THE DECIDUOUS FORESTS OF THE PIEDMONT PLATEAU.

Beginning in Mecklenburg county and extending northeast through Cabarrus, Rowan, Davidson, Guilford, and Caswell counties and west to the middle parts of Davie, Yadkin, and Rockingham counties are red and gray compact loams, sometimes loose, rarely sandy, derived largely from gneissic or granitic rocks; and with these may be included the loose loams of Orange, Granville, and Alamance counties, and the stiff red loams of central Iredell, middle part of Lincoln and Catawba counties, and the loose and sandy red and gray loams of southern Cleveland and Rutherford counties. This territory embraces the great body of the fertile upland soils, both stiff and loose, of the Piedmont plateau.

The forests were originally of the first quality, consisting of compact-growing hardwoods, oaks, and hickories, with pine disseminated only on rocky or sandy soils along the crests of hills. They differ from those lying to the eastward in the almost total absence of the short-leaf pine in the original forest, the rather limited area of young pine in pure growth, and the presence in many sections of the red cedar and scrub pine as the old field growth.

FORESTS OF THE COMPACT RED LOAMS OR "RED CLAYS."

The stiff red soils, the so-called "red clays," derived from hornblende-bearing rocks are fertile, and are usually free from stones. The soils are in narrow terraines, two to twelve miles wide, lying in a northeast and southwest direction, the largest extending from Charlotte to Concord, with a length of about

thirty-five miles. Other extensive bodies are at Salisbury and Lexington; several smaller are in Guilford county, and a large body extends through central Alamance and Orange counties, and the northwest part of Person county. Besides these bodies are the areas in Catawba, Lincoln, and Iredell counties already referred to, and smaller areas in other portions of these counties.

The forests of the compact red loams are composed of black and white oaks, white and small-nut hickories with small intermixture of Spanish oak, and along the crests of the ridges, of post oak; but on lower hillsides and steep north slopes the yellow poplar, northern red oak, shagbark hickory, and white ash also occur. These trees in the most favored situation form a forest whose canopy is raised 90 to 100 feet, and the trunks which support it are free from limbs for 40 to 60 feet. Beneath these trees where there has been no pasturage there is in many places a heavy undergrowth of dogwood and young trees. The wooded land is for the most part distributed among small farms, and much of it has been heavily culled of the white oak for building and fencingmaterial, and in places the Spanish oak has been removed for the same uses. Where such culling has been done and the woodland pastured at the same time, the growth has remained open and there is no underwood: and although in many such tracts no pasturage has been permitted for the past five or ten years, the reproductive power of the black oaks seems to be so impaired, possibly from the dry and impoverished floor, that seedlings are infrequent and small, and few young black oaks are to be found in the undergrowth now appearing, which consists of dogwood, hickories, haws, and young white oaks. There are still many fine bodies of hickory, although much has been cut from these lands for numerous local buggy and spoke factories, and much has been exported in the log.

Old fields on the compact red loams are not frequent and they are either tardily taken by pine, the seed being borne there from trees at a distance on other soils, or sometimes they are taken by thickets of sassafras, sumach or by persimmon, and in a few localities by red cedar. Sometimes, however, a growth of mixed

broad-leaf trees, whose seedlings are light-bearing, appear, Spanish, post, and white oaks, white hickory, dogwood, and sourwood.

IMPROVEMENT OF THE FORESTS.

These forests are capable of yielding large-sized oak and hickory timber. The white and black oaks are the most valuable trees growing on these soils, and are better adapted to them than the others; the Spanish oak is less suited. Of the hickories the smallnut and the white make the most rapid growth and thrive better on this stiffer soil; the small-nut on the shadier slopes or where the stiffest soils prevail; the white where the soils are drier or not so stiff. The short-leaf pine will attain a large size and make exceedingly rapid growth, either in growth with other trees or when growing alone.

Browsing cattle and hogs should be excluded, and fires, which at present are of seldom occurrence, should be guarded against. Where the woods have not been pastured there is usually a heavy stand of young trees beneath the old ones, and generally of the same kind, although not by any means in the same proportion. There are great numbers of white oaks, especially four-year-old seedlings, and thickets of saplings, from the two latest heavy masts, around and beneath seed-bearing trees; and this young growth is most promising. Defective old trees, or objectionable species, black gums, scarlet oak and other trees of less value which by their shade are interfering with such young growth should be removed, and if it will pay to turn them into cord-wood they should be cut up and hauled out, as little cutting and injury being inflicted on the young growth as is possible.

There is in some places much mature timber: when it is post oak, chiefly suitable for railway ties; when white and black oaks, it will yield small-sized milling timber, and this is often standing to the great detriment of the thick young growth beneath it, and might well be partly removed to give the young growth an opportunity for development.

Where pasturage has been uninterruptedly practiced for many years and the woods are open beneath, there being no underwood of young trees, an absolute exclusion of cattle is demanded in order to secure the regeneration of a new crop beneath the old trees. Where lack of grazing lands makes woodland pasturage necessary, the plan of utilizing one-half of the woodland for grazing until the young growth in the other portion becomes too large to be injured by cattle, and then turning the cattle into that, while the pastured area is permitted to rest and secure a new growth, could be adopted. Where there are yet many black oaks, white oaks and hickories standing, they can be allowed to naturally seed the ground, and the seedlings from them form the new wood.

In places, however, these species are nearly wanting, or the white oak has been largely removed, so that if a new crop were to be naturally regenerated beneath the remaining trees it would be formed largely of little-desired species. Underplanting with the white oak, and retaining the old cover for several years, and then removing it after the young white oaks have formed thickets so as to shade the ground, is here recommended. The most naked spaces, without any cover at all, might well be sown in the short-leaf pine.

Some localities show absolutely no signs of young growth of broad-leaf trees except such kinds as are neglected by browsing cattle; the old trees which are standing have passed their maturity, their tops are decaying, the trunks are often hollow, and their vigor is constantly lessening from the free access of the sun to the soil around their roots. Any kind of a young growth in such situations will be valuable in protecting the soil from washing and preventing the further decay of the old trees by shading their roots. Nearly all of this thinned wood has more or less young short-leaf pine in it which is rapidly increasing, being passed over by cattle.

THE FORESTS OF THE LOOSE GRAY LOAMS.

The forests of this division cover the greater portion of the section of the Piedmont plateau which lies between Rutherford and the southeastern part of Mecklenburg, on the south and west, and Yadkin, Rowan, Caswell and Orange counties on the north and east; within this division lie the smaller areas of compact red loams with their somewhat different growth. There is not always

a sharply defined limit between the loose gray loams and the compact red loams, one gradually passing into the other; more often the areas of compact red loams have sharply defined limits. The more sandy soils prevail, however, in Alamance, Orange, the western portion of Chatham and in Person counties, in the southern portion of Mecklenburg, and the southern parts of Cleveland and Rutherford counties.

The gray loams are loose, even sandy in places, with the subsoils stiffer and bright-colored, deep, well drained, but fresh or moist and well suited for tree growth. In a few places they are rocky or even bouldery as in portions of Orange and Alamance counties.

In general, the forests are quite similar to those of the compact red loams; but the Spanish oak to a large extent replaces the black oak; there is more post oak, and the standard of excellence is not so high.

The composition of the original forest may be said to be of white oak, Spanish oak, post oak, black oak, white hickory, and scarlet oak, in relative abundance about in the order named, and forming over three-fourths of the growth; beneath these trees is a selection of underwood, where it has not been suppressed by pasturage, which shows a fair representation of the dominant trees, and with these the dogwood, sourwood, haws, and thorns. Dogwood, however, is not so abundant as on the compact red loams. On slopes facing the north and cool hillsides there is but little ash and red maple, and only occasional trees of the northern red oak, but yellow poplar is more frequent.

Pine, though infrequent on the stiffer soils and confined to the ridges, forms on the looser a not inconsiderable element in the woodland, from ½ to 2 per cent, of the mature trees often being pine, these being large and tall, but scarcely overtopping the hardwoods.

Where the soil is poor and sandy as in southern Mecklenburg, there is a reoccurrence of the pine, post oak, and black jack oak growth, with the pine as an upper story and the broad-leaf trees as a lower. The area of such sandy land, however, is limited, and it is generally largely cleared for cotton culture, with the greater part of the woodland hardwood coppice and pine regrowth.

To the eastward in Person, Orange and Alamance counties the small shagbark hickory is frequent along the crests of sandy ridges, forming in a few places as much as 10 per cent. of the growth over limited areas.

Where high hills occur with sandy or gravelly crests, and especially if bouldery, as the river-hills along the Deep and Haw, and the elevated ridges in Person county which centre around Fuller mountain, the chestnut oak becomes conspicuous, and in culled and coppiced woodland rapidly propagates, seeding at an early age, and abundantly reproducing from stool shoots.

Coppied and culled woods deteriorate in two directions according to the kind of soil on which they grow; if on sandy soils the early seeding black-jack oak and post oak increase, their seedlings, appearing among the stool shoots, the trees of these species becoming large enough to produce seed before those other kinds; on the stiffer red soils where the black-jack oak is wanting, the sourwood increases rapidly for the same reason, it seeding at a very early age, especially from shoots.

On the hillsides in culled woods many maple seedlings occur, and reach a height of 20 or 30 feet, and then die. The black gum does the same, small trees of this species often forming a considererable proportion of the young growth; but although it reaches a much larger size than the red maple, and persists for a far longeratime, it, too, is finally suppressed by more rapid-growing trees which are better suited for the dry soils. To a less extent the same is true of the sweet gum, but unless in rather favored localities its seedlings, which appear in many places in the woods, die after a few years growth.

Where the soils are not too sandy or thin there is a growth of broad-leaf trees nearly as excellent in quality as that on the compact red loams. Its average height, however, will scarcely exceed 85 feet, and as the soil becomes more silicious there are fewer small-nut and shagbark hickories and black oaks, these being supplanted by post and Spanish oaks; or, if the country is rugged and the crests of the hills rocky and gravelly, especially if with quartz fragments, the scarlet oaks and pignut hickories enter largely.

These forests require the same management and care for their improvement, as was indicated for those of the compact red loams.

GENERAL CONDITION OF THE DECIDUOUS FORESTS OF THE PIEDMONT
PLATEAU REGION.

Between 80,000 and 100,000 acres of oak and hickory woodland situated in Person, Caswell, and Granville counties were burned in the spring of 1893. The greater portion of the mature and large-sized oak and hickory timber was killed; and while the tops of all smaller trees were destroyed, they put forth abundant stool shoots so that the burnt areas are now covered with thickets of young sprouts. There is another large burnt area in the north-eastern portion of Rockingham county over which a fire passed about 1875. This is now covered with a thick growth of small trees about twenty years old, there often being several stocks from the same stool so that they interfere with each other and prevent development.

While at the present time, on account of the general distribution of groves of seed-bearing short leaf pine, this species quickly forms a stand in abandoned fields, as is the case from Rutherford, Cleveland, and Mecklenburg counties north to Davie and Guilford, yet in many portions of southern Alamance, the northern parts of Orange, in Person, Caswell, and the eastern parts of Rockingham and Forsyth counties, the short-leaf pine does not rapidly take old fields, from five to ten years or even more being required for a thick stand to be naturally secured.

In the eastern portion of Guilford county, and in Alamance, Orange, Person, and Forsyth there is a large proportion of red cedar associated with the short-leaf pine, in localities where the pine does occur in the old field growth; but the cedar is finally suppressed by overshading. In some localities cedar unmixed with other trees forms the regrowth. This tree is also rapidly increasing in culled woods, but, as in the pine groves, it is unable to endure the deep shade of the broad-leaf trees, being of much slower growth than they, and is at last overshaded. In the counties to the west of Guilford, and especially in those to the southwest, there is not so much red cedar.

Where neither the red cedar nor short-leaf pine appears in the old fields, as in portions of Guilford, in Caswell, especially in the valley of Country Line creek, in Rockingham and Forsyth counties, and to a less extent elsewhere, the scrub pine forms a large portion of the regrowth in old fields, in many places forming compact thickets of pure growth; in others, thickets of the short-leaf pine and scrub pine alternate. The two pines are sometimes associated. When this is the case unless the short-leaf pine has the advantage of a start of a few years growth, the scrub pine, being the more rapid grower, will overshade it and suppress it. Less frequently is the scrub pine associated with red cedar in these groves.

The scrub pine forms groves of pure growth on the granite knolls which extend across the eastern edge of Cabarrus county into Rowan, and the dissemination in the old fields has probably been from the trees on these knolls and those growing along the hills of the Haw and the Deep rivers, as the scrub pine is not found at other places in this division in the original forest.

Probably as much as one-third of the area of this division is in wood, and over one-half of the wood is regrowth. A greater portion of the regrowth, over a third at any rate, is pine and cedar. There are besides large areas of waste lands, with almost no tree growth of any kind, or exceedingly thinly stocked with pine or oak, chiefly post oak, black-jack oak, and Spanish oak stoolshoots.

There is almost no merchantable heart-pine suitable for milling. The local bodies of regrowth pine which are now large enough for small sized saw logs will yield only sap lumber, and are not generally utilized on this account; but there are large quantities of pine suitable for fuel. There is not very much oak, either white or red oak, which is suitable for lumber. What there is lies chiefly in Orange, Person, and Davidson counties; but there are smaller bodies in other places. Smaller white oak and post oak, suitable for railway ties, in most places is not abundant, many sections not producing enough to supply the local demand. Hickory, however, is relatively more abundant, not having been so largely culled for local use; numerous spoke and tool-handle fac-

tories are now utilizing this. There are few saw-mills, and nearly all of the building material used by the larger towns is brought from other sections of the State.

THE WESTERN PINE BELT OF THE PIEDMONT PLATEAU.

Lying to the west of the compact red and gray loams are fine-grained and mostly sandy loams, usually red or reddish in color with a thin surface soil, usually less fertile than the compact red and gray loams and less suitable for tree-growth. This division extends from the central part of Rockingham, Iredell, and the central part of Rutherford counties northward and westward to the base of the Blue Ridge and its outlying spurs. A few local areas of compact red loams occur, and the original timber on these soils was entirely of broad-leaf trees.

The surface of the entire division sloping eastward from the escarpment of the Blue Ridge is broken and rugged. The culminating points of the divides between the rivers which here find their head waters are low mountain chains running irregularly east and west. These mountains and the groups and isolated peaks, lying still further to the east, the Sauratown and Crowder mountains, and Kings mountain have an arborescent growth similar to that on the eastern slope of the Blue Ridge, and their woods will be considered in connection with that (p. 210).

Here, however, it may be well to say that the woods on the north slopes yet contain some merchantable yellow poplar in some of the hollows, with ash, northern red oak, and white oak. The woods on the southern slopes, and this is especially true of the South mountains, the Sauratown and King's mountain, and the broad water-shed between the Green and Pacolet rivers, have been many times burned, and pine timber has been very badly damaged while tie and tan-bark oak has been greatly thinned or reduced to stool-shoots.

The forests of this division are of pine mixed with broad leaf trees, of which the scarlet oak is the most abundant. It is especially common on gravelly soils and has associated with it the Spanish oak, post oak, white oak and, to a less extent, the black oak, while along all high and sandy crests and rocky slopes the

chestnut oak becomes a tree of economic consideration. There is not so much hickory as in the oak forests of the central portion of the state this group being represented chiefly by the pignut, white, and some smallnut. The sourwood becomes even more conspicuous than in Davie and Guilford counties, and along the hollows and northern slopes there is some yellow poplar, ash and northern red oak.

These woods are in a far more uniform condition than those lying to the eastward and are much less broken. There are broad expanses of woods, formed of pine mixed with broad-leaf trees, with the cover entire or somewhat broken, and dotted with small groves of pure pine, either the short-leaf or the scrub, in old fields; or there are extensive areas of culled or coppiced woodland adjacent to the farms and small towns.

Throughout some portions of the division cattle have been excluded from the woodland for periods of from five to ten years, but most parts are yet pastured. The forest floor is generally poor, the underwood thin or entirely absent, and the cover of the mature trees open.

The original forest is from 70 to 80 feet in height, though in many places it will not be over 60 feet where the soils are thin and poor, while in hollows and on cool slopes many trees will measure over 100 feet in height. Considering the division as a whole, the trees stand in relative abundance about in the following order: short-leaf pine, scarlet oak, black oak, white oak, sourwood, chestnut oak, post oak, Spanish oak, and white hickory. These form considerably over three-fourths of the growth. Less abundant and forming the larger portion of the remainder of the growth are the dogwood, pignut, chestnut, black-jack oak, black gum, and small-nut hickory, scrub pine, and red maple.

The culled woods show an increased proportion of young pine; while scarlet oak, chestnut oak, and sourwood are increasing in both culled and coppice woods, the scarlet oak more rapidly than any other oak. Its young growth often forms thickets in the open spaces where trees are removed in culling; and in coppiced woodland it reproduces rapidly both by seedlings and stool-shoots. It is chiefly on the drier sandy and rocky soils that the chestnut

oak is spreading most rapidly under culling, especially where the cutting is heavy or where the woods are coppiced; so that large areas where fuel is regularly cut show a growth which has deteriorated, so that while it formerly consisted of mixed oaks and hickory, now it is of scarcely other trees than the scarlet and chestnut oaks. Both of these trees, however, are well-suited for coppice-cutting on account of their rapid growth, vigorous sprouting, and the long persistence of the stools.

The increase of the red maple in culled woods is also rapid. Under the protection of the light shade so afforded maple seedlings can be found on all classes of soils from the driest to the most moist. On the moister soils they seem to be incorporated as a permanent part of the growth; but where the soils are dry they grow more slowly and are overtopped by the oaks when eight or ten inches in diameter, put up sprouts from around the base of the trunk, the main stem becomes weakened and dies. In like manner many seedlings of the yellow poplar appear; those on the drier soils soon succumb; those on the moister persist for a long time, if on a north slope even becoming large trees. Black gum seedlings, which are frequent on the drier soils, continue to grow for many years, but the specimens never become more than small-sized trees.

The regrowth in the old fields is uniformly pine, except in a few local areas of compact red loams, where it may be red cedar or scrubby broad-leaf trees as well as pine. The pine in old fields is usually the short-leaf; but in some sections it is the scrub, especially where adjacent to the mountains, or where thickets of that pine occurred in the original growth, as along steep river hills or the thin soils near granite knolls, the so-called "flat-rocks." Less frequently white pine forms the old field growth, and then only at the base of the mountains where mature trees of this species occur. Beneath pine regrowth of all kinds, unless the cover is exceedingly heavy, sourwood, red maple and dogwood appear.

MERCHANTABLE TIMBER OF WESTERN PIEDMONT PINE BELT.

The forests of the western pine belt now yield more timber than those of any other part of the Piedmont plateau region, and

exploitation is not so far advanced in them as elsewhere. There are many mills sawing pine and soft woods in Wilkes and the northern part of Alexander counties; mills cutting hardwoods at Hickory, Morganton, Lenoir, Old Fort, Thermal Springs and at other localities, while mills sawing pine are scattered through the entire territory.

Several local tanneries obtain their bark supply, chiefly chestnut oak and white oak bark, from the immediate neighborhood, but they have removed only about one-half of the available amount in the South mountains, and that in the Brushy mountains and on the slopes of the Blue Ridge has yet scarcely been touched. The largest tanneries are at Morganton and Wilkesboro.

The largest areas containing merchantable pine lie in Caldwell, Burke, Alexander, Wilkes, and the northern parts of Cleveland and Rutherford counties. Some white pine of a low grade is furnished by the counties lying along the base of the Blue Ridge. It is locally used for building material, but far the greater part of the lumber manufactured is utilized in making shipping boxes for local cotton and woolen mills. The northern pitch pine occurs through here above an elevation of 1,300 feet, usually growing with the short-leaf pine and distinguished from it under the name of "black pine"; and along the mountains, above an elevation of 2,000 feet occur occasional specimens of the Tablemountain pine, which finds its eastern limits on the rocky summits of King's mountain in the southeast and the Sauratown mountains in the northeast, though in the intervening territory between these two mountains and the ridge of the Brushy and the South mountains it is not known to occur. All of these pines afford merchantable milling timber. The scrub pine is abundant on the shallow soils of the mountains and along the Blue Ridge, frequently forming small patches of unmixed growth. The milling oak timber is the white, some Spanish; red and black oak; there is a great deal of white and chestnut oak tie timber, but not so much post oak as farther eastward, the scarlet oak largely taking its place.

IMPROVEMENT OF THE FOREST.

These forests are capable of yielding short-leaf pine, which will

on the best soils attain a height of 90 feet, and on the poorer a height not exceeding 70 feet; and many of the soils, on account of their poorness, are much more suited for a growth of pine than of more exacting broad-leaf trees. The white and chestnut oaks grown on the crests of the hills will make trees large enough for railway ties and tan-bark but scarcely larger; on the moister upper slopes the black and white oaks attain sizes which make them suitable for milling-timber; on the cooler and moister lower slopes the white oak, northern red oak and yellow poplar attain moderately large dimensions and form good timber. The Spanish oak generally reaches only a small size and is often defective; and the same is true of the scarlet oak. Sourwood large enough to be of value commercially is usually defective. The white pine will certainly do fairly well in a few localities along the western limits of the division, and though at this low elevation it fails to clear the stocks, at least in the forest specimens, as it does at a higher elevation, it is worthy of being protected on account of its rapid growth. Thickets of pure growth will probably form cleaner shafts than where single specimens appear in mixed woods.

The broad-leaf trees require such care as was indicated for those of the compact red loams (p. 198). The white pine can be treated in the same way as will be given for the groves of that tree occurring in the high mountains (p. 218).

FORESTS OF THE MOUNTAIN REGION.

The differences in the character of the forests of the mountain region are not determined so largely either by the kind of soil or by the amount of moisture contained in it as are those of the Piedmont plateau and coastal region. Within short distances among the mountains there are wide variations in elevation. With increased elevation a rapid lowering of the average annual temperature takes place, and a proportional shortening in the growing-season; increase in the rain-fall and relative humidity, and a decrease in evaporation both directly from the soil and through transpiration. The effect of these factors in limiting the distribution of certain species is more evident than that of the soils; though, between certain limits of elevation, changes in the

character of the soil influence the kind of growth. It is doubtful, however, if changes of soil in the larger mountain masses above 5,000 feet elevation produce any change at all in the kind of trees, the number of species being limited to those whose hardiness of crown or foliage and short growing-season render capable of withstanding the sudden changes of temperature to which they are subjected toward the summits of the higher mountains. At high elevations certain trees are to be found both along dry ridges and in cold swamps; the white and pitch pines and black gum; and, choosing less noticeable extremes of soil, are the red oak, hemlock, beech, birches, and sugar maple.

The forests of the mountain region are separable into three zones or belts lying at different elevations. These may be described as follows: (1) The forests of the lower mountains; (2) the forests of the higher mountains; (3) the forests of the mountain summits.

THE FORESTS OF THE LOWER MOUNTAINS.

The forests of the lower mountains lie between 1,500 and 3,000 feet elevation. They occupy the eastern and southern slopes of the Blue Ridge and its outlying spurs, and the minor chains of the Brushy and Sauratown mountains which penetrate or lie within the Piedmont plateau region; and to the westward of the Blue Ridge they occupy the hills and lower mountain slopes about to the maximum elevation given above.

Oaks, white, chestnut, black, scarlet, red and shingle, with some hickory, chiefly white, bitternut and rarely the shagbark and smallnut, with the chestnut and occasionally dogwood, are the chief broad-leaf trees. The pines are the short-leaf, pitch, Table mountain, scrub (Jersey) and the white. These form a story of varying density, but never constituting over one-half of the trees, slightly above the broad-leaf trees; or are coordinate with them and fewer in number. As the quality of the soil improves, either as regards fertility or constant proportion of moisture, and the individual specimens composing the broad-leaf element reach a larger size, the pines become fewer in number, restricted in kind to those attaining the greater size, the white and short-leaf, and are con-

fined to the more rocky and shallow or sandy-soiled crests, and eventually are crowded out; either because the broad-leaf trees overshade the mature light-loving pines, or because their shade becomes too deep for the growth of the young plant.

DISTINCTIVE GROWTH.

The forests of the lower mountains approach in the character of their economic trees those of the western gneisses of the Piedmont plateau. The pines, except the short-leaf and the scrub (Jersey) are usually kinds which are not frequent in any part of the Piedmont plateau region; the chestnut oak becomes frequent; the post oak and Spanish oak do not occur at all over the larger part of the area; and the red oak, shingle oak, and chestnut oak become conspicuous and valuable trees.

The forests of the lower mountains are separable into three divisions: (1) that in which the Table mountain and pitch pines are the dominant resinous trees; (2) that in which the short-leaf, pitch, and scrub pines are dominant; (3) that in which the white pine is the dominant tree.

TABLE MOUNTAIN PINE DIVISION.

The area in which the Table mountain and pitch pines are the important pine timber trees embraces the eastern and southern slopes of the Blue Ridge, with the outlying spurs, from Georgiato Virginia, and the groups of the Brushy, South and Sauratown mountains. With these pines is to be found the short-leaf pine, which becomes more abundant as the elevation decreases and the soil become deeper and less rugged. The slopes of this range are steep; the soils are shallow loams or sandy loams, eroding rapidly under denudation, and, when cleared, restocking slowly on the cessation of cultivation. The broad-leaf trees which are associated with the pines are chiefly the scarlet and chestnut oaks and the chestnut. These form a low, open growth, seldom exceeding fifty or sixty feet in height. There is no underwood, and it is only occasionally that young trees are found, and these are for the most part stump or stool-shoots from trees the tops of which have been

killed by the frequent fires which ravage these forests. Old trees, particularly oaks and chestnuts, show many defects from these fires, chiefly short and limby boles and hollows. Pasturing cattle and ranging swine are regularly practiced; firing is done to improve the grass crop and secure young stool-shoots in the spring; and to clear off the litter before the fall of chestnuts and acorns in the autumn. Locally, white pine occurs. Their boles, however, are short, limby and frequently defective, the heartwood being subject to the attack of Trametes pini, which caused defective stocks. The Carolina hemlock, the bark of which possesses the same tanning properties as that of the hemlock, is confined for the most part to the eastern slope of the Blue Ridge. Locally abundant, it is found at intervals along this mountain chain, to the west of it on rugged cliffs along the north and south forks of the Estatoe river in Mitchell county; the South Fork of New river in Ashe county; the gorge of the Doe river; and in the southeastern parts of Macon and Jackson counties, and in one locality over forty miles to the cast of this range, the Sauratown mountains.

In the deep, narrow hollows which indent the eastern slopes of the Blue Ridge, the black walnut grew more abundantly and reached a larger size than elsewhere in this State; but it has been largely removed, and there are now only a few small trees. Of the locust, yellow poplar, and white oak which grew with it, only the white oak is still standing in large quantities. The timber in the hollows, where there are few pines and but occasional hemlocks, has been less damaged by fires than that of the drier and more exposed slopes. Browsing cattle, however, have checked the growth of most of the young broad-leaf trees.

MERCHANTABLE TIMBER OF THE TABLE MOUNTAIN PINE BELT.

There is now comparatively little merchantable timber lying along the Blue Ridge. Locally there is white pine, and yellow pine of several species suitable for milling purposes; and in the hollows some yellow poplar, white oak and chestnut suitable for lumber. White oak and chestnut oak railway tie-timber is abundant, and large quantities of white and chestnut oak tan bark are

obtainable. Lumber mills obtaining their logs from these forests are in operation at Lenoir and Hickory, and smaller mills elsewhere. A tannery at Morganton depends on these forests largely for its oak bark. Fires have damaged these forests more than those of any other part of the State except the pine woods of the southeastern counties.

The forests cover nearly the entire area. The farms are few and confined almost entirely to the narrow alluvial bottoms: a few clearings have been made on the more gentle slopes or broader rounded crests. Some bottoms have been permanently damaged by washing during floods and the deposition of a heavy mud sediment on the surface of the loams. Old fields are seeded chiefly by the short-leaf, scrub and northern pitch pines; less frequently by the white. Sometimes they are all mixed. Such second growth is, however, inconsiderable.

The forests are capable of producing pine—short-leaf, and some white—together with chestnut oak on the slopes and crests; while walnut, yellow poplar, white oak and locust reach a large size in the hollows.

IMPROVEMENT OF THE FORESTS.

A complete cessation of the present annual firing is necessary, not only to insure the possibility of a vigorous stand of young trees, but to afford protection to the standing stock. Pasturage should not be permitted in such portions of the forest as contain young growth that can be injured. Hogs must be excluded after seed-years of nut-bearing trees. As there is now very little merchantable timber on the ridges, all management should have for its object the improvement of the general condition of the forest, regarding both density and preference for the more valuable kinds of trees. Few of the trees on the ridges will form large merchantable stocks; their utilization extends only to small pine milling-timber, oak railway ties, oak and Carolina hemlock tanbark, small chestnut and locust timber for posts and construction.

The trees naturally growing here are light-demanding, except the chestnut, the white oak and white pine, all of which will endure some shade; the chestnut the deepest and the longest, the white pine least and for the shortest time. The chestnut, chestnut oak and the white oak can be relied on for reproduction from stump and stool-shoots, the chestnut sprouting most vigorously and from the largest-sized stumps, and the white oak least vigorously and from the smallest stumps. The locust frequently sprouts from small stumps, also from suckers under a thin cover.

SHORT-LEAF AND PITCH PINE FORESTS.

The area in which the short-leaf and pitch with the scrub (Jersey) pine are the dominant resinous trees, embraces the basin of the French Broad river in Buncombe and Madison counties, the river-hills of the Swannanoa, those of the French Broad in Henderson county, and the lower hills in Haywood, Swain, Jackson, Macon, Cherokee and Graham counties, lying below an elevation of 2,800 feet above sea level. The surface of this area is broken and rugged, the hills often steep, between them, along the rivers and smaller streams, lying narrow alluvial tracts. The lowest elevations are found on the eroded slopes of the Asheville basin and along the waters of the Little Tennessee river, where at the lowest limits the altitude is not over 2,000 feet.

The upland soils are stiff, mostly even-grained loams, rarely sandy. Although generally deep and derived from disintegration in situ of gneiss, or, in Cherokee and Graham counties, slates, they are, on the whole, not fertile; those of the lowlands are rich sedimentary loams with much vegetable matter along the smaller streams; along the larger streams are loams similar to those on the smaller ones, but more sandy and less fertile.

The hills crode rapidly on their shoulders when unprotected. Old fields, however, are generally quickly seeded in native grasses, which form a retentive turf, and after a longer time pines appear.

The short-leaf, pitch and scrub (Jersey) pines are the characteristic conifurs. The broad-leaf trees which grow with them are chiefly the white, black, scarlet and chestnut oaks, chestnut, and hickory. Of these the white oak is first in numbers and importance. It forms from .1 to .5 of the entire forest, being most abundant along the slopes; black oaks and pine superseding it towards the crests; other broad-leaf trees toward the bottoms.

The pines form from .1 to .3 of the forest, being in greatest abundance in the Asheville basin and at the lower elevations.

CONDITION OF THE PINE FORESTS.

The short leaf and pitch pine forest covers a little more than one-half of the area, and is largely of these pines mixed with broadleaf trees less than one-twentieth of the forest being pure pine regrowth in old fields. It is divided chiefly among small farms. On the uplands it is decidedly irregular, the cover broken by the indiscriminate removal of mature trees, the young growth beneath representing all ages. Where pastured and burned the forest floor is poor and the young growth not abundant. On the best soils these trees attain an average height of from 60 to 80 feet: on the poorer and along the sandier crests from 50 to 70 feet, the pines being the taller on the poorer soils but being overtopped or equaled in height by the broad-leaf trees in more fertile situations. density is generally less than three-fourths of what it should be, natural reproduction being prevented by excessive and injudicious lumbering, pasturage, and burning. In many places the mature pines have been largely removed, oaks taking their places, but where there has been no burning many young pines are to be seen. The milling poplar and oak have been largely removed; poplar, from its shade-demanding requirements, the fact that the young plants are eagerly sought for by browsing cattle, and the removal to a great extent of the seed-bearing trees, is reproducing itself only to a limited degree; the chestnut, the white oak, black oak. and scarlet oak more freely.

Where the woodland has been protected for a great many years the mature timber shows little damage from fires or the effects of pasturing; there are only a few localities, however, where this is the case. Black oaks and chestnuts often have hollows from fires: more rarely pines and white oak.

The merchantable timber still standing is chiefly valuable as a source of supply for the numerous farms to which the woodland is attached and the small towns lying near them.

At present the forest is about exhausted, so far as the milling

pine and yellow poplar is concerned. Oak and chestnut, though chiefly of a small size, are still to be obtained.

The forest is capable of yielding milling timber, fuel, railway ties, and fencing, for most of which a local market can be found.

IMPROVEMENT OF THE FORESTS

Protection from fire and cattle should be afforded where this is not already done. Defective trees, or those of inferior kinds, which are interfering with young growth beneath them should be removed. Proximity to farms will generally allow this to be done as such wood can be made use of as fuel. The growth should be allowed to thicken up to restore the humus and give the requisite shade.

Most of the land here is too broken to permit clean cuttings without danger of great injury to the soil. Pure growth of pine, on the gentler slopes could, however, be cut without danger of excessive washing. Naturally the forest requires selection cutting.

The pines and yellow poplar require reproduction in all cases from seed. To supply smaller wood for fuel and farm use most of the broad leaf-trees can be reproduced from stool-shoots.

Fields are seeded by pines and to some extent by locust; rarely by nut-bearing trees. The yellow poplar will propagate in thin woods on a damp soil as the seedlings require some shade. The short-leaf is the most valuable of the pines, and though at first not the most rapid-growing, the Jersey or scrub out growing it, should be protected at the expense of the others if it is intended to permit the trees to reach a large size.

WHITE PINE FORESTS.

The woodland in which white pine is the dominant coniferous tree is not extensive, but lies in isolated, small bodies along the crest, and southern and eastern slopes of the Blue Ridge, or on the low hills on the west.

The most extensive forests containing white pine lie in the southeastern part of Ashe county, extending, though interrupted,

up the valley of the South Fork of New river into Watauga county; in the upper valley of the Linville river in Mitchell county; in the valley of the French Broad river in Transylvania county; and in the southern parts of Macon and Jackson counties, at an elevation of 2,800 to 3,800 feet above sea level, extensive forests seldom being found above the higher limit, or perfect individual development attained below the lower. The total area of white pine forest is not over 200,000 acres.

In a few places on the southern slope of the Blue Ridge, particularly along the headwaters of the Elk, Yadkin, and Roaring rivers in Wilkes and McDowell counties, and the upper valley of the Johns river, the white pine is associated with yellow pines as well as with deciduous trees, but the trees are generally short-boled and neither so large nor tall as those growing at a higher elevation to the west of this range.

Single specimens or small groups of trees are locally dispersed in the broad-leaf forests throughout the mountain counties between the limits of altitude given above. Their value, however, is potential rather than actual, since, growing on the thinsoiled crests of ridges and failing to develop clear shafts, they lack the essential requirements of timber trees; but, as possible sources for the dissemination of seed either in denuded land or in thinned woodland, especially where pastured, their utility may become great. Such groups of trees are to be found in Alleghany, Madison, Haywood, and Graham counties, besides in portions of other counties in which bodies of more compact growth occur.

The white pine is generally associated with white, black, red, and less often, scarlet and chestnut oaks, chestnut, and hickory, when growing along the crests or flanks of rolling hills, on coarse, often porous, gravelly, loamy soils; or less frequently with hemlock, sweet and yellow birch, red oak, and pitch pine along moist or wet fluvial deposits on fertile, loamy soils.

CONDITION OF THE WHITE PINE FORESTS.

In some localities these forests have been extensively culled or lumbered; in others, their integrity is as yet scarcely broken. Where they have not been dismembered two groups of trees are represented: white pine, forming an upper group, from 100 to 150 feet in height, and usually .1 to .3 of the growth; beneath this, a group of deciduous trees of varying height, but rarely over 90 or less than 70 feet, composed chiefly of white, black, and chestnut oak, and chestnut. Of these, white oak is the most abundant.

Where lumbered they are irregular; occasional decrepit white pines overtopping the deciduous growth, which, however, has been cut into only locally; but where around settlements both pine and hardwoods have been culled the entire cover is broken and thin.

One of the effects of pasturing forest lands is that while young plants of deciduous trees have been destroyed, pines have increased; but where burning is practiced, sourwood, scarlet oak, white oak and other vigorous and free sprouters have propagated most rapidly, while pines have diminished.

In a few places a heavy underwood of the great laurel, less commonly of laurel (ivy), grows beneath the deciduous trees, forming a thicket 10 to 15 feet in height, with many crooked stocks rising from the same burly roots. Where this underwood is present the deciduous growth above is usually more open, but browsing cattle have inflicted less damage on young growth of tenderleaf species, and fires are less frequent; the humus is thick and the soil unimpaired.

There are only few farms in the area of white pine forest; probably less than 20 per cent. of the total acreage being under cultivation. In Ashe and Watauga counties the forest is divided chiefly among small farms; in Mitchell and Macon are large areas thinly settled. On the farms the woodland has been more largely culled and pastured, and its density will seldom be above two-thirds of the normal condition.

A few groves of vigorous young pines have sprung up in the fields from the self-sown seed of neighboring forest trees; but such groves are not common. Young pines are increasing in the woodland only to an inconsiderable extent. Much of the bottom land on which this pine grows has already been deforested, and it is probable that all of it will eventually be brought under

cultivation, as the soil is of superior quality and stands tillage better than that of the adjacent hills. The forests on the hills, however, should be regarded as permanent, and care bestowed on them accordingly.

Larger pines, being protected by their thick bark, are damaged only to a slight extent by fires; young ones while the bark is yet smooth are more readily scorched and injured and sometime killed. Oaks and chestnuts show hollows from the effects of fires, particularly along ridges and in dry woods.

MERCHANTABLE TIMBER OF THE WHITE PINE FORESTS

Extensive areas of unlumbered forest still exist in Transylvania, Macon and Mitchell counties. The standing trees will yield fairly good lumber, though it is seldom that over two cuts, 16 feet in length, from which clear boards are obtainable, can be secured from one tree. Smaller bodies yielding a larger proportion of knotty timber are standing in Wilkes, McDowell, and Caldwell counties. Lumbering is in progress in Mitchell, Caldwell, and Wilkes counties.

IMPROVEMENT OF THE WHITE PINE FORESTS.

At the higher altitudes these forests are capable of producing pine milling timber of good quality, large chestnut and oak timber, ties and fencing. At present there is no local market. Below 2,000 feet the pines fail to clear their stocks and the growth is slower, so that very little lumber free from knots can be made from any trunk.

In places where there is young growth, protection from fire and cattle is imperative. Defective seed-bearing pines, which are not seriously interfering with young growth, should be allowed to remain as seed-trees, both in lumbering and where culling is carried on. It is essential that the growth be maintained at the fullest possible density until the young pines have cleared themselves, as otherwise from their tendency towards perfect symmetry in the development of most of the buds into limbs, the boles will be limby and knotty. As the young trees require small growing-space, the crowns standing much lateral compression and

being to a certain extent shade-bearing, the density can scarcely be too great until the trees reach the size of large poles. The rate of height-growth is more rapid than that of any of the associated species, averaging for the first fifty years over a foot of height-growth a year; and for the first ten years nearly 18 inches a year, so that the young trees quickly free themselves from the shade of broad-leaf trees when growing with them.

The white pine seeds many old fields, but not so quickly or thoroughly as the short-leaf pine. In such groves of pure pine the stand should be kept thick and should not be culled until the height-growth is made. If grown in pure wood, selection cutting would best preserve the factors of the locality, but there are many places where clear cutting would be permissible. The proportion of pine in wood mixed with broad-leaf trees can well be increased to twice or even three times what it is at present, as it is the most valuable tree growing on these gravelly hills. The pine begins to seed in abundance when about forty or forty-five years old, and seed are borne abundantly once in 2 or 3 years.

THE FORESTS OF THE HIGHER MOUNTAINS.

These forests embrace all the woodland lying at an elevation above that of the forests of the lower hills and below 5,000 feet. The lower limit of their distribution is about 3,000 feet, but on southern slopes, particularly along the Blue Ridge, the distinctive character of the growth does not appear for several hundred feet above this limit, following closely the isothermal with the variation incidental to changes in moisture in the soil, depth of soil, and its physical characters.

The greater part of the woodland of the counties of Alleghany, Ashe, Watanga, Mitchell, and Yancey is so situated; and in the mountain region to the south of these counties, the woodland lying around the base and on the slopes of the larger mountain masses.

About one-third of the area originally occupied by these forests is now under tillage or in meadow; the rest is more nearly virgin than any other considerable extent of forest to be found in this State. The situation, on steep slopes or rugged declivities. the distance from large waterways, and the inaccessibility of the region to railways, has rendered it impossible to economically remove any but the most valuable timbers; while difficulty of tillage, and the short growing-season have tended to prevent extensive cultivation of those lands lying above 3,500 feet elevation.

SOILS OF THE HIGHER MOUNTAINS.

The soils are rather fine and even-grained loams, gray or recin color, or black from organic ingredients; the loamy and generally stiffer sub-soils red or gray. Over the larger part of the area they are derived from the decomposition, in situ, of gneiss or gneissic rocks or schists, and are sufficiently deep for tree-growt particularly along the lower slopes, where detritus washed fro above has accumulated or obscurely marked river terraces exist.

In portions of Cherokee and Graham counties, and locally else where, the soils derived from slates, quartzite and metamorphos ed sandstones are shallower, thinner and not so favorable to treegrowth. The soils of the upper slopes are thinnest, the clayer particles being more largely washed out, and are sometimes shallow. Those of the sedimentary bottoms are more loamy and coarser, with more organic constituents and less clayer, sometimes underlaid by pipe clay, and ill-drained. The soils of the lower slopes are generally deep and are the most clayer.

FOREST TREES OF THE HIGHER MOUNTAINS.

The forests of the high mountains may be divided into (1) those lying on the crests, and on the slopes facing the south, and (2) those of the north slopes and hollows, and along the bottom lands. The soils of south hill-sides are drier and are thinner than those on slopes with a northerly aspect, and the amount of light and heat is greater than is secured on hill-sides with equal inclination to the north, and the trees are consequently of more light-demanding kinds.

The trees occurring on the slopes facing the north and in the hollows are: hemlock, birches, maples, beech, chestnut, red oak, white oak, great laurel, yellow poplar, white ash, cucumber.

| , | | | |
|---|--|--|--|
| , | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |



MIXED HARDWOOD FOREST OF THE MOUNTAIN REGION

nckeye. The characteristic trees which are to be found n the northern slopes and hollows are: hemlock, great laurel, weet birch, yellow birch. (Plate XXIII.)

On the southern slopes and along the gravelly crests of the hills he growth is less varied, being largely composed of chestnut, rhite oak, red oak, black oak, and chestnut oak. The forest on outhern slopes is less dense than on northern and the trees are maller.

CONDITION OF THE FORESTS.

The cover of these forests has scarcely been broken, the tops of he trees presenting a nearly uniform surface throughout, the rowns closely interlocking and forming a dense shade. Beneath hem is a good floor, usually free from grass and weeds and genrally with a deep humus.

On the best soils along the lower slopes and bottoms the forests ttain an average height of from 90 to 120 feet, with clear shafts of 0 to 90 feet, bearing narrow crowns. On the poorer and thinner pils, particularly towards the upper slopes, the forests become pw and less dense, the cover often thin and open, the boles of the rees shorter, generally crooked and knotty, bearing great spreading crowns.

In very many places there are two groups of trees represented n the forest: a dominant arborescent growth of large trees varied a to species and forming the commercially valuable timbers; eneath them a group of evergreen shrubs or under-trees, often of reat density, formed of the great rhododendron and laurel. In nost places there is present a vigorous young growth of the dominant group of trees if they are shade-bearing species: beech, wirch, and hemlock on the wetter soils; sugar maple and occasionally red oak on the drier, the young growth forming thickets, ometimes of pure growth, beneath the parent trees; but where he cover has been broken by trees being removed in lumbering or by windfalls, irregular thickets of light-loving species spring up: chestnut, cucumber tree, yellow poplar, white ash, white and red oaks, which can endure a deep shade only for a short time.

Browsing cattle have damaged young growth to a great extent,

especially such kinds as will not endure, beneath the shade on other trees, repeated cropping: yellow poplar, white ash anoak; sugar maple and beech to a less degree. In many place about fallen trees and the openings made in lumbering, where there would be a heavy young stand, cattle have prevented in growth until thickets of brambles have sprung up within whice young seedling trees find protection.

Forest fires have inflicted only slight injury either to standing timber or to young growth on the northern slopes, as the damp or fresh humus does not readily carry fire, but on the south sides much timber has been damaged.

MERCHANTABLE TIMBER OF THE HIGHER MOUNTAINS.

Merchantable trees of walnut and cherry, which have been much sought after for cabinet-making have been nearly all removed. Occasionally large trees of the former kind are to be found, and a few small bodies of the latter still exist upon the higher mountains. Yellow poplar and cucumber-tree, being the chief building materials of the region, have largely been removed: large bodies are still to be found, however, intact, particularly in Yancey, Mitchell, and Transylvania counties, and smaller ones in many other places in the mountains. Floating timbers, white pine, vellow poplar, ash and chestnut have been largely removed from the lower valley of the French Broad to supply mills at Asheville. Oak has been cut nowhere except for local use. Little Tennessee river and its tributaries have had much of the floating timber removed from them near the water courses. Hemlock has been cut only around Cranberry and adjacent to some of the larger water courses. Ash has been generally removed wherever means of transportation were available. Birch, except curly yellow birch, has never been lumbered, and the same is true of maple, beech, and lin (basswood).

Chestnut has been locally removed. Around all settlements and farming communities a great portion of the oak, chestnut and poplar has been removed, and the forests are much broken.

FOREST INDUSTRIES OF THE MOUNTAIN REGION.

There are mills sawing lumber at Linville, Cranberry, Asheville

nd Hot Springs and small ones along and near the railways. Vatauga, Toe, Little Tennessee river and its tributaries afford cansportation, the timber going to various places in East Tenessee, chiefly, though, to Knoxville. Hemlock is barked around ranberry for tanneries at Elizabethton, Tenn., and chestnut oak barked around Asheville for local tanneries. No use is made f the hemlock stocks after they have been barked; the oak is onverted into cordwood and sold for fuel. Walnut, curly ash nd curly birch are shipped in the log to veneering factories. The est quality of yellow poplar, ash, and oak timber from here goes hiefly to Philadelphia and Cincinnati, and other inland points, awn in 8 to 12 inch squares. Locust pins are manufactured at Bryson City, Waynesville and other places. Only a few staves re made and not many white oak railway ties are produced. In the more remote districts birch oil (oil of wintergreen) from he sweet birch is distilled in crude home-made retorts, constructed \$ wood, lined with clay and with metal bottoms. This was an xtensive and profitable industry until overproduction reduced he price. The timber of trees thus barked is rarely used.

Among other smaller industries, which are carried on with note or less profit, are keeping bees, in sections where the sourcood, yellow poplar and lin are abundant, to utilize their flowers or honey; the sale of nuts from the native chestnut; and the natural acture of syrup and sugar from the maples.

THE FORESTS OF THE MOUNTAIN SUMMITS.

The black spruce is the characteristic tree of these forests. Vith it is generally associated the Carolina balsam, the lower imit of which is about 300 feet above that of the black spruce.

The mountain ash (mountain sumach), striped and spiked raples and wild red cherry are small broad-leaf trees which are sually found growing, though not abundantly, with the balsam and spruce.

These forests of sombre evergreens lie along the summits of the ighest mountains, seldom being found on peaks with an elevation of less than 5,500 feet above sea level. They cap the Grandather and the adjacent pinnacle of the Grandmother; encircle in great belt the rounded bald of the Roan; stretch along the

numerous massive peaks of the Blacks from Bolen's Pyramid tothe Pinnacle; lie on the top of Pisgah; cover the crests and upper slopes of the Great Smoky mountains and the cross-chain of the Balsams as a nearly continuous forest for a distance of almost thirty miles, and crown the tops of the higher peaks of the south ern parts of Macon and Jackson counties. From their dark foliage the Blacks and Great Smoky mountains derive their names, an the Balsam mountains from the growth upon them. The lower limits of the forests lie on an average above 5,000 feet above sea level, or a little less. On north slopes, within deep and cool hollows, they extend as low as 4,700 on the Grandfather mountain. 4,600 feet at the head of Caney river in the Blacks, and 4,500 feet at the head of Forney's creek in the Great Smoky mountains, while on bold south slopes, as occur in the Blacks and elsewhere, the broad-leaf trees will often extend as high as 5,300 or 5,500 feet.

Commercially these forests are at present unimportant.

INDEX.

| PAGE. | 1 |
|---|------|
| Abies fraseri | |
| Acer barbatum50 | Che |
| leucoderme 22 | Chi |
| dasycarpum51 | Chi |
| longodorma 99 | Chi |
| leucoderme 22 negundo 53 | Coa |
| negundo | Coa |
| pennsylvanicum49 | 1 |
| rubrum52 | |
| saccharinum, L51 | Cot |
| saccharinum, L 51 saccharinum, Wang 50 spicatum 48 Aesculus octandra 47 Amelancher canadensis 60 | Dec |
| enicetum 18 | te |
| A occurre cotandra 47 | Dee |
| According occaling a | Dev |
| Amelanchier canadensis00 | |
| Apple, crab 27 Aborvitæ 19, 119 Ash 70, 72, 73, 74 green 21, 78 | Dio |
| Aborvitæ | Dog |
| Ash | ł |
| green | l |
| mountain 20 red 21, 72 water 21, 73 white 21, 73 | Eln |
| red 91 72 | |
| 100 material 91 72 | |
| water | |
| Wille | 1 |
| Asimina triloba | l - |
| Aspen23, 117 | Far |
| Balsam | For |
| Bald cypress122 | p) |
| Basswood | l te |
| Bay | For |
| bull 42 | 101 |
| 1-h1-11 00 40 | 1 |
| loblolly | i |
| red26, 74 | |
| smooth red | l |
| swamp34 | For |
| sweet 26 34 74 | |
| white 23.84 | 1 |
| swamp 34 sweet 26,34,74 white 23,34 Beech 28,111 | 1 |
| beech | Eas |
| blue113 | For |
| water113 | ļ |
| Betula lenta115 | ļ |
| lutea113 | For |
| nigra114 | aı |
| Birch, bitter113 | al |
| black 114 115 | For |
| black | 101 |
| CHEFT Y | l . |
| red | 1 |
| river | ! |
| 8 weet | l . |
| vellow | 1 |
| Bitternut | For |
| Black gum | For |
| spruce 19, 133 | 1 |
| | 1 |
| walnut 21, 83 Boxelder 21, 53 | 1 |
| Boxelder21, 50 | 1 |
| Boxwood47, 63 | 1 |
| Buckeye21, 47 | 1 |
| Butternut82 | For |
| Ruttonwood 81 | For |
| Carolina Balsam, see balsam. Carolina hemlock, see hemlock. | cl |
| Carolina handook yoo hamlook | 20 |
| Caronna nemick, see nemicka, | For |
| Carpynus caroliniana 113 | |
| Carya alba86 | For |
| amara84 | 1 |
| tomentosa87 | |
| Castanea dentata109 | 1 |
| pumila26 | |
| Coden pod 10 191 | |
| swamps 175 177 | |
| Swamps | i . |
| willte | 1 |
| white, treatment of | 1 |
| white, merchantable177 | 1 |
| Cetts occidentalis | 1 |
| Cercis canadensis57 | 1 |
| Cherry, bird58 | 1 |
| fire58 | 1 |
| wild black | 1 |
| wild Diack | 1 |

| wild red | PAGE. |
|---|---------------------|
| Chestnut | 26, 109 |
| Chinquapin | 26 |
| Chionanthus virginica Chittam | 21 |
| Coastal plain | 143 |
| forests | 144 |
| Cottonwood | 22, 118 |
| Cottonwood | pla- |
| Deerwood | 199, 202 |
| Devilwood | 21 |
| Diospyros virginiana | 68 |
| Devilwood Diospyros virginiana Dogwood flowering | 63 |
| swamp | 48, 49 |
| cork | 29, 76 |
| nowering | 29, 78 |
| southern | 77 |
| Fagus ferruginea | 111 |
| Forest divisions, see under coa | stal |
| tain region. | oun- |
| Forest growth of coastal plain | 143, 147 |
| mountain region21 | 0,213, 220, 223 |
| of Dialmant platous | . 100 |
| 186, 188, | 196, 204 |
| ing, 188, 189, Forest improvement in coastal plai | 164, 172 |
| in mountain region 212, in Piedmont plateau185, Forest industries of coastal plain. | 215, 218 |
| In Pleamont plateau185, Forest industries of coastal plain | 198, 207 158 164 |
| of mountain regi | 00 YY |
| of Piedmont plate Forest management, see f. improve | энц.,206 |
| and under sylvicultural treatn | nent: |
| and under sylvicultural treatmalso under each tree. | 1=0 |
| Forest protection in coastal plain. 164, 172, | 10v, 178. 180 |
| in mountain regio | n .212 |
| in Pledmont pla | 215, 218 |
| in Piedmont pla 185, 191, 163 Forest regions | 198, 207 |
| Forest regions | 181, 208 |
| 152, 168, 170, 173. | 175, 179 |
| of mountain region14 | 2, 210, |
| of Piedmont plateau 1 | 213, 220 42, 182 |
| 187, 189, 191, 194, | 196, 204 |
| Forests, deciduous, of Piedm't plate | 811196 f. for |
| change of growth of, 143, 181, 182 | 186, |
| 208, 220; also see soils. | 144 |
| Forests of coastal plain | 143 |
| of eastern pine belt of Piedi | mont |
| of granite areas (eastern) | 189 |
| of Mountain region14 of Piedmont plateau 1- 187, 189, 191, 194, Forests, deciduous, of Piedm't plate Forests, influences which accoun change of growth of, 143, 181, 182 208, 220; also see soils. Forests maritime. Forests of coastal plain of eastern plue belt of Piedi plateau. of granite areas (eastern) of granite areas (eastern) of sum and cypress of higher mountains of long-leaf pine of lobbolly pine of lower mountains. of maritime belt. of mountain summits of mountain summits of ook flats of Piedmont lowlands | 173 |
| of long-leaf pine | 219 |
| of lobiolly pine | 161 |
| of lower mountains | 209 |
| of mountain region | 208 |
| of mountain summits | 223 |
| of Piedmont lowlands | 182 |
| of Oradmont marken | 101 |

| of Piedmont unlands 188 |
|--|
| of pine belt of coastal plain147 |
| of pine belt of Piedmont plateau, |
| eastern 185 |
| weetern 901 |
| of red clavs |
| of sandstone, eastern191 |
| of short-leaf pine 188, 204, 20) |
| Of state soils |
| of white cedar 175 |
| ot white pine215 |
| Fraxinuds americana |
| caroliniana |
| nennsylvanica lanceolata 73 |
| Fringe-tree21 |
| Gleditschia triacanthos56 |
| Gordonia lasianthus42 |
| Nack 98 83 |
| sour 63 |
| tupelo26, 65 |
| Gum and cypress swamps173 |
| of Pledmont uplands 188 of pine belt of coastal plain 147 of pine belt of Pledmont plateau, eastern 188 of pine belt of Pledmont plateau, eastern 201 of red clays 199 of sandstone, eastern 191 of short-leaf pine 188, 204, 20) of slate soils 194 of swamps 169, 182 of white cedar 175 ot white pine 215 Fraxinuds americana 70 caroliniana 73 pennsylvanica 72 pennsylvanica 73 Fringe-tree 216 Gordonia tariacanthos 56 Gordonia iasianthus 42 Gum 61, 63 black 226, 63 sour 63 sour 63 sour 63 tupelo 25, 65 Gum and cypress swamps 173 Hackberry 27, 80 Hackberry 27, 80 Hackberry 171 Henlock 191 Henlock 191 |
| Haws black 22 |
| red27 |
| He balsam |
| Hemlock |
| Hicoria ulbu 87 |
| aquatica85 |
| carolinæ-septentrionalis20, 201 |
| glabra88 |
| minima |
| laciniosa 20 |
| odorata2) |
| villosa21 |
| Hickory, Dig-Dud87 |
| Carolina shag-bark2) |
| large shag bark20 |
| pignut20, 83 |
| red-neart20, 81 |
| scalv-bark83 |
| shag-bark20, 85 |
| smallnut |
| sman snag-bark |
| water |
| white21, 87 |
| Holly |
| Hornboam 9g 112 |
| Ilex opaca |
| Indian bitters33 |
| Ironwood |
| Judas tree 57 |
| Juglans cinerea82 |
| nigra83 |
| Juniper |
| Kalmia latitolia 67 |
| Laurel |
| Leatherwood |
| Level pine woodland, also see under |
| Tin 92 13 45 |
| southern 23, 44 |
| Linden |
| Ovata 86 lacinlosa 20 odorata 2) villosa 21 Hickory, big-bud 85 bitternut 21, 84 Carolina shag-bark 20 pignut 20, 84 sand 21 scaly-bark 83 shag-bark 20, 83 smallnut 20 smallnut 20 smallshag-bark 20, 20 swamp 85 water 21, 85 white 21, 85 white 21, 85 white 22, 18 Holly 23, 46 Hop-hornbeam 29, 12 Hornbeam 28, 13 Ilex opaca 46 Indian bitters 38 Ironwood 47, 112, 13 Ivy 57 Judas tree 57 Juglans cherea 82 Juniper 19, 119 Juniper wwodiand, also see under < |
| condition of forest bo |
| merchantable |
| merchantable |
| reproduction |
| woodland161 |
| |

| | P | AGE. |
|---|--|---|
| Locust | | 54 |
| black | | 54 |
| clamm | v · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | 0. 55 |
| honey. | 2 | 3), 56 |
| vellow. | | 30, 54 |
| Long-leaf pin | e 12 | 1. 131 |
| round to the latter | condition of 15 | 154 |
| | distribution | 151 |
| | protection 150 | 150 |
| | noting an arbitab grants 150 | 1, 10A |
| | sons on which grows. Ix | i, lac |
| | sylvicultural treating in | 11.10 |
| ** | woodland15 | 101 |
| magnona (eve | rgreen): | ∠3, 3 ⊆ |
| acu | minata | 35 |
| f(Pt | lda | 3= |
| fras | eri | 33 |
| glaı | 1Ca | 3- |
| gra | ndiflor a. | ≆ |
| grea | st-leaved | 21, 3 |
| mac | rophylla | |
| mot | ıntain: | 24, 33, |
| trip | etala | 37 |
| Maple | (4. | 51. 5 |
| ashlest | | 5.1 |
| mounta | in | 22 48 |
| red | | ₽ 10 |
| rock | | - 50 |
| giltar | e li condition of. 15 distribution 15 solis on which grows. 15 solis on which grows. 15 sylvicultural treatmen woodland 15 rgreen). minata da eri ca midifiora at leaved grophylla mitain ctala | 9 51 |
| antt | ······································ | **, */1 *1 |
| greinad | | 99 40 |
| striped | | الای رنت (12 |
| sugar | ····· | 30 |
| swamp. | ······································ | 32 |
| wnite | | |
| white be | ark | 27 |
| maritime fore | sts, condition or | 145 |
| | sons or | 1# |
| Mockernut | ***·· | 87 |
| Mock orange | | - 26 |
| | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••• | |
| Mohrod-ndroi | n carolinum | 70 |
| Morus ruora | ark sts, condition of soils of | 19 |
| Morus ruora | | 19 |
| Mountain ash. | | 20 |
| Mountain ash. Mountain ash. mai mai Mountain regi fore: Mulberry Oak, descripti | rnolia Je, on, division. sts of, see under forests on of: | |
| Mountain ash. Mountain ash. mai mai Mountain regi fore: Mulberry Oak, descripti | rnolia Je, on, division. sts of, see under forests on of: | |
| Mountain ash. Mountain ash. mai mai Mountain regi fore: Mulberry Oak, descripti | rnolia Je, on, division. sts of, see under forests on of: | |
| Mountain ash. Mountain ash. mai mai Mountain regi fore: Mulberry Oak, descripti | rnolia Je, on, division. sts of, see under forests on of: | |
| Mountain ash. Mountain ash. mai mai Mountain regi fore: Mulberry Oak, descripti | rnolia Je, on, division. sts of, see under forests on of: | |
| Mountain ash. Mountain ash. mai mai Mountain regi fore: Mulberry Oak, descripti | rnolia Je, on, division. sts of, see under forests on of: | |
| Mountain ash. Mountain regi ma Mountain regi Mulberry Oak, descripti Bartram basket black black blue bluek | rnolia ole on, division sts of, see under forests on of: 's oak k 2 | 20 38 48 208 323, 79 25 3, 101 1, 104 107 |
| Mountain ash. Mountain regi ma Mountain regi Mulberry Oak, descripti Bartram basket black black blue bluek | rnolia ole on, division sts of, see under forests on of: 's oak k 2 | 20 38 48 208 323, 79 25 3, 101 1, 104 107 |
| Mountain ash. Mountain regi ma Mountain regi Mulberry Oak, descripti Bartram basket black black blue bluek | rnolia ole on, division sts of, see under forests on of: 's oak k 2 | 20 38 48 208 323, 79 25 3, 101 1, 104 107 |
| Mountain ash. Mountain regi ma Mountain regi Mulberry Oak, descripti Bartram basket black black blue bluek | rnolia ole on, division sts of, see under forests on of: 's oak k 2 | 20 38 48 208 323, 79 25 3, 101 1, 104 107 |
| Mountain ash. Mountain regi ma Mountain regi Mulberry Oak, descripti Bartram basket black black blue bluek | rnolia ole on, division sts of, see under forests on of: 's oak k 2 | 20 38 48 208 323, 79 25 3, 101 1, 104 107 |
| Mountain ash. Mountain regi ma Mountain regi Mulberry Oak, descripti Bartram basket black black blue bluek | rnolia ole on, division sts of, see under forests on of: 's oak k 2 | 20 38 48 208 323, 79 25 3, 101 1, 104 107 |
| Mountain ash. Mountain regi ma Mountain regi Mulberry Oak, descripti Bartram basket black black blue bluek | rnolia ole on, division sts of, see under forests on of: 's oak k 2 | 20 38 48 208 323, 79 25 3, 101 1, 104 107 |
| Mountain ash. Mountain regi ma Mountain regi Mulberry Oak, descripti Bartram basket black black blue bluek | rnolia ole on, division sts of, see under forests on of: 's oak k 2 | 20 38 48 208 323, 79 25 3, 101 1, 104 107 |
| Mountain ash. Mountain regi ma Mountain regi Mulberry Oak, descripti Bartram basket black black blue bluek | rnolia ole on, division sts of, see under forests on of: 's oak k 2 | 20 38 48 208 323, 79 25 3, 101 1, 104 107 |
| Mountain ash. Mountain regi ma Mountain regi Mulberry Oak, descripti Bartram basket black black blue bluek | rnolia ole on, division sts of, see under forests on of: 's oak k 2 | 20 38 48 208 323, 79 25 3, 101 1, 104 107 |
| Mountain ash. Mountain regi ma Mountain regi Mulberry Oak, descripti Bartram basket black black blue bluek | rnolia ole on, division sts of, see under forests on of: 's oak k 2 | 20 38 48 208 323, 79 25 3, 101 1, 104 107 |
| Mountain ash. Mountain regi ma Mountain regi Mulberry Oak, descripti Bartram basket black black blue bluek | rnolia ole on, division sts of, see under forests on of: 's oak k 2 | 20 38 48 208 323, 79 25 3, 101 1, 104 107 |
| Mountain ash. Mountain regi ma Mountain regi Mulberry Oak, descripti Bartram basket black black blue bluek | rnolia ole on, division sts of, see under forests on of: 's oak k 2 | 20 38 48 208 323, 79 25 3, 101 1, 104 107 |
| Mountain ash. Mountain regi ma Mountain regi Mulberry Oak, descripti Bartram basket black black blue bluek | rnolia ole on, division sts of, see under forests on of: 's oak k 2 | 20 38 48 208 323, 79 25 3, 101 1, 104 107 |
| Mountain ash. Mountain regi ma Mountain regi Mulberry Oak, descripti Bartram basket black black blue bluek | rnolia ole on, division sts of, see under forests on of: 's oak k 2 | 20 38 48 208 323, 79 25 3, 101 1, 104 107 |
| Mountain ash. Mountain regi ma Mountain regi Mulberry Oak, descripti Bartram basket black black blue bluek | rnolia ole on, division sts of, see under forests on of: 's oak k 2 | 20 38 48 208 323, 79 25 3, 101 1, 104 107 |
| Mountain ash. May may may mountain register. Mulberry | rnolia lie on, division. sts of, see under forests on of: s oak 24 black-jack 24 red 25, 97, 98 stnut 26 26, jack 29 20 21 22 24 25 26 26 27 28 28 29 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 | 20 |
| Mountain ash. May may may mountain register. Mulberry | rnolia lie on, division. sts of, see under forests on of: s oak 24 black-jack 24 red 25, 97, 98 stnut 26 26, jack 29 20 21 22 24 25 26 26 27 28 28 29 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 | 20 |
| Mountain ash. May may may mountain register. Mulberry | rnolia lie on, division. sts of, see under forests on of: s oak 24 black-jack 24 red 25, 97, 98 stnut 26 26, jack 29 20 21 22 24 25 26 26 27 28 28 29 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 | 20 |
| Mountain ash. May may may mountain register. Mulberry | rnolia lie on, division. sts of, see under forests on of: s oak 24 black-jack 24 red 25, 97, 98 stnut 26 26, jack 29 20 21 22 24 25 26 26 27 28 28 29 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 | 20 |
| Mountain ash. May may may mountain register. Mulberry | rnolia lie on, division. sts of, see under forests on of: s oak 24 black-jack 24 red 25, 97, 98 stnut 26 26, jack 29 20 21 22 24 25 26 26 27 28 28 29 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 | 20 |
| Mountain ash. Mountain regi ma Mountain regi Mulberry Oak, descripti Bartram basket black black jac blue chestnut cow tork-leaf laurel lea's live northern overcup. pin post red sand blue sand sand scarlet scrub spotted Spanish | molia lle on, division sts of, see under forests on of: s oak black-jack red 25, 97, 9 stnut 2ck-jack 25, 97, 9 26, 97, 9 27, 97, 9 28, 97, 9 | 20 38 38 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 |
| Mountain ash. Mountain regi ma Mountain regi Mulberry Oak, descripti Bartram basket black black jac blue chestnut cow tork-leaf laurel lea's live northern overcup. pin post red sand blue sand sand scarlet scrub spotted Spanish | molia lle on, division sts of, see under forests on of: s oak black-jack red 25, 97, 9 stnut 2ck-jack 25, 97, 9 26, 97, 9 27, 97, 9 28, 97, 9 | 20 38 38 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 |
| Mountain ash. Mountain regi ma Mountain regi Mulberry Oak, descripti Bartram basket black black jac blue chestnut cow tork-leaf laurel lea's live northern overcup. pin post red sand blue sand sand scarlet scrub spotted Spanish | molia lle on, division sts of, see under forests on of: s oak black-jack red 25, 97, 9 stnut 2ck-jack 25, 97, 9 26, 97, 9 27, 97, 9 28, 97, 9 | 20 38 38 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 |
| Mountain ash. Mountain regi ma Mountain regi Mulberry Oak, descripti Bartram basket black black jac blue chestnut cow tork-leaf laurel lea's live northern overcup. pin post red sand blue sand sand scarlet scrub spotted Spanish | molia lle on, division sts of, see under forests on of: s oak black-jack red 25, 97, 9 stnut 2ck-jack 25, 97, 9 26, 97, 9 27, 97, 9 28, 97, 9 | 20 38 38 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 |
| Mountain ash. Mountain regi ma Mountain regi Mulberry Oak, descripti Bartram basket black black jac blue chestnut cow tork-leaf laurel lea's live northern overcup. pin post red sand blue sand sand scarlet scrub spotted Spanish | molia lle on, division sts of, see under forests on of: s oak black-jack red 25, 97, 9 stnut 2ck-jack 25, 97, 9 26, 97, 9 27, 97, 9 28, 97, 9 | 20 38 38 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 |
| Mountain ash. Mountain regi ma Mountain regi Mulberry Oak, descripti Bartram basket black black jac blue chestnut cow tork-leaf laurel lea's live northern overcup. pin post red sand blue sand sand scarlet scrub spotted Spanish | molia lle on, division sts of, see under forests on of: s oak black-jack red 25, 97, 9 stnut 2ck-jack 25, 97, 9 26, 97, 9 27, 97, 9 28, 97, 9 | 20 38 38 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 28 |
| Mountain ash. Mountain regi ma Mountain regi Mulberry Oak, descripti Bartram basket black black jac blue chestnut cow tork-leaf laurel lea's live northern overcup. pin post red sand blue sand sand scarlet scrub spotted Spanish | molia lle on, division sts of, see under forests on of: s oak black-jack red 25, 97, 9 stnut 2ck-jack 25, 97, 9 26, 97, 9 27, 97, 9 28, 97, 9 | 20 38 38 38 38 38 38 38 38 38 38 38 38 38 |
| Mountain ash. Mountain regi ma Mountain regi Mulberry Oak, descripti Bartram basket black black jac blue chestnut cow tork-leaf laurel lea's live northern overcup. pin post red sand blue sand sand scarlet scrub spotted Spanish | rnolia lie on, division. sts of, see under forests on of: s oak 24 black-jack 24 red 25, 97, 98 stnut 26 26, jack 29 20 21 22 24 25 26 26 27 28 28 29 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 | 20 38 38 38 38 38 38 38 38 38 38 38 38 38 |

INDEX.

| Oak flats soils of 17. timber of 17. treatment of 17. Olive, American 17. Osnanthus americana 2 Ostydendron arboreum 6 Palmetto 29, 1% Papaw 4 Persea borbonia 26, 7 borbonia pubescens 26 Peralmmon 27, 6 Perevian 5 Pice a nigra 13 Piedmont plateau divisions, see forest. Piedmont plateau forests, see forest. Pignut 20, 8 Pine barrens, see forests. Pine, description of: 129 | į |
|---|----|
| timber of | ; |
| Olive, American21 | ĺ |
| Osmanthus americana21 | |
| Oxydendron arboreum | š |
| Palmetto | į |
| Papaw41 | ļ |
| borbonia pubescens 26 | i |
| Persimmon 27, 68 | ł |
| Picco plure | 3 |
| Piedmont plateau divisions, see forest. | • |
| Pledmont plateau forests, see forest. | |
| Pignut20, 88 | , |
| Pine belt, see forests. | |
| Pine, description of: | |
| | |
| heart 13 | í |
| Jersey | ş |
| long-lest 18, 131 | Ĺ |
| northern pitch18, 120 | į |
| pond | |
| short-leaf 18. 13 | j |
| serub18, 125 | š |
| cedar 124 heart 13 Jersey 18, 12 loblolly 18, 12 long-leaf 18, 13 northern pitch 18, 12 pond 18, 12 white 18, 12 short-leaf 12, 13 scrub 18, 12 spruce 128, 130, 134, 13 Table mountain 18, 12 yellow 13 Pinus echinata 13 mitts 13 | ì |
| yellow 130 | j |
| Pinus echinata 130 | , |
| mitis 130 | í |
| palustris 131 pungens 121 | į |
| | |
| serotina 127 tæda 125 | , |
| strobus 12 virginiana 12 | į |
| virginiana | , |
| Planer tree 2 Platanus occidentalis. 8 | ί |
| | |
| Carolina 118 | • |
| yellow | , |
| Poplar | |
| heterophylla 118 monilifera 118 Prickly ash 16 | Š |
| Prickly ash19 | • |
| | |
| caroliniana 26 | , |
| angustifolia 27 carolluiana 26 pennsylvanica, 56 | 3 |
| Pyrus americana 20 | 'n |
| anguetifolio Zi | |
| Coronaria 27 Quercus alba 80 | |
| aquatica100 | , |
| hrevitolia 107 | ĭ |
| catesbæi 10: cinerea 10' | : |
| coccinea. 9 |) |
| coccinea. 95 cuneata. 105 | ļ |
| | |
| heterophylla 25 imbricaria 107 laurifolia 108 | í |
| laurifolia | |
| lyrata | ŀ |
| marilandica104 | ŀ |
| michauxii99 |) |
| minor | í |
| | |

| | PAGE. |
|---|--|
| Quercus phellosprinusrubra | 108 |
| prinus | 93 |
| rubra | 97 |
| texana | 98 |
| tinctoria | |
| velutina | 101 |
| velutina. virens. virens. virginiana. Rainfall Red bay Red bdud. Red cedar Red gum. Rhododendron Rhododendron maximum. Robinia pseudacacia. viscosa | |
| Vainfall | 141 142 |
| Red hav | 28 71 |
| Redbud | 22 57 |
| Red cedar | 19, 121 |
| Red gum | 61 |
| Rhododendron | 68 |
| Rhododendron maximum | 68 |
| Robinia pseudacacia | 54 |
| viscosa | 55 |
| Sabal palmetto | 136 |
| Salix nigra | 116 |
| Salix nigra Sandstone belt, forests of Sassafras Sassafras sassafras Service tree. | 171 |
| Sassairas | 60, 10 |
| Sarvica tree | •7 60 |
| Shad hugh | |
| Shad bush | 18 130 |
| Silverbell tree | 70 |
| Snowdron tree | 28, 70 |
| Snowdrop tree | 66 |
| Sourwood | 66 |
| Spruce, black | 18, 133 |
| Spruce pine128, 130, | , 134, 135 |
| Soils, see forest. | |
| Sugar tree | 50 |
| Swamps, see white cedar, gum an | d cy- |
| press, and oak nats. | 100 |
| of coastal plain | 169 |
| or Pleamont plateau | 145 149 |
| Sweet Day20 | 140, 140 |
| 311100111 | |
| Sweet cum | 92 61 |
| Sweet hirch | 23, 61 |
| Sweet gum Sweet birch Sycamore | 23, 61 28 23, 81 |
| Sorrell tree Sourwood Spruce, black Spruce pine | 23, 61 28 23, 81 122 |
| Sweet gum Sweet birch Sycamore Taxodium distichum distichum imbricaria | 23, 61 28 23, 81 122 |
| Sweet gum Sweet birch Sycamore Taxodium distichum distichum imbricaria Temperature, annual, of forest re | 23, 61 28 23, 81 122 19 egions |
| Sweet gum | 23, 61 28 23, 81 122 19 egions 141, 142 |
| Sweet gum Sweet birch Sycamore Taxodium distichum distichum imbricaria. Temperature, annual, of forest re Thorns (haw) | 23, 61 28 23, 81 122 19 egious 141, 142 |
| Sweet gum Sweet birch Sycamore Taxodium distichum distichum imbricaria Temperature, annual, of forest re Thorns (haw) Thuja occidentalis | 23, 61 28 28, 81 122 19 28 29 29 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 21 |
| Sweet gum Sweet birch Sycamore Taxodium distichum distichum imbricaria. Temperature, annual, of forest re Thorns (haw) Thuja occidentalis Tilia americana | 23, 61 28, 81 122 19 egions 141, 142 27 119 |
| Sycamore Taxodium distichum distichum imbricaria Temperature, annual, of forest re Thorns (haw) I huja occidentalis Titia americana heterophylea | 23, 81 19 egious 141, 142 27 119 43 |
| Sycamore Taxodium distichum distichum imbricaria Temperature, annual, of forest re Thorns (haw) Thuja occidentalis Tilia americana heterophylea bubescens | 23, 81 19 egions 141, 142 27 119 43 45 |
| Sycamore Taxodium distichum distichum imbricaria Temperature, annual, of forest re Thorns (haw) Thuja occidentalis Tilia americana heterophylea pubescens Transitional forests | 23, 81 19 egions 141, 142 27 119 43 45 44 |
| Sycamore Taxodium distichum distichum imbricaria Temperature, annual, of forest re Thorns (haw) Thuja occidentalis Tilia americana heterophylea pubescens Transitional forests | 23, 81 19 egions 141, 142 27 119 43 45 44 |
| Sycamore Taxodium distichum distichum imbricaria Temperature, annual, of forest re Thorns (haw) Thuja occidentalis Tilia americana heterophylea pubescens Transitional forests | 23, 81 19 egions 141, 142 27 119 43 45 44 |
| Sycamore Taxodium distichum distichum imbricaria Temperature, annual, of forest re Thorns (haw) Thuja occidentalis Tilia americana heterophylea pubescens Transitional forests | 23, 81 19 egions 141, 142 27 119 43 45 44 |
| Sycamore Taxodium distichum distichum imbricaria Temperature, annual, of forest re Thorns (haw) Thuja occidentalis Tilia americana heterophylea pubescens Transitional forests | 23, 81 19 egions 141, 142 27 119 43 45 44 |
| Sycamore Taxodium distichum distichum imbricaria Temperature, annual, of forest re Thorns (haw) Thuja occidentalis Tilia americana heterophylea pubescens. Transitional forests. Tsuga caroliniana canadensis Tuipelo gum Ulmus alata | |
| Sycamore Taxodium distichum distichum imbricaria Temperature, annual, of forest re Thorns (haw) Thuja occidentalis Tilia americana heterophylea pubescens. Transitional forests. Tsuga caroliniana canadensis Tuipelo gum Ulmus alata | |
| Sycamore Taxodium distichum distichum imbricaria Temperature, annual, of forest re Thorns (haw) Thuja occidentalis Tilia americana heterophylea pubescens. Transitional forests. Tsuga caroliniana canadensis Tuipelo gum Ulmus alata | |
| Sycamore. Taxodium distichum distichum imbricaria. Temperature, annual, of forest re Thorns (haw). Thuja occidentalis. Tilia americana. heterophylea pubescens Transitional forests Tsuga caroliniana canadensis Tulip-tree. Tupelo gum. U'mus alata americana fulva Umbrelia tree. | |
| Sycamore. Taxodium distichum distichum imbricaria. Temperature, annual, of forest re Thorns (haw). Thuja occidentalis. Tilia americana. heterophylea pubescens Transitional forests Tsuga caroliniana canadensis Tulip-tree. Tupelo gum. U'mus alata americana fulva Umbrelia tree. | |
| Sycamore. Taxodium distichum distichum imbricaria. Temperature, annual, of forest re Thorns (haw). Thuja occidentalis. Tilia americana. heterophylea pubescens Transitional forests Tsuga caroliniana canadensis Tulip-tree. Tupelo gum. U'mus alata americana fulva Umbrelia tree. | |
| Sycamore. Taxodium distichum distichum imbricaria. Temperature, annual, of forest re Thorns (haw). Thuja occidentalis. Tilia americana. heterophylea pubescens Transitional forests Tsuga caroliniana canadensis Tulip-tree. Tupelo gum. U'mus alata americana fulva Umbrelia tree. | |
| Sycamore. Taxodium distichum distichum imbricaria. Temperature, annual, of forest re Thorns (haw). Thuja occidentalis. Tilia americana. heterophylea pubescens Transitional forests Tsuga caroliniana canadensis Tulip-tree. Tupelo gum. U'mus alata americana fulva Umbrelia tree. | |
| Sycamore. Taxodium distichum distichum imbricaria. Temperature, annual, of forest re Thorns (haw). Thuja occidentalis. Tilia americana. heterophylea pubescens Transitional forests Tsuga caroliniana canadensis Tulip-tree. Tupelo gum. U'mus alata americana fulva Umbrelia tree. | |
| Sycamore. Taxodium distichum distichum imbricaria. Temperature, annual, of forest re Thorns (haw). Thuja occidentalis. Tilia americana. heterophylea pubescens Transitional forests Tsuga caroliniana canadensis Tulip-tree. Tupelo gum. U'mus alata americana fulva Umbrelia tree. | |
| Sycamore Taxodium distichum distichum imbricaria Temperature, annual, of forest re Thorns (haw) Ihuja occidentalis. Tilia americana heterophylea pubescens. Transitional forests. Trsuga caroliniana canadensis. Tulip-tree. Tupelo gum Ulmus alata americana fulva Umbrelia tree. Viburnum Vrrgilla Wahoo Walnut, black white Water beech White jine forests | 23, 81 129 129 1910 182 141, 142 141, 142 143 443 168 134 125 134 226, 65 27, 76 28, 77 29 21, 83 21, 82 21, 83 21, 82 21, 83 21, 83 21, 82 21, 83 |
| Sycamore Taxodium distichum distichum imbricaria Temperature, annual, of forest re Thorns (haw) Ihuja occidentalis. Tilia americana heterophylea pubescens. Transitional forests. Trsuga caroliniana canadensis. Tulip-tree. Tupelo gum Ulmus alata americana fulva Umbrelia tree. Viburnum Vrrgilla Wahoo Walnut, black white Water beech White jine forests | 23, 81 129 129 1910 182 141, 142 141, 142 143 443 168 134 125 134 226, 65 27, 76 28, 77 29 21, 83 21, 82 21, 83 21, 82 21, 83 21, 83 21, 82 21, 83 |
| Sycamore Taxodium distichum distichum imbricaria Temperature, annual, of forest re Thorns (haw) Ihuja occidentalis. Tilia americana heterophylea pubescens. Transitional forests. Trsuga caroliniana canadensis. Tulip-tree. Tupelo gum Ulmus alata americana fulva Umbrelia tree. Viburnum Vrrgilla Wahoo Walnut, black white Water beech White jine forests | 23, 81 129 129 1910 182 141, 142 141, 142 143 443 168 134 125 134 226, 65 27, 76 28, 77 29 21, 83 21, 82 21, 83 21, 82 21, 83 21, 83 21, 82 21, 83 |
| Sycamore Taxodium distichum distichum imbricaria Temperature, annual, of forest re Thorns (haw) Ihuja occidentalis. Tilia americana heterophylea pubescens. Transitional forests. Trsuga caroliniana canadensis. Tulip-tree. Tupelo gum Ulmus alata americana fulva Umbrelia tree. Viburnum Vrrgilla Wahoo Walnut, black white Water beech White jine forests | 23, 81 129 129 1910 182 141, 142 141, 142 143 443 168 134 125 134 226, 65 27, 76 28, 77 29 21, 83 21, 82 21, 83 21, 82 21, 83 21, 83 21, 82 21, 83 |
| Sycamore Taxodium distichum distichum imbricaria Temperature, annual, of forest re Thorns (haw) Ihuja occidentalis. Tilia americana heterophylea pubescens. Transitional forests. Trsuga caroliniana canadensis. Tulip-tree. Tupelo gum Ulmus alata americana fulva Umbrelia tree. Viburnum Vrrgilla Wahoo Walnut, black white Water beech White jine forests | 23, 81 129 129 1910 182 141, 142 141, 142 143 443 168 134 125 134 226, 65 27, 76 28, 77 29 21, 83 21, 82 21, 83 21, 82 21, 83 21, 83 21, 82 21, 83 |
| Sycamore Taxodium distichum distichum imbricaria Temperature, annual, of forest re Thorns (haw) Thija occidentalis. Tilia americana heterophylea pubescens Transitional forests Tsuga caroliniana canadensis Tulip-tree. Tupelo gum Ulmus alata americana fulva Umbrella tree. Viburnum Virgilla Wahoo. Walnut, black white Water beech Whitewood Wicky Willow black glack glack black glack ylack black ylack | 23, 81 |
| Sycamore Taxodium distichum distichum imbricaria Temperature, annual, of forest re Thorns (haw) Ihuja occidentalis. Tilia americana heterophylea pubescens. Transitional forests Transitional forests Trsuga caroliniana canadensis. Tulip-tree Tupelo gum Uimus alata americana fulva Umbrella tree. Viburnum Virgilia Wahoo Walnut, black white Water beech White water heech Whitewood Wicky black glaucous river | 23, 81 |
| Sycamore Taxodium distichum distichum imbricaria Temperature, annual, of forest re Thorns (haw) Thija occidentalis. Tilia americana heterophylea pubescens Transitional forests Tsuga caroliniana canadensis Tulip-tree. Tupelo gum Ulmus alata americana fulva Umbrella tree. Viburnum Virgilla Wahoo. Walnut, black white Water beech Whitewood Wicky Willow black glack glack black glack ylack black ylack | 23, 81 |

| | • | |
|--|---|--|
| | • | |
| | · | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |



